



STRANGE ADVENTURES  
OF  
ANDREW BATTELL

OF LEIGH,  
IN ANGOLA AND THE ADJOINING REGIONS.

*REPRINTED FROM "PURCHAS HIS PILGRIMES."*

Edited, with Notes and a Concise  
HISTORY OF KONGO AND ANGOLA,  
BY  
E. G. RAVENSTEIN.

LONDON  
PRINTED FOR THE HAKLUYT SOCIETY



## CONTENTS.

---

INTRODUCTION . . . . .	PAGE i
BIBLIOGRAPHY . . . . .	xviii

---

### THE STRANGE ADVENTURES OF ANDREW BATTELL OF LEIGH.

I. Andrew Battell, his voyage to the River of Plate, who being taken on to the coast of Brazill was sent to Angola . . . . .	1
II. His trading on the coast ; offer to escape ; imprisonment ; exile ; escape and new imprisonment ; his sending to Elamba and Bahia das Vaccas ; many strange occurrences . . . . .	9
III. Discovery of the Gagas : their wars, man-eating ; over-running countries. His trade with them, betraying, escape to them, and living with them ; with many strange adventures. And also the rites and manner of life observed by the Iagges, or Gagas, which no Christian would ever know well but this author . . . . .	19
IV. His return to the Portugals : invasions of diverse countries ; abuses ; flight from them, and living in the woods divers months ; his strange boat and coming to Loango . . . . .	36
V. Of the province of Engoy, and other regions of Loango ; with the customs there observed by the King and people . . . . .	42
VI. Of the provinces of Bongo, Calongo, Mayombe, Manike-socke, Motimbas ; of the ape-monster Pongo ; their Hunting, Idolatries, and divers other observations . . . . .	52
VII. Of the Zebra and Hippopotamus ; the Portuguese Wars in those parts ; the Fishing, Grain, and other things remarkable . . . . .	63

---

ON THE RELIGION AND THE CUSTOMS OF THE PEOPLES OF ANGOLA, CONGO, AND LOANGO, from <i>Purchas His Pilgrimage</i> , 1613 (1617) . . . . .	71
---	----

## APPENDICES.

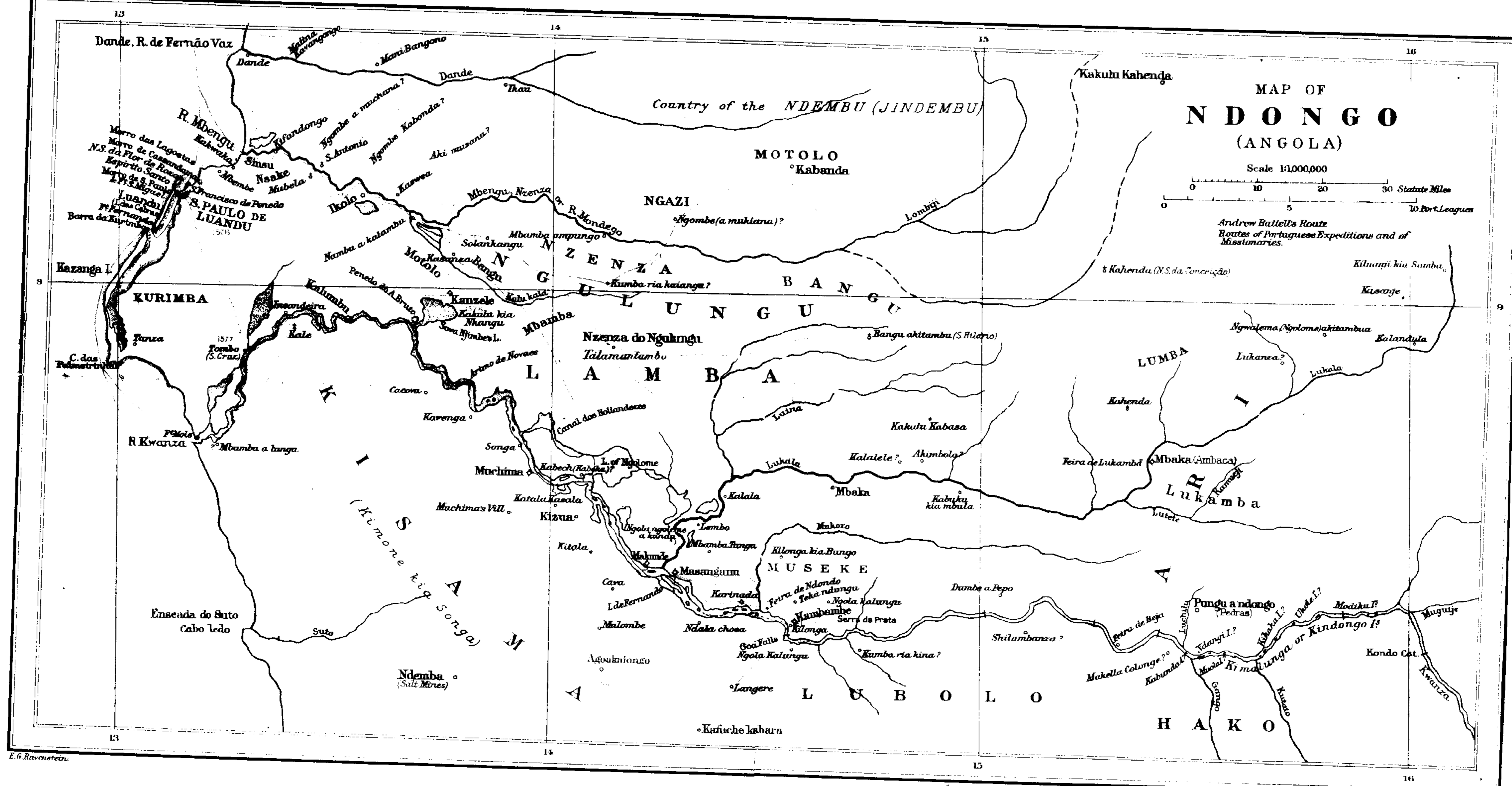
I. ANTHONY KNIVET IN KONGO AND ANGOLA . . . . .	89
II. A SKETCH OF THE HISTORY OF KONGO TO THE END OF THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY . . . . .	102
III. A LIST OF THE KINGS OF KONGO . . . . .	136
IV. A SKETCH OF THE HISTORY OF ANGOLA TO THE END OF THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY . . . . .	139
V. A LIST OF THE GOVERNORS OF ANGOLA . . . . .	188
<hr/>	
INDEX AND GLOSSARY . . . . .	191

## MAPS.

A GENERAL MAP OF KONGO AND ANGOLA.

AN ENLARGED MAP OF ANGOLA.

---



MAP OF  
**NDONGO**  
(ANGOLA)

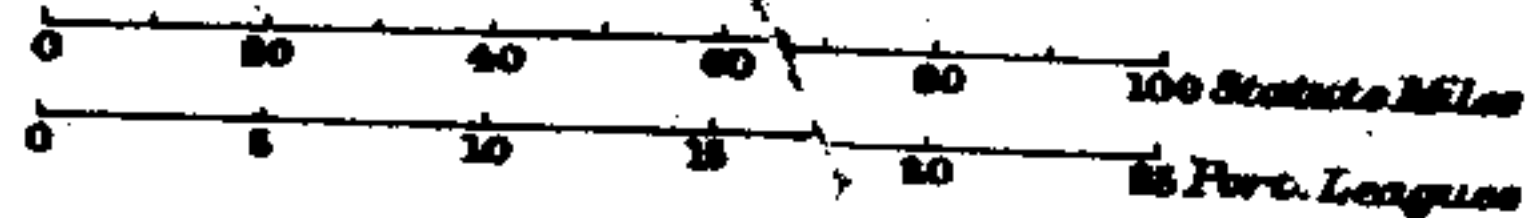
Scale 1:100,000  
0 10 20 30 Statute Miles  
0 5 10 Port Leagues

Andrew Battell's Route  
Routes of Portuguese Expeditions and of  
Missionaries.

MAP OF  
**KONGO & ANGOLA**

illustrating their  
HISTORY TO THE CLOSE OF THE 17<sup>th</sup> CENTURY

SCALE 1:3,000,000.



Alleged extreme limits of the Empire of Kongo anterior to the arrival of the Portuguese.

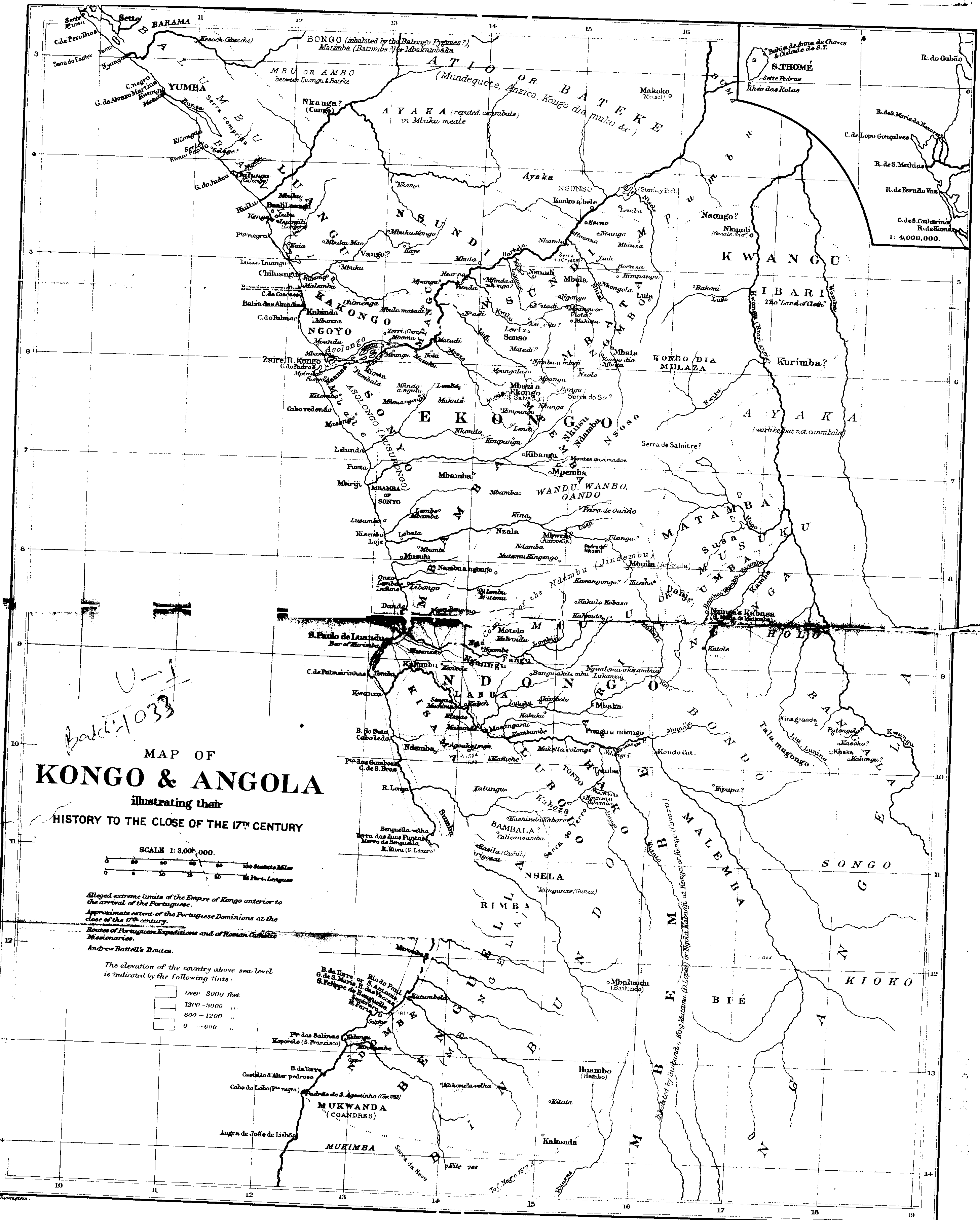
Approximate extent of the Portuguese Dominions at the close of the 17<sup>th</sup> century.

Routes of Portuguese Expeditions and of Roman Catholic Missionaries.

Andrew Battell's Routes.

The elevation of the country above sea level is indicated by the following tints:-

Over 3000 feet
1200-3000 ..
600-1200 ..
0-600 ..





WORKS ISSUED BY

# The Hakluyt Society.



THE STRANGE ADVENTURES

OF

ANDREW BATTELL.



SECOND SERIES.

No. VI.





STRANGE ADVENTURES  
OF  
ANDREW BATTELL

OF LEIGH,  
IN ANGOLA AND THE ADJOINING REGIONS.

*REPRINTED FROM "PURCHAS HIS PILGRIMES."*

Edited, with Notes and a Concise  
HISTORY OF KONGO AND ANGOLA,  
BY  
E. G. RAVENSTEIN.

LONDON  
PRINTED FOR THE HAKLUYT SOCIETY

**LONDON :**

**PRINTED AT THE BEDFORD PRESS, 20 AND 21, BEDFORDBURY, W.C.**

COUNCIL  
OF  
THE HAKLUYT SOCIETY.

---

SIR CLEMENTS MARKHAM, K.C.B., F.R.S., *Pres. R.G.S.*, PRESIDENT.  
THE RIGHT HON. THE LORD STANLEY OF ALDERLEY, VICE-PRESIDENT.  
REAR-ADMIRAL SIR WILLIAM WHARTON, K.C.B., VICE-PRESIDENT.  
COMMR. B. M. CHAMBERS, R.N.  
C. RAYMOND BEAZLEY, M.A.  
COLONEL G. EARL CHURCH.  
SIR W. MARTIN CONWAY.  
F. H. H. GUILLEMARD, M.A., M.D.  
EDWARD HEAWOOD, M.A.  
DUDLEY F. A. HERVEY, C.M.G.  
E. F. IM THURN, C.B., C.M.G.  
J. SCOTT KELTIE, LL.D.  
F. W. LUCAS.  
A. P. MAUDSLAY.  
E. J. PAYNE, M.A.  
HOWARD SAUNDERS.  
H. W. TRINDER.  
CHARLES WELCH, F.S.A.  
  
WILLIAM FOSTER, B.A., *Honorary Secretary.*



## CONTENTS.

---

INTRODUCTION . . . . .	PAGE i
BIBLIOGRAPHY . . . . .	xviii

---

### THE STRANGE ADVENTURES OF ANDREW BATTELL OF LEIGH.

I. Andrew Battell, his voyage to the River of Plate, who being taken on to the coast of Brazill was sent to Angola . . .	1
II. His trading on the coast ; offer to escape ; imprisonment ; exile ; escape and new imprisonment ; his sending to Elamba and Bahia das Vaccas ; many strange occurrences . . .	9
III. Discovery of the Gagas : their wars, man-eating ; over-running countries. His trade with them, betraying, escape to them, and living with them ; with many strange adventures. And also the rites and manner of life observed by the Iagges, or Gagas, which no Christian would ever know well but this author . . .	19
IV. His return to the Portugals : invasions of diverse countries ; abuses ; flight from them, and living in the woods divers months ; his strange boat and coming to Loango . . .	36
V. Of the province of Engoy, and other regions of Loango ; with the customs there observed by the King and people . . .	42
VI. Of the provinces of Bongo, Calongo, Mayombe, Manike-socke, Motimbas ; of the ape-monster Pongo ; their Hunting, Idolatries, and divers other observations . . .	52
VII. Of the Zebra and Hippopotamus ; the Portuguese Wars in those parts ; the Fishing, Grain, and other things remarkable . . .	63

---

ON THE RELIGION AND THE CUSTOMS OF THE PEOPLES OF ANGOLA, CONGO, AND LOANGO, from <i>Purchas His Pilgrimage</i> , 1613 (1617) . . .	71
---	----

## APPENDICES.

I. ANTHONY KNIVET IN KONGO AND ANGOLA . . . . .	89
II. A SKETCH OF THE HISTORY OF KONGO TO THE END OF THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY . . . . .	102
III. A LIST OF THE KINGS OF KONGO . . . . .	136
IV. A SKETCH OF THE HISTORY OF ANGOLA TO THE END OF THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY . . . . .	139
V. A LIST OF THE GOVERNORS OF ANGOLA . . . . .	188
<hr/>	
INDEX AND GLOSSARY . . . . .	191

## MAPS.

A GENERAL MAP OF KONGO AND ANGOLA.

AN ENLARGED MAP OF ANGOLA.

---



## INTRODUCTION.

---



OUR Englishmen are known to have visited Angola towards the close of the sixteenth century, namely, Thomas Turner, Andrew Towres, Anthony Knivet and Andrew Battell. All four were taken by the Portuguese out of English privateers in South-American waters, and spent years of captivity as prisoners of war; happy, no doubt, in having escaped the fate of many of their less fortunate companions, who atoned with their lives for the hazardous proceedings in which they had engaged.

Thomas Turner,<sup>1</sup> although he furnished Samuel Purchas with a few notes on Brazil, never placed on record what happened to him whilst in Portuguese Africa. Towres was

---

<sup>1</sup> Battell tells us (p. 7) that he and Thomas Turner were transported to Angola in the same vessel (1590). Purchas conferred with Turner after he had returned to England, and obtained from him an account of his travels, he having "lived the best part of two years in Brazil" (*lib.* vi, c. 8). Elsewhere we learn that he "had also been in Angola" (see p. 71).

This apparently straightforward information is quite irreconcilable with what we are told by Knivet; for Knivet says he met Turner at Pernambuco (about 1598); that he advised him to go to Angola; that Turner acted on this advice, and "made great profit of his merchandise, for which he thanked me when we met in England." Concerning Knivet, see *post*, p. 89.

sent to prison at Rio de Janeiro for the heinous offence of eating meat on a Friday ; he attempted an escape, was retaken, and condemned to spend the rest of his captivity in Angola. He died at Masanganu, as we learn from Knivet. Knivet himself has left us an account of his adventures in Angola and Kongo ; but this account contains so many incredible statements that it was with some hesitation we admitted it into this volume, as by doing so we might be supposed to vouch for the writer's veracity.

Andrew Battell, fortunately, has left behind him a fairly circumstantial record of what he experienced in Kongo and Angola. His narrative bears the stamp of truth, and has stood the test of time. It is unique, moreover, as being the earliest record of travels in the *interior* of this part of Africa ; for, apart from a few letters of Jesuit missionaries, the references to Kongo or Angola printed up to Battell's time, were either confined to the coast, or they were purely historical or descriptive. Neither F. Pigafetta's famous *Relatione del Reame di Congo*, "drawn out of the writings and discourses of Duarte Lopez," and first published at Rome in 1591, nor the almost equally famous *Itinerarium* of Jan Huyghen van Linschoten, of which an English translation appeared as early as 1598, can be classed among books of travel.<sup>1</sup> Samuel Braun, of Basel, who served as barber-surgeon on board Dutch vessels which traded at Luangu and on the Kongo, 1611-13, never left the coast.<sup>2</sup> Nor did Pieter van der Broeck, who made three voyages to the Kongo between 1607 and 1612 as supercargo of Dutch vessels, penetrate inland.<sup>3</sup> Nay, we are

---

<sup>1</sup> This description does not, of course, apply to his "Voyage to the East Indies," but it does to his "Description of the whole Coast of Guinea, Manicongo, Angola, etc."

<sup>2</sup> His *Schiffarten* was first published at Basel in 1624. On this traveller, see an *Abhandlung* by D. G. Henning (Basel, 1900), who rather absurdly calls him the "first German scientific traveller in Africa."

<sup>3</sup> *Vijf verscheyde Journalen . . . Amsterdam* [1620].

even able to claim on behalf of Battell that he travelled by routes not since trodden by European explorers.

Of Andrew Battell's history we know nothing, except what may be gathered from his "Adventures," and an occasional reference to him by his friend, neighbour, and editor, the Rev. Samuel Purchas. He seems to have been a native of Leigh, in Essex, at the present day a mere fishing village by the side of its populous upstart neighbour Southend, but formerly a place of considerable importance. As early as the fifteenth century it could boast of its guild of pilots, working in harmony with a similar guild at Deptford Strond, the men of Leigh taking charge of inward bound ships, whilst Deptford provided pilots to the outward bound. Henry VIII incorporated both guilds as the "Fraternity of the Most Glorious and Indivisible Trinity and of St. Clement;" and in the venerable church of St. Clement, at Leigh, and the surrounding churchyard may still be seen monuments erected in honour of contemporaries of Battell who were Brethren of the Trinity House; among whom are Robert Salmon (born 1567, died 1661) and Robert Chester (died 1632). But there is no tombstone in memory of Andrew Battell; and if a memorial tablet was ever dedicated to him, it must have been removed when the church was renovated in 1837. Nor do the registers of the church afford a clue to Battell's death, for the earliest of these documents only dates back to the year 1684. At the present time no person of the name of Battell lives at Leigh.

Samuel Purchas was Vicar of Eastwood, a small village two miles to the north of Leigh, from 1604 to 1613. Battell returned to Leigh about 1610, bringing with him a little negro boy, who claimed to have been kept a captive by a gorilla (see p. 55). Purchas had many con-

ferences with Battell, and the information obtained in this manner was incorporated by him in *Purchas His Pilgrimage*, the first edition of which was published in 1613,<sup>1</sup> and will be found in this volume, pp. 71-87. Battell's papers, however, only reached Purchas after the author's death, and were first published by him in *Hakluytus Posthumus, or Purchas His Pilgrimes*, in 1625.<sup>2</sup> There is reason to fear that Purchas did not perform his duties as editor, as such duties are understood at the present day. As an instance, we notice that Battell distinctly told his editor in private conference (see p. 83) that in his day nothing was known about the origin of the Jagas, expressly denying that Duarte Lopez could have any information about it; yet, elsewhere (p. 19), Battell is made responsible for the statement that they came from Sierra Leone. Nor is it likely that Battell ever mentioned a lake Aquelunda (p. 74), for no such lake exists; and Purchas's authority for its supposed existence is once more Duarte Lopez or Pigafetta.

Moreover, there is some ground for supposing that Purchas abridged portions of the MS.; as, for instance, the account of the overland trading trip to Kongo and Mbata. Perhaps he likewise rearranged parts of his MS., thus confusing the sequence of events, as will be seen when we come to inquire into the chronology of Battell's travels.

There exists no doubt as to the object with which Abraham Cocke sailed for the Plate River in 1589. Philip of

<sup>1</sup> Subsequent editions appeared in 1614, 1617, and 1626.

<sup>2</sup> Battell's narrative was reprinted in Astley's *New General Collection of Voyages*, vol. iii (1746), and Pinkerton's *Collection*, vol. xvi (1813). Translations or abstracts were published in the *Collections* of Pieter van der Aa (Leiden, 1706-07); of Gottfried (Leiden, 1706-26); of Prévôt (Paris, 1726-74); in the *Allgemeine Historie der Reisen* (Leipzig, 1747-77), in the *Historische Beschrijving der Reisen* (The Hague, 1747-67), and by Walckenaer (Paris, 1826-31).

Spain had acceded to the throne of Portugal in 1580, and that prosperous little kingdom thus became involved in the disaster which overtook the Armada, which sailed out of Lisbon in May, 1588. English skippers therefore felt justified in preying upon Portuguese trade in Brazil, and intercepting Spanish vessels on their way home from the Rio de la Plata. We do not think, however, that we do Abraham Cocke an injustice when we assume him to have been influenced in his hazardous enterprise quite as much by the lust of gain as by patriotism.

The determination of the chronology of Battell's adventures presents some difficulty, as his narrative contains but a single date, namely, that of his departure from England on May 7th, 1589. There are, however, incidental references to events the dates of which are known; and these enable us to trace his movements with a fair amount of confidence, thus:—

1. Having left Plymouth in May, 1589, we suppose Battell to have reached Luandu in June, 1590.

2. His journey up to Masanganu, his detention there for two months, and return to Luandu, where he "lay eight months in a poor estate" (p. 7), would carry us to the end of June, 1591.

3. Battell tells us that the Governor, D. João Furtado de Mendonça, then employed him during two years and a half trading along the coast. This, however, is quite impossible: for Mendonça only assumed office in August, 1594; but, as he is the only Governor of Battell's day who held office for a longer period than two and a half years—his term of office extending to 1602—and as Battell is not likely to have forgotten the name of an employer who gave him his confidence, we assume that he really did make these trading trips, but at a subsequent period. Purchas may be responsible for this transposition.

4. He made a first attempt to escape (in a Dutch vessel),

but was recaptured, and sent to Masanganu, where he spent "six miserable years," 1591-96.

5. Second attempt to escape, and detention for three months in irons at Luandu, up to June, 1596.

6. Campaign in Lamba and Ngazi (see p. 13, *note*). After a field service of over three years, Battell was sent back to Luandu, wounded. This would account for his time up to 1598 or 1599.

7. I am inclined to believe that, owing to the confidence inspired by his conduct in the field, the Governor now employed him on the trading ships referred to above.

9. Trading trips to Benguella in 1600 or 1601.

10. Battell joins the Jagas, and spends twenty-one months with them. Incidentally he mentions that the chief, Kafuche, had been defeated by the Portuguese seven years before that time (he was actually defeated in April, 1594).

11. Battell was at Masanganu when João Rodrigues Coutinho was Governor (Coutinho assumed office in 1602).

12. Battell was present at the building of the presidio of Kambambe by Manuel Cerveira Pereira in 1604; and stayed there till 1606, when news was received of the death of Queen Elizabeth, and he was promised his liberty. The Queen died March 24th, 1603.

13. A journey to Mbamba, Kongo, etc., may have taken up six months.

14. The Governor having "denied his word," and a new Governor being daily expected, Battell secretly left the city, spent six months on the Dande, and was ultimately landed at Luangu. (The new Governor expected was only appointed in August, 1607; and his arrival was actually delayed.)

15. In Luangu, Battell spent two years and a half—say up to 1610.

Great pains have been taken by me with the maps illustrating this volume ; and, if the outcome of my endeavour does not differ in its broad features from the maps furnished by M. d'Anville, in 1732, to Labat's *Relation Historique de l'Éthiopie Occidentale*, this should redound to the credit of the great French geographer, but should not be accounted a proof of lack of industry on my own part. Still, my maps exhibit an advance in matters of detail, for our knowledge of the country has increased considerably since the days of d'Anville. They would have proved still more satisfactory had the Portuguese thought it worth while to produce a trustworthy map of a colony of which they had claimed possession during four centuries. It seems almost incredible that even now many of the routes followed by the Conquistadores and missionaries of old cannot be laid down upon a modern map for lack of information. Sonyo, for instance, through which led the high road followed by soldiers, traders, and missionaries going up to San Salvador (the present route leaves the Kongo River at Matadi), is almost a *terra incognita*. I am almost ashamed to confess that I have even failed to locate the once-famous factory of Mpinda ; all I can say is, that it cannot have occupied the site assigned to it on some Portuguese maps.

I need hardly say that modern research lends no support to the extravagant claims of certain geographers as to the knowledge of Inner Africa possessed by the Portuguese in the sixteenth century. Pigafetta's fantastic map, with its elaborate system of lakes and rivers, merely proves the utter incapacity of its author to deal with questions of critical geography. This has long since been recognised. The map which accompanies Isaac Vossius's *De Nili et aliorum Fluminum Origine* (Hagae Com., 1659) only shows one lake in Inner Africa, which borders on "Nimeamaie vel Monemugi," and may without hesitation

Muji) is the chief of the Maravi or Zimbās. The "Iages, gens barbara et inculta," are placed right in the centre of Africa. The "Fungeni," which are shown as neighbours of the "Macoco," ought to have been placed to the west of Abyssinia, as they are the Funj, or Fung, of the Egyptian Sudan. If Ludolfus had carried out his intention of compiling a map of the whole of Africa (in 1681), these extravagancies of early map-makers would have been exposed more fully long since.<sup>1</sup>

In collecting materials for the maps and for the notes illustrating Battell's narrative, I felt bound to consult all accessible literary sources dealing with the history and geography of Kongo and Angola. Whilst ploughing my way through this mass of material, it struck me that a concise history of these African countries, from the time of their discovery to the end of the seventeenth century, might form an acceptable appendix to Battell's *Adventures*, and at the same time increase the bulk of the volume dedicated to him to more respectable proportions. Much material of use for such a purpose has seen the light since the publication of J. J. Lopes de Lima's historical sketches. Yet I am bound to confess that the result of all this tedious labour is disappointing. I may have been able to rectify a few dates and facts; but much remains to be done before we can claim to be in possession of a trustworthy history of that part of Africa. Possibly my little sketch may rouse a Portuguese into taking up the work of the late Luciano Cordeiro. Many documents not yet published should be discoverable in the archives of Portugal, Spain, and Luandu.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> See "The Lake Region of Central Africa: a Contribution to the History of African Cartography," by E. G. Ravenstein (*Scottish Geogr. Mag.*, 1891).

<sup>2</sup> Among documents, the publication of which seems desirable, are Don G. Abreu de Brito's *Summario e Descrição do Reino de Angola*, 1592; and Cadornega's *Historia* (at least, in abstract).

The spelling of the proper names mentioned by Battell is retained, as a matter of course ; but it is obvious that in the historical appendices the various ways in which native names are spelt had to be reduced to a common system. Much might be said in favour of accepting the Portuguese manner of spelling, but after due consideration I decided to adopt the system now generally followed (even by a few Portuguese writers), viz., that all vowels should be sounded as in Italian, and the consonants as in English, with the only exception that the letter *g* should always be hard. I therefore write Sonyo, instead of Sonho, Sogno, or Sonjo, as the name of that district is spelt according to the nationality of the writer. In transcribing the native names I have had the unstinted assistance, among others, of the Rev. Thomas Lewis, of the Baptist Missionary Society ; yet I am fully aware that the spelling adopted for many names is at least doubtful, if not absolutely incorrect. This arises quite as much from a defective hearing on the part of my authorities, as from the illegibility of many early manuscripts or the carelessness of copyists. All such doubtful cases are dealt with in the GLOSSARY and INDEX.

In conclusion, I feel bound to acknowledge with gratitude the kindly assistance rendered me by Mr. R. E. Dennett, who is spending a life-time in Luangu ; Mr. R. C. Phillips, who is thoroughly acquainted with the Lower Kongo ; the Rev. Thomas Lewis, of the Baptist Missionary Society ; Captain Binger, of the French Foreign Office ; and last, not least, our ever-obliging Secretary, Mr. William Foster.



## BIBLIOGRAPHY.

---

Only the titles of a few books cited merely by the author's name, or by abbreviated references, are included in this list.

---

### *How cited :*

ALGUNS DOC.—Alguns documentos do archivo nacional da Torre do Tombo ácerca das navegações e conquistas Portuguezas. Lisboa (Impr. nac.), 1892.

A collection of documents, 1416-1554, edited by José Ramos-Coelho. See Index *sub* Angola, Kongo, Manicongo.

PAIVA MANSO.—Historia do Congo, obra posthuma do (Dr. Levy) Visconde de Paiva Manso. Lisboa (Typ. da Acad.), 1877.

A collection of documents, 1492-1722.

BOLETIM.—Boletim da Sociedade de Geographia de Lisboa.

The volume for 1883 contains documents now in the Bibliothèque Nationale (instructions given to B. Dias, 1559 ; Letters of F. Garcia Simões, F. Balthazar Barretta, and other Jesuits).

Memorias do Ultramar, Viagens explorações e conquistas do Portuguezes. Collecção de Documentos por Luciano Cordeira. Lisboa (Impr. nac.) 1881.

The following Parts have been published :—

### GARCIA MENDES.

(a) 1574-1620. Da Mina ao Cabo Negro segundo Garcia Mendes Castello Branco (the writer of these reports was one of the companions of Paulo Dias de Novaes).

### REBELLO DE ARAGÃO.

(b) 1593-1631. Terras e Minas Africanas segundo Balthazar Rebello de Aragão. (He went out to Africa in 1593).

### BENGUELLA E SEU SERTÃO.

(c) 1617-1622. Benguella e seu sertão per um Anonymo. (The author of this account of the conquest of Benguella may possibly have been Manuel Cerveira Pereira).

### ESTABELECIMENTOS.

(d) 1607. Estabelecimentos e Resgates Portuguezes na costa occidental de Africa por um Anonymo.

### ESCRAVOS E MINAS.

(e) 1516-1619. Escravos e Minas de Africa segundo Diversos.

D. LOPEZ.—*Relatione del Reame di Congo e della circonvicine contrade tratta dalli Scritti e ragionamente di Odoardo Lopez, per Filippo Pigafetta.* Roma, 1591.

This work has been translated into Latin, German, Dutch, French, and English, but has not hitherto found a competent editor. I quote the English translation by Mrs. M. Hutchinson, published at London in 1881.

Duarte Lopez went out to Kongo in 1578; and the bulk of this volume is based upon information imparted to his editor when he was in Rome in 1591. Pigafetta has most unwisely expanded the information thus obtained into a description of the greater part of Africa.

CAVAZZI.—*Istorica descrizione de' tre regni Congo, Matamba, e Angola, accuratamente compilata, dal P. Gio. Antonio Cavazzi da Montecuccolo.* Bologna, 1687.

Cavazzi, a Capuchin, visited Kongo and Angola twice (1654-67, 1670-), and died at Genoa in 1692. This bulky folio only deals with his first visit, and was edited by P. Fortunato Alamandini, of Bologna. Labat (*"Relation historique de l'Ethiopie,"* Paris, 1732) has given a useful version of it in French, which must, however, be used with some caution. It is by far the most important work we have at the hand of one of the early Catholic missionaries. W. D. Cooley's observation (*"Inner Africa Laid Open,"* London, 1852, p. 3), that the works published up to the time of Cavazzi "would hardly furnish twenty pages of sound geographical intelligence," can apply only to what they say of Inner Africa; whilst Lopez de Lima (*"Ensaio,"* p. xi) is hardly justified in calling Cavazzi a "fabulista," unless that opprobrious term be confined to what the friar relates of the miracles wrought by himself and others.

DAPPER.—*Nauwkeurige beschrijving der Afrikaansche gewesten van Olf. Dapper.* Amst., 1668.

I quote the German translation (*"Beschreibung von Afrika,"* Amst., 1670).

This is a very careful compilation; more especially interesting, as it contains information on the country collected during the Dutch occupation (1642-48), not to be found elsewhere.

CADORNEGA.—*Historia das guerras de Angola (Historia General Angolana), por D. A. de Oliveira Cadornega,* in 1680-82.

Cadornega, a native of Villa Viçosa, accompanied D. Pedro Cezar de Menezes to Angola in 1639, and died at Luandu in 1690. His work (in three volumes) only exists in MS. in the library of the Academy of Sciences, Lisbon, and in the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris. I have not been able to consult it with the minuteness which it deserves. A rough copy of a considerable portion of it is to be found in the British Museum (*Add. MS.* 15,183, fol. 22). Copious extracts from it are given by Paiva Manso and D. Jose de Lacerda (*"Exame das Viagens do Dr. Livingstone,"* Lisbon, 1867).

CATALOGO.—Catalogo dos Governadores do Reine de Angola (Collecção de Noticias para a historia das nações ultramarinas publicada pela Academia real das Sciencias, tome III, pt. 2). Lisboa, 1826.

This is an anonymous compilation, continued to the year 1784. J. C. Feo Cardozo, in his "Memorias contendo a biographia do Vico-Almirante Luiz da Motta Feo e Torres," Paris, 1825, also printed this chronological history, and continued it to the year 1825. He has added the map drawn in 1790 by Colonel L. C. C. Pinheiro Furtado. The "Catalogue" is useful, but it is not free from very serious errors.

BENTLEY.—Dictionary and Grammar of the Kongo Language, by the Rev. W. Holman Bentley. 1887.

CORDEIRO DA MATTA.—Ensaio de Diccionario Kimbundu-Portuguezee coordenado par L. D. Cordeiro da Matta. Lisboa, 1893.

LOPES DE LIMA, ENSAIO.—Ensaio sobre a Statistica das possessões Portuguezes (III. Ensaio sobre a Statistice d'Angola e Benguella), por José Joaquim Lopes de Lima (Imp. nac.), 1846.

This is a fundamental work. The historical account is contained in the Introduction and in chap. v.

LOPES DE LIMA, AN. MAR.—Descobrimento, posse, e conquista do reino do Congo pelos Portuguezes no Seculo xvi, por J. J. Lopes de Lima ("Annaes maritimos e coloniaes," Lisboa, 1845, pp. 93-108).

LOPES DE LIMA.—Successos do Reino do Congo, no seculo xvii, pelo J. J. Lopes de Lima (*ibid.*, pp. 194-99).



THE STRANGE ADVENTURES  
OF  
ANDREW BATTELL OF LEIGH IN ESSEX,  
SENT BY THE PORTUGALS PRISONER TO ANGOLA,  
WHO LIVED THERE, AND IN THE ADJOINING  
REGIONS, NEAR EIGHTEEN YEARS.

---

§ I.

*Andrew Battell, his Voyage to the River of Plate, who being taken on the coast of Brasill, was sent to Angola.*

*[From the Thames to Cape Palmas.]*



IN the year 1589, Abraham Cocke<sup>1</sup> of Limehouse, began his voyage toward the River of Plate, with two pinnaces<sup>2</sup> of fifty tons apiece: the one was called the *May-Morning*, the other the *Dolphin*.

We sailed from the river Thames the twentieth of April; and the six and twentieth of the same month we put into

---

<sup>1</sup> Abraham Cocke had been in the Brazils before this voyage, for we learn from Purchas (bk. vi, Pt. IV, London, 1625, p. 1141) that George, Earl of Cumberland, who had left Gravesend on June 26, 1586, with three ships and a pinnace, fell in, on January 10, 1587, with a Portuguese vessel, a little short of the River Plate, and in her found "Abraham Cock, of Leigh, near London," whom he brought home with him.

<sup>2</sup> Pinnace: formerly applied to any small vessel, usually schooner-rigged; at present limited to a large rowing-boat carried by great ships.

Plimmoth [Plymouth], where we took in some provision for the voyage. The seventh of May we put to sea, and with foul weather were beaten back again into Plimmoth, where we remained certain days, and then proceeded on our voyage: And running along the coast of Spain and Barbary we put into the road of Sancta Cruz,<sup>1</sup> and there set our Light-horse-man<sup>2</sup> together which we carried in two pieces. Abraham Cocke made great account hereof, thinking that this boat should have made his voyage. This done, we put to sea, and running along the coast of Guinea we were becalmed, because we were so near the coast.

[*St. Thomé and the Gulf of Guinea.*]

Here our men fell sick of the scurvy, in such sort, that there were very few sound. And being within three or four degrees of the equinoctial line we fell with the Cape de las Palmas, where we had some refreshing, wherewith our men recovered. The people of the Cape de las Palmas [Cabo das Palmas] made much of us, saying that they would trade with us; but it was but to betray us, for they are very treacherous, and were like to have taken our boat, and hurt some of our men. From this Cape we lay southwest off;<sup>3</sup> but the current and the calms deceived us, so that we were driven down to the isle of St. Thome,<sup>4</sup> think-

---

<sup>1</sup> Santa Cruz de Tenerife, Canary Islands.

<sup>2</sup> Light-horseman: a pinnace, a rowing-boat.

<sup>3</sup> Vessels bound for Brazil usually cross the Equator about long. 22° W. If Captain Cock really intended to go direct to Brazil, he had no business at Cabo das Palmas. Can his voyage to S. Thomé really have been, as he says, an involuntary deviation from his direct course?

<sup>4</sup> The island of S. Thomé was discovered by the Portuguese about 1472, and received its first settlers in 1486. In the course of the sixteenth century it suffered much from the depredations of French, English, and Dutch pirates, as also (1574) from a revolt headed by the Angolares: that is, the descendants of Angolan slaves who had swum ashore when the vessel which carried them was wrecked, in 1544, on the Sette Pedras, and had fled to the woods near. The Fortaleza de S. Sebastião was intended to defend the capital against piratical

ing that we had been further off to the Sea than we were. And being in distress for wood and water, we went in on the south end between San Tome and the islands das Rolas,<sup>1</sup> where we rode very smooth, and with our light-horse-man went on shore, thinking to have watered, but we found none in the island. Here we had great store of plantains and oranges. We found a village of negrocs, which are sent from San Tome, for the Portugals of San Tome do use, when their slaves be sick or weak, to send them thither to get their strength again. For the islands are very fruitful, and though there be no fresh water, yet they maintain themselves with the wine of the palm-trees. Having refreshed ourselves with the fruit of this island, we burned the village. And running on the east side of San Tome we came before the town;<sup>2</sup> but we durst not come near, for the castle shot at us, which hath very good ordnance in it.

Then we lay east and by south toward the main, and in four and twenty hours we had sight of the Cape de Lopo Gonsalves:<sup>3</sup> and being within three leagues of the said cape we cast about and stood again toward the island of San Tome, and turned up on the west side of the island; and coming to a little river, which runneth out of the mountains, we went on shore with our Light-horse-man, with six or seven butts to fill with water. But the governor had ambushed one hundred men of the island; and when we

---

attacks. It was completed in 1575; but the Dutch, under Admiral Van der Dam, nevertheless sacked the city in 1600. Only four years before the author's arrival, in 1485, the city had been destroyed by fire.

<sup>1</sup> The Ilhéu das Rôlas (Turtle-dove Island) lies about a mile off the southern extremity of S. Thomé. It is of volcanic origin, rises to a considerable height, and is densely wooded. The inhabitants (about 100) are dependent upon the rain for their drinking water, for there are no springs. The chief articles of export are cacao and coffee.

<sup>2</sup> That is, the Povoação of early days, on the Bahia de Anna de Chaves, incorporated in 1535 as the Cidade de S. Thomé.

<sup>3</sup> Cabo de Lopo Gonçalves, thus named after its discoverer, Cape Lopez of our charts, in lat 0° 26' S.

were on shore they came upon us, and killed one of our men and hurt another : wherefore we retired to our boat and got aboard.

[*Across the Atlantic to the Brazils.*]

Then Abraham Cocke determined to fetch the coast of Brasil, and lay west-south-west into the sea : and being some fifty leagues off, we fell into a shoal of dolphins,<sup>1</sup> which did greatly relieve us, for they did follow our ship all the way, till we fell [in] with the land, which was some thirty days. And running along the coast of Brasil till we came to Ilha Grande,<sup>2</sup> which standeth in five [*sic*] degrees southward of the line, we put in betwixt the island and the main, and haled our ships on shore, and washed them, and refreshed ourselves, and took in fresh water. In this island are no inhabitants, but it is very fruitful. And being here some twelve days there came in a little pinnace which was bound to the River of Plate, which came in to water and to get some refreshments : and presently we went aboard, and took the Portugal merchant out of the pinnace, which told Abraham Cocke, that within two months there should two pinnaces come from the River of Plate, from the town of Buenos Aires.

[*The Rio de la Plata.*]

From this town there come every year four or five caravels to Bahia<sup>3</sup> in Brasil, and to Angola in Africa, which bring great store of treasure, which is transported overland out of Peru into the River of Plate. There Abraham

---

<sup>1</sup> The "dolphin" of British sailors is the *doirada*, or gilthead, of the Portuguese (*Coryphaena hippurus*), and delights to swim in the shadow of the vessel.

<sup>2</sup> The Ilha Grande lies in lat. 23° 10' S., sixty miles to the west of Rio de Janeiro. It is about seventeen miles in length, lofty, and shelters a safe bay, surrounded with magnificent scenery.

<sup>3</sup> S. Salvador, on the Bahia de todos os Santos, lat. 13° S.

Cocke, desirous to make his voyage, took some of the *Dolphin's* men into his ship, and sent the *Dolphin* home again, which had not as yet made any voyage. This Portugal merchant carried us to a place in this island, where there was a banished man,<sup>1</sup> which had planted great store of plantains, and told us that we might, with this fruit, go to the River of Plate: for our bread and our victuals were almost all spent.

With this hard allowance we departed from this island, and were six-and-thirty days before we came to the Isle of Lobos Marinos,<sup>2</sup> which is in the mouth of the River of Plate. This island is half a mile long, and hath no fresh water, but doth abound with seals and sea-morses,<sup>3</sup> in such sort that our light-horseman could not get on shore for them, without we did beat them with our oars: and the island is covered with them. Upon these seals we lived some thirty days, lying up and down in the river, and were in great distress of victuals. Then we determined to run up to Buenos Aires, and with our light-horseman to take one of the pinnaces that rid at the town. And, being so high up the river as the town, we had a mighty storm at south-west,<sup>4</sup> which drove us back again, and we were fain to ride under the Isla Verde<sup>5</sup>—that is, the green island—which is in the mouth of the river on the north side.

---

<sup>1</sup> That is, one of the "degradados" or convicts, whom it is even now customary to banish to the Colonies.

<sup>2</sup> The Isla de Lobos Marinos (Seal Island) lies off Maldonado Point, and forms a conspicuous landmark for vessels approaching the Rio de la Plata.

<sup>3</sup> The Seal (*phoca vitulina*, Linn.) and Otary (*Otaria jubata*, Desm.) have become very rare. The morse or walrus is found only in the Northern hemisphere.

<sup>4</sup> These south-westerly winds are known as *Pamperos*. They are more frequent in winter. In summer they blow with greater force, but generally cease sooner.

<sup>5</sup> Isla Verde can be no other than Flores, a small island further west than the Isla de Lobos.

[*A Prisoner of the Portuguese.*]

Here we were all discomfited for lack of victuals and gave over the voyage, and came to the northward again, to the isle of Sant Sebastian, lying just under the tropic of Capricorn.<sup>1</sup> There we went on shore to catch fish, and some went up into the woods to gather fruit, for we were all in a manner famished. There was at that time a canoe fraught with Indians, that came from the town of Spiritu Sancto.<sup>2</sup> These Indians landed on the west side of the island, and came through the woods and took five of us, and carried us to the River of Janeiro [Rio de Janeiro]. After this mischance our captain, Abraham Cocke, went to sea, and was never heard of more.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Ilha de São Sebastião, in lat. 23° 50' S.

<sup>2</sup> Espirito Santo, a town on the coast of Brazil, in lat. 20° 20' S.

<sup>3</sup> This capture must have happened at the end of 1589, or, at latest, early in 1590, yet Thomas Knivet, who only left England with Cavendish in August 1591, gives an account of the capture of five Englishmen (Purchas iv, 1625, p. 1220) which at the first glance seems to be a different version of this very incident. Knivet professes to have been at Rio de Janeiro at the time, two months after his return from Angola in 1598. He says: "There came a small man-of-war to Great Island [Ilha Grande, 70 miles west of Rio]; the captain's name was *Abram Cocke*; he lay in wait for the ships on the River of Plate, and had taken them if it had not been for five of his men that ran away with his boat that discovered his being there; for within a sevendnight after he was gone three caravels came within the same road where he was. These five men were taken by a Friar who came from S. Vincent, and were brought to the river of Janeiro. I being at this time in some account with the Governor favoured them as well as I could." In the further course of his narrative Knivet names two of these five men, namely, *Richard Heixt* and *Thomas Cooper*. *Thomas Turner* is referred to elsewhere, but not under circumstances which would lead one to assume that he was one of the five. Battell is not mentioned at all.

Are we to suppose, then, that Captain Cocke *was* heard of once more, and that in 1599 he lost five men on the Ilha Grande, just as nine years before he had lost five on the island of San Sebastian? Such a coincidence is possible, but most improbable.

[*Transported to Angola.—A Voyage to the Zaire.*]

When we that were taken had remained four months in the River of Janeiro, I and one Torner<sup>1</sup> were sent to Angola in Africa, to the city of Saint Paul,<sup>2</sup> which standeth in nine degrees to the southward of the equinoctial line. Here I was presently taken out of the ship and put into prison, and sent up the River Quansa,<sup>3</sup> to a town of garrison, which is 130 miles up the river. And being there two months the pilot of the governor's pinnace died : then I was commanded to carry her down to the city, where I presently fell sick, and lay eight months in a poor estate, for they hated me because I was an Englishman. But being recovered of my sickness, Don John Hurtado de Mendoça,<sup>4</sup> who then was governor, commanded me to go to the river of Congo, called Zaire, in a pinnace, to trade for elephants' teeth,<sup>5</sup> wheat,<sup>6</sup> and oil of the palm-tree. The river Zaire<sup>7</sup> is fifty leagues from the city, to the north-

<sup>1</sup> This Thomas Turner, or Torner, subsequently returned to England, and Purchas had speech with him.

<sup>2</sup> São Paulo de Loanda, the capital of Angola, 8° 48' S.

<sup>3</sup> The Kwanza, the most important river of Angola, navigable from the sea as far as the rapids of Cambambe. The "town of garrison" was Masanganu, founded in 1582.

<sup>4</sup> João Furtado de Mendonça only arrived at Loanda on August 1, 1594. He remained Governor until early in 1602, when he was succeeded by João Rodriguez Coutinho.

<sup>5</sup> That is, the two incisors of the upper jaw, commonly known as "tusks."

<sup>6</sup> Battell's "wheat" is *masa-mamputo*, or zea mayz. Elsewhere he speaks of "Guinea wheat," and this might be sorghum or millet ; but as he says that the natives call the grain "mas impoto," there can be no doubt about its identity with *masa-mamputo*, the grão de Portugal, or maize, which, according to Ficalho, was imported from America.

<sup>7</sup> The River of Congo is known to the natives as "Nzadi," or "Nzari," which merely signifies "great river" (Bentley's *Dictionary of the Congo Language*). For Isle de Calabes we ought perhaps to read Ilha das Calabaças (Calabash Island). The position of this island I am unable to determine. Perhaps it is the same as an Ilheo dos Cavallos Marinhos (Hippopotamus Island), described by Pimentel as lying

ward, and is the greatest river in all that coast. In the mouth of that river is an island, called the Isle de Calabes, which had at that time a town in it. Here we laded our pinnace with elephants' teeth, wheat, and oil of the palm, and so returned to the city again.

---

within the Cabo do Padrão, Congo mouth. Duarte Lopez (*A Report of the Kingdom of Congo, drawn out of the Writings of Duarte Lopez*, by F. Pigafetta, 1591. Translated by Margareta Hutchinson. London, 1881) says it was the first island met with on entering the Zaire, and that, although small, the Portuguese had a town upon it.

---

## § II.

*His trading on the coast; offer to escape; imprisonment; exile; escape and new imprisonment; his sending to Elamba and Bahia das Vaccas; many strange occurrences.*

[*Trading in Loango.*]

When I was sent to Longo [Loango], which is fifteen leagues to the northward of the River Zaire, and carried all commodities fit for that country, as long glass beads, and round blue beads, and seed beads, and looking-glasses, blue and red coarse cloth, and Irish rugs, which were very rich commodities. Here we sold our cloth at a great rate, for we had for one yard of cloth three elephants' teeth, that weighed 120 pounds; and we bought great store of palm-cloth<sup>1</sup> and elephants' tails.<sup>2</sup> So, in little time we laded our pinnace. For this voyage I was very welcome to the governor, who promised me my liberty if I would serve him. So I went in his pinnace two years and a half upon the coast.

[*An Attempted Escape.*]

Then there came a ship of Holland to the city, the merchant of which ship promised to carry me away. And, when they were ready to depart I went secretly on board, but I was betrayed by Portugals which sailed in the ship,

---

<sup>1</sup> Palm cloth is made from the fronds of the *ntera*, or fan palm (*Hyphæne Guineensis*).

<sup>2</sup> Dapper (*Africa*, Amsterdam, 1670, p. 520) tells us that the hairs from an elephant's tail were highly valued by the natives, who wove them into necklaces and girdles; fifty of these hairs or bristles were worth 1000 reis! Duarte Lopez (*Kingdom of Congo*, London, 1881, p. 46) says that one such tail was equal in value to two or three slaves, and that native hunters followed the elephants up narrow and steep defiles, and there cut off the desired spoils. Battell himself (see p. 58) bought 20,000 (hairs) which he sold to the Portugals for thirty slaves.

and was fetched on shore by sergeants of the city and put in prison, and lay with great bolts of iron two months, thinking that the governor would have put me to death. But at last I was banished for ever to the Fort of Massangano, to serve in the conquest of those parts. Here I lived a most miserable life for the space of six years without any hope to see the sea again.

[*A Second Attempt at Escape.*]

In this fort there were Egyptians and Moriscoes that were banished as myself. To one of these Egyptians<sup>1</sup> I brake my mind, and told him that it were better for us to venture our lives for our liberty than to live in that miserable place. This Egyptian was as willing as myself, and told me he would procure ten of his consorts to go with us. So we got three Egyptians and seven Portugals. That night we got the best canoe that we could find, and went down the river Cuanza, and being as far down as Mani Cabech,<sup>2</sup> which is a little lord in the province of Elamba [Lamba], we went on shore with our twelve muskets, powder and shot.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Egyptians were, of course, Ciganos, or gypsies. They appeared in Portugal in the beginning of the sixteenth century. A Royal order of 1526 ordered them to leave the kingdom, but appears to have had no more effect than a law of 1538, which, on account of the thefts of which they were accused, and their sorceries, threatened them with a flogging and the confiscation of their goods, if caught within the kingdom. This law was re-enacted in 1557, when the galleys were substituted for a flogging; and in 1592 a still more severe law was enacted, which threatened with death all those who should not quit the kingdom within four months. Battell's associates were, no doubt, gypsies who had been sent as convicts to Angola (see F. A. Coelho, *Os Ciganos de Portugal*, Lisbon, 1892).

The Moriscoes are the Moors of Morocco. Early Portuguese writers refer to the men who had fought in Africa (Morocco) as Africanos, and Battell's Moriscoes were in all probability Moorish prisoners of war, or Moors expelled from Portugal.

<sup>2</sup> Mani or Muene, lord and even king, as Muene Putu, King of Portugal, but also applied to a mere village chief. The *Cabech* of Battell must have resided somewhere about Muchima, but on the right bank of the Coanza.

Here we sunk our canoe, because they should not know where we went on shore. We made a little fire in the wood, and scorched Guinea wheat,<sup>1</sup> which we [had] brought from Massanganò, to relieve us, for we had none other food.

As soon as it was night, we took our journey all that night and the next day, without any water at all. The second night we were not able to go, and were fain to dig and scrape up roots of trees, and suck them to maintain life. The third day we met with an old negro which was travelling to Mani Cabech. We bound his hands behind him, and made him lead us the way to the Lake of Casansa.<sup>2</sup> And, travelling all that day in this extreme hot country we came to the Bansa [mbanza], or town, of Mani Casansa, which lyeth within the land twelve leagues from the city of San Paulo. Here we were forced to ask water, but they would give us none. Then we determined to make them flee their houses with our shot; but seeing that we were desperately bent they called their Lord, Mani Casansa, who gave us water and fair speeches, desiring us to stay all night, only to betray us; but we departed presently, and rested that night in (*sic*) the lake of Casansa.

The fourth day, at night, we came to the river which is towards the north,<sup>3</sup> and passed it with great danger. For there are such abundance of crocodiles in this river that no man dare come near the riverside when it is deep. The fifth day, at night, we came to the river Dande, and travelled so far to the eastward that we were right against

---

<sup>1</sup> Battell's Guinea wheat is *masa-mamputo*, or *grão de Portugal*, the *zea mayz* of botanists, which, according to Candolle and Ficalho, was introduced from America.

<sup>2</sup> Kasanza's lake can confidently be identified with the Lalama Lake of modern maps, south of the Rio Bengo, thirty-six miles due east of S. Paulo de Loanda. *Ka* is a diminutive; *nsanza* means village.

<sup>3</sup> The river of Bengo, N. of the mouth of the Congo, is the river which is towards the north.

the Serras, or mountains of Manibangono,<sup>1</sup> which is a lord that warreth against the King of Congo, whither we intended to go. Here we passed the river, and rested half the night. And being two leagues from the river we met with negroes, which asked us whither we travelled. We told them that we were going to Congo. These negroes said that we were in the wrong way, and that they were Masicongos,<sup>2</sup> and would carry us to Bambe,<sup>3</sup> where the Duke of Bambe lay.

So we went some three miles east, up into the land, till we perceived that we were in the wrong way, for we travelled by the sun, and would go no further that way, and turned back again to the westward ; they stood before us with their bows, arrows and darts, ready to shoot at us. But we, determining to go through them, discharged six muskets together and killed four, which did amaze them, and made them to retire. But they followed us four or five miles, and hurt two of our company with their arrows. The next day we came within the borders of Bamba, and travelled all that day. At night we heard the surge of the sea. The seventh day, in the morning, we saw the captain of the city come after us with horsemen and great store of negroes. Here-upon our company being dismayed, seven of our faint-hearted Portugals hid themselves in the thickets. I, and the four Egyptians, thought to have escaped, but they followed us so fast that we were fain to go into a little wood. As soon as the captain had overtaken us he discharged a volley of shot into the wood, which made us lose one another.

---

<sup>1</sup> Mani Bangono's district is not mentioned elsewhere. It cannot have been far from the sea.

<sup>2</sup> Mushi or Mwishikongo, a Congo-man : plural, Eshi-Kongo.

<sup>3</sup> Bamba, or rather Mbamba, the south-west province of Congo, extending to the lower Coanza.

*[Surrenders to a Portuguese Captain.]*

Thus, being all alone, I bethought myself that if the negroes did take me in the woods they would kill me : wherefore, thinking to make a better end among the Portugals and Mulatoes, I came presently out of the wood with my musket ready charged, making none account of my life. But the captain, thinking that we had been all twelve together, called to me and said : " Fellow Soldier, I have the governor's pardon ; if you will yield yourselves you shall have no hurt." I, having my musket ready, answered the captain that I was an Englishman, and had served six years at Massangono, in great misery ; and came in company with eleven Portugals and Egyptians, and here am left all alone ; and rather than I will be hanged, I will die amongst you. Then the captain came near unto me and said : " Deliver thy musket to one of the soldiers ; and I protest, as I am a gentleman and a soldier, to save thy life for thy resolute mind." Whereupon I yielded up my musket and myself.

Then the captain commanded all the soldiers and negroes to search the woods, and to bring them out alive or dead, which was presently done. Then they carried us to the city of San Paulo, where I and the three Egyptians lay in prison three months with collars of iron, and great bolts upon our legs, and hardly escaped.

*[A campaign in Lamba.]*<sup>1</sup>

At that time the governor sent four hundred men, that were banished out of Portugal, up into the country of

---

<sup>1</sup> Lamba, or Ilamba, is bounded by the Bengo in the north, and by the Coanza and its tributary the Lucalla on the south. The "Governor" here referred to is João Furtado de Mendonça. Battell seems to have been among the reinforcements despatched after the disastrous campaign in the spring of 1596. The "General" of Battell was João de Velloria, a Spaniard, who was Capitão mór do Campo.

Elambe. Then I was with proclamation through the city banished for ever to the wars, and marched with them to Sowonso,<sup>1</sup> which is a lord that obeyeth the Duke of Bamba ; from thence to Samanibansa, and then to Namba Calamba, which is a great lord, who did resist us. But we burnt his town, and then he obeyed us, and brought three thousand warlike negroes to us. From thence [we marched] to Sollancango, a little lord, that fought very desperately with us, but was forced to obey ; and then to Combrecainanga,<sup>2</sup> where we remained two years. From this place we gave many assaults and brought many lords to subjection. We were fifteen thousand strong, and marched to the Outeiro,<sup>3</sup> or mountain, of Ingombe. But first we burnt all Ingasia, which was his country, and then we came to the chief town of Ingombe, which is half a day's journey to go up.<sup>4</sup>

This lord came upon us with more than twenty thousand bows, and spoilt many of our men. But with our shot we made a great spoil among them, whereupon he retired up into the mountain, and sent one of his captains to our general, signifying that the next day he would obey him. The next day he entered our camp with great pomp, with

<sup>1</sup> The route followed by Battell is approximately indicated upon the map. Sowonso may be the same as Dapper's Chonso or Douville's Quonso, beyond Icolo. As to the other places along the route, I can suggest no identifications. Namba Calamba certainly has nothing to do with the Portuguese Fort Calumbu on the Coanza, built in 1571.

<sup>2</sup> Kumba ria Kaiangu ?

<sup>3</sup> *Outeiro* (Portuguese), a hill.

<sup>4</sup> Battell's Ingasia is undoubtedly the Angazi or Engase of Duarte Lopez, a Bunda district subject to Bamba, which in Pigafetta's map lies to the south of the river Bengo. Mendez de Castellobranco, p. 11, mentions Engombe (Ngombe). The name survives perhaps in the Ndembu Ngombe a Muquiana on the northern bank of the Bengo, who, according to J. V. Carneiro (*An. do conselho ultramar.*, vol. ii, pp. 172 to 179, 1861), was in olden times dependent upon Congo. The name Ngombe ("ox") is, however, a very common one.

drums, petes,<sup>1</sup> and Pongoes,<sup>2</sup> or waits, and was royally received ; and he gave great presents, and greatly enriched the general, and them which marched up. Upon the top of the mountain is a great plain, where he hath his chief town ; very fresh, full of palm-trees, sugar-canes, potatoes, and other roots, and great store of oranges and lemons. Here is a tree that is called *Engeriay*,<sup>3</sup> that beareth a fruit as big as a pome-water,<sup>4</sup> and hath a stone in it, present remedy (*sic*) for the wind colic, which was strange to the Portugals. Here is a river of fresh water, that springeth out of the mountains and runneth all along the town. We were here five days, and then we marched up into the country, and burned and spoiled for the space of six weeks, and then returned to Engombe again, with great store of margarite stones,<sup>5</sup> which are current money in that land.

<sup>1</sup> The Pete, more correctly called *Puita*, or *Kipuita*, is a musical instrument described by Monteiro (*Angola*, vol. ii, p. 140), and in Cordeiro da Matta's *Diccionario*, p. 29. It consists of a hollow wooden cylinder, one end of which is covered with sheepskin. A wooden stick is passed through the centre of this sheepskin, and a most hideous noise is produced by moving this stick to and fro.

<sup>2</sup> The Pongo (*mpunga*) is an ivory trumpet.

<sup>3</sup> *Engeriay* seems to be a misprint, perhaps for the *Ogheghe* of Duarte Lopez, which Ficalho identifies with Mung'eng'e (*Spondias lutea*) of Angola, called *Gego* by Lopez de Lima (*Ensaio*, vol. iii, p. 15). Dr. Welwitsch found the tree growing wild in the mountains of Benguella, whence it was transplanted to Loanda. It is valued for its wood, the shade it affords, and its fruit, which resembles a yellow plum, is of delicious flavour and esteemed as a remedy against bile (Ficalho, *Plantas uteis*, p. 126 ; Monteiro, *Angola*, vol. ii, p. 298). Purchas, in a marginal note, Bk. VII, c. 4, says that the *Ogheghe* "bears a fruit which is like a yellow plumme and is very good to eat, and hath a very sweet smell withall." This information was given by Battell.

<sup>4</sup> Pome-water, a kind of apple, called *malus carbonaria* by Coles (Nares's *Glossary*).

<sup>5</sup> *Margarita* is the Portuguese (and Latin) for pearl. Purchas may have suggested the word, whilst Battell simply referred to the *cowrie* currency of the country, or to a more valuable shell such as Cavazzi (p. 12) says was found near Cambambe, a collar of which had the value of a slave ; or to a crystal found in Shela, and called "thunder-stone" by the natives. Mr. R. C. Phillips writes : "I have found

Here we pitched our camp a league from this pleasant mountain, which remained twelve months: but I was shot in my right leg, and many Portugals and Mulatoes were carried to the city to be cured.

[*A Voyage to Benguella.*]

Then the governor sent a fregatte to the southward, with sixty soldiers, myself being one of the company, and all kinds of commodities. We turned up to the southward until we came into twelve degrees. Here we found a fair sandy bay. The people of this place brought us cows and sheep, wheat<sup>1</sup> and beans; but we staid not there, but came to Bahia das Vaccas: that is, the Bay of Cows, which the Portugals call Bahia de Torre,<sup>2</sup> because it hath a rock like a tower. Here we rode on the north side of the rock, in a sandy bay, and bought great store of cows, and sheep—bigger than our English sheep—and very fine copper. Also, we bought a kind of sweet wood, called *Cacongo*,<sup>3</sup> which the Portugals esteem much, and great store of wheat and beans. And having laded our bark we sent her home; but fifty of us staid on shore, and made a little fort with rafters of wood, because the people of this place are

---

that some kind of stone used to pass as money in the old slave times, say in 1850 or 1860, but I never saw one. These stones were of great value, and I have a vague idea they were called 'agang.'

<sup>1</sup> The author's "wheat" is maize (see p. 7).

<sup>2</sup> This is undoubtedly the bay upon which Manuel Cerveira Pereira, in 1617, founded the city of S. Filippe de Benguella. The bay at that time was known as Bahia da Torre, or de S. Antonio. By its discoverers it seems to have been named Golfo de S. Maria. The "torre" is, of course, the Ponta do Sombreiro or S. Philip's bonnet. Pimentel (*Arte de Navegar*, 1762, p. 276) locates a Bahia da Torre fifty miles to the south of Benguella Bay, which therefore corresponds to the Elephant Bay of modern maps, with its "mesa," or table-mountain rising to a height of a thousand feet.

<sup>3</sup> *Cacongo* (*recte* Kikongo), according to Welwitsch, is the wood of *Tarchonanthes camphoratus*. It is hard, of a greyish olive colour, and has the perfume of camphor. Its powder is esteemed as a tonic (Ficallha, *Bl.*).

treacherous, and not to be trusted. So, in seventeen days we had five hundred head of cattle; and within ten days the governor sent three ships, and so we departed to the city.

In this bay may any ship ride without danger, for it is a smooth coast. Here may any ship that cometh out of the East Indies refresh themselves. For the Portugals carracks<sup>1</sup> now of late come along the coast, to the city, to water and refresh themselves. These people are called *Endalanbondos*,<sup>2</sup> and have no government among themselves, and therefore they are very treacherous, and those that trade with these people must stand upon their own guard. They are very simple, and of no courage, for thirty or forty men may go boldly into the country and fetch down whole herds of cattle. We bought the cattle for blue glass beads of an inch long, which are called *Mopindes*,<sup>3</sup> and paid fifteen beads for one cow.

This province is called Dombe,<sup>4</sup> and it hath a ridge of high *serras*, or mountains, that stretch from the *serras* or mountains of Cambambe, wherein are mines, and lie along the coast south and by west. Here is great store of fine copper, if they would work in their mines; but they take no more than they wear for a bravery. The men of this place wear skins about their middles and beads about their necks. They carry darts of iron, and bow and arrows in

<sup>1</sup> Carraca, a vessel, generally of considerable burthen, and such as could be profitably employed in the Brazilian and Indian trade.

<sup>2</sup> Ndalabondo seems to be the name of a person. The people in the interior of Benguella are known as Bi'nbundo.

<sup>3</sup> Neither Mr. Dennett nor Mr. Phillips knows a bead of that name. *Mpinda* (plur. *Zimpinda*) means ground nut.

<sup>4</sup> For an account of Dombe, which lies to the south of St. Filip de Benguella, see Capello and Ivens, *From Benguella to the Territory of Yacca*, London, 1882, vol. i, p. 308; and Serpa Pinto, *How I Crossed Africa*, London, 1881, vol. i, p. 46. Copper ore abounds in the district, and a mine, four miles inland, was recently worked by the Portuguese.

their hands. They are beastly in their living, for they have men in women's apparel, whom they keep among their wives.

Their women wear a ring of copper about their necks, which weigheth fifteen pound at the least ; about their arms little rings of copper, that reach to their elbows ; about their middle a cloth of the *Insandie* tree, which is neither spun nor woven ;<sup>1</sup> on their legs rings of copper that reach to the calves of their legs.

---

<sup>1</sup> That is, bark-cloth made of the inner bark of the *nsanda*, Banyan or wild fig-tree, or *Ficus Lutata* (see Pechuel Loesche, *Loango Exped.*, vol. iii, p. 172).

---

## § III.

*Discovery of the Gagas: their wars, man-eating; over-running countries. His trade with them, betraying, escape to them, and living with them; with many strange adventures. And also the rites and manner of life observed by the Iagges or Gagas, which no Christian could ever know well but this author.*<sup>1</sup>

[*A Second Voyage to Benguella.*]

In our second voyage, turning up along the coast, we came to the Morro, or cliff of Benguele,<sup>2</sup> which standeth in twelve degrees of southerly latitude. Here we saw a mighty camp on the south side of the river Cova.<sup>3</sup> And being desirous to know what they were, we went on shore with our boat; and presently there came a troop of five hundred men to the waterside. We asked them who they were. Then they told us that they were the Gagas, or Gindes, that came from Sierra de lion [Serra Leôa],<sup>4</sup> and

---

<sup>1</sup> Purchas spells indifferently Gaga, Iagge, Giagas, etc. The correct spelling is Jaga or Jaka. For a sketch of the history of these military leaders, see Appendix.

<sup>2</sup> The Morro, or bluff, of Old Benguella, in lat. 10° 48' S., is a conspicuous headland, presenting a perpendicular cliff towards the sea, its summit being covered with cactus trees. Here Antonio Lopez Peixoto, a nephew of Paulo Dias, in 1587, had built a presidio, which was soon afterwards abandoned.

<sup>3</sup> The river Cuvo (Kuvu) enters the sea in 10° 52' S.

<sup>4</sup> In a note to Bk. VII, c. iv, § 8 (Hartwell's translation of Pigafetta), Battell is made to say that "the Iagges came from Sierre Liona. But they dispersed themselves as a general pestilence and common scourge through most parts of Ethiopia." But see p. 83, where Battell denies the statements made by Lopez.

Walkenaer (*Histoire des Voyages*, vol. xiii), says that Dapper's Sierra Leone cannot be the place usually known by that name. The only locality in that part of Africa named in honour of a lion, as far as I know, are the Pedras de Encoge, or more correctly *del nkoshi* (which means Lion).

passed through the city of Congo, and so travelled to the eastward of the great city of Angola, which is called Dongo.<sup>1</sup> The great Gaga, which is their general, came down to the waterside to see us, for he had never seen white men before. He asked wherefore we came. We told him that we came to trade upon the coast. Then he bade us welcome, and called us on shore with our commodities. We laded our ship with slaves in seven days, and bought them so cheap that many did not cost one real, which were worth in the city [of Loanda] twelve milreis.

[In a marginal note, Purchas adds :—

“He, in discourse with me, called them Iaggas, and their chief the great Iagge. I think he writ them Gagas for Giagas, by false spelling.”]

[*Among the Jagas.*]

Being ready to depart, the great Giaga staid us, and desired our boat to pass his men over the river Cova, for he determined to overrun the realm of Benguele, which was on the north side of the river Cova. So we went with him to his camp, which was very orderly, intrenched with piles of wood; we had houses provided for us that night, and many burthens [loads] of palm-wine, cows, goats and flour.

In the morning, before day, the general did strike his *gongo*,<sup>2</sup> which is an instrument of war that soundeth like a bell, and presently made an oration with a loud voice, that all the camp might hear, that he would destroy the Benguelas, with such courageous and vehement speeches as were not to be looked for among the heathen people.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ndongo is the name of the kingdom of Ngola (Angola). Its old capital was at Pungu-a-Ndongo, a remarkable group of rocks, popularly known as Pedras Negras.

<sup>2</sup> Ngongo (plural Jingongo), in Kimbundu, means twin, and hence *Ngong'e*, a double bell, such as is described by Monteiro (*Angola*, vol. i, p. 203); in Lunda it is called *rubembe* (Carvalho, *Exp. Port., Ethnographia*, p. 369). See also note, p. 80.



And presently they were all in arms, and marched to the river side, where he had provided *Gingados*.<sup>1</sup> And being ready with our boat and *Gingados*, the general was fain to beat them back because of the credit who should be first. We carried over eighty men at once, and with our muskets we beat the enemy off, and landed, but many of them were slain. By twelve of the clock all the Gagas were over.

Then the general commanded all his drums, *tavales*,<sup>2</sup> *petes*, *pongos*, and all his instruments of warlike music to strike up, and gave the onset, which was a bloody day for the Benguelas. These Benguelas presently broke, and turned their backs, and a very great number of them were slain, and were taken captives, man, woman and child. The prince, Hombiangymbe, was slain, which was ruler of this country, and more than one hundred of his chief lords, and their heads presented and thrown at the feet of the great Gaga. The men, women and children that were brought in captive alive, and the dead corpses that were brought to be eaten, were strange to behold. For these Gagas are the greatest cannibals and man-eaters that be in the world, for they feed chiefly upon man's flesh [notwithstanding of their] having all the cattle of that country.

They settled themselves in this country and took the spoil of it. We had great trade with these Gagas, five

<sup>1</sup> "Gingado," elsewhere spelt "Iergado," is evidently a misprint for *Jangada*, a Portuguese word meaning "raft." Such a raft is called *Mbimba*, and is made of the wood of the *bimba* (*Herminiera Elaphroxylon*, Guill. et. Perr.), which is identical with the *Ambaj* of the Nile, and grows abundantly on the swampy banks of the rivers. Battell himself, at a critical point of his career, built himself such a *jangada* (Ficalho, *Plantas uteis da Africa*, 1884, p. 33).

<sup>2</sup> *Tavale*. Mr. Dennet suggests that *tavale* corresponds to the *libala* of Loango, a word derived from the Portuguese *taboa* (table), for the instrument of this name consists of a board supported by two sticks of wood, and kept in its place by wooden pegs driven into the ground. The player beats this board with his two index fingers. A. R. Neves, *Mem. da Expedição a Castanhe*, p. 110, calls *tabalha* a

months, and gained greatly by them. These Gagas were not contented to stay in this place of Benguela, although they lacked almost nothing. For they had great store of cattle and wheat, and many other commodities; but they lacked wine, for in these parts there are no palm-trees.

After the five months were expired they marched toward the province of Bambala,<sup>1</sup> to a great lord that is called Calicansamba, whose country is five days up into the land. In these five months' space we made three voyages to the city of San Paul, and coming the fourth time we found them not.

[*March into the Interior.*]

Being loth to return without trade, we determined to go up into the land after them. So we went fifty on shore, and left our ship riding in the Bay of Benguela to stay for us. And marching two days up into the country we came to a great lord which is called Mofarigosat; and coming to his first town we found it burnt to the ground, for the Gagas had passed and taken the spoil. To this lord we sent a negro which we had bought of the Gagas, and [who] lived with us, and bid him say that he was one of the great Gaga's men, and that he was left to carry us to the camp. This lord bade us welcome for fear of the great Gaga, but he delayed the time, and would not let us pass till the Gaga was gone out of his country. This lord Mofarigosat, seeing that the Gagas were clear of him, began to palter with us, and would not let us go out of his land till we had gone to the wars with him, for he thought himself a mighty man having us with him. For in this place they never saw [a] white man before, nor guns. So we were

---

<sup>1</sup> Mbala or Embala merely means town or village. Lad. Magyar (*Reisen in Süd-Afrika*, p. 383) has a district Kibala, abounding in iron, the chief town of which is Kambuita on the river Longa. Walckenaer's suggestion (*Histoire des Voyages*, vol. xiii, p. 20) that Bambala and

forced to go with him, and destroyed all his enemies, and returned to his town again. Then we desired him that he would let us depart; but he denied us, without we would promise him to come again, and leave a white man with him in pawn.

*[Left as an Hostage.]*

The Portugals and Mulatos being desirous to get away from this place, determined to draw lots who should stay; but many of them would not agree to it. At last they consented together that it were fitter to leave me, because I was an Englishman, than any of themselves. Here I was fain to stay perforce. So they left me a musket, powder and shot, promising this lord, Mofarigosat, that within two months they would come again and bring a hundred men to help him in his wars, and to trade with him. But all was to shift themselves away, for they feared that he would have taken us all captives. Here I remained with this lord till the two months were expired, and was hardly used, because the Portugals came not according to promise.

The chief men of this town would have put me to death, and stripped me naked, and were ready to cut off mine head. But the Lord of the town commanded them to stay longer, thinking that the Portugals would come. And after that I was let loose again, I went from one town to another, shifting for myself within the liberties of the lord. And being in fear of my life among them I ran away, purposing to go to the camp of the Gagas.

*[He joins the Jagas.]*

And having travelled all that night, the next day I came to a great town which was called Cashil, which stood in a mighty overgrown thicket. Here I was carried into the town, to the lord Cashil. And all the town, great and

small, came to wonder at me, for in this place there was never any white man seen. Here were some of the great Gaga's men, which I was glad to see, and went with these Gagas to Calicansamba, where the camp was.

This town of the lord Cashil is very great, and is so overgrown with *Olicondie* [*baobab*]<sup>1</sup> trees, cedars,<sup>2</sup> and palms, that the streets are darkened with them. In the middle of the town there is an image, which is as big as a man, and standeth twelve feet high; and at the foot of the image there is a circle of elephants' teeth, pitched into the ground. Upon these teeth stand great store of dead men's skulls, which are [were] killed in the wars, and offered to this image. They used to pour palm oil at his feet, and kill goats, and pour their blood at his feet. This image is called Quesango,<sup>3</sup> and the people have great belief in him, and swear by him; and do believe when they are sick that Quesango is offended with them. In many places of this town were little images, and over them great store of elephants' teeth piled.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The baobab is indifferently called by Battell *alicunde*, *licondo*, *elicondi*, *olicandi*, or *alicunde*, all of which are corruptions of *nkondo*, by which name the tree is known in Congo. The Portuguese know this characteristic tree of the coast-land and the interior as *imbondeiro* (from *mbondo* in Kimbundu). Its inner bark yields a fibre known as *licomte*, is made into coarse cloth, and is also exported to Europe to be converted into paper. The wood is very light. The pulp of the fruit is refreshing, and was formerly esteemed as a remedy against fever and dysentery. The seeds are eaten. The shell (*macua*) is used to hold water (hence the popular name of Calabash tree). Ficalho distinguishes three species, viz., *Adansonia digitata*, Linn., the fruit of which is longish; *A. subglobosa*, bearing a bell-shaped fruit; *A. lageniformis*, yielding a fruit shaped like a cucumber (see Monteiro, *Angola*, vol. i, p. 78; Ficalho, *Plantas uteis*, p. 100).

<sup>2</sup> The cedar of the Portuguese is *Tamarix articulata*, Vahl., and resembles a cypress (Ficalho, *Plantas uteis da Africa*, 1884, p. 94).

<sup>3</sup> Kizangu, in Kimbundu, means fetish. Burton (*Two Trips to Gorilla Land*, vol. ii, p. 120), saw a like image, also called Quesango, in a village above Boma.

<sup>4</sup> The so-called fetishes (from *feitiço*, a Portuguese word meaning sorcery) are not idols, but charms and amulets, generally known as *nkissi*, *nkishi*, or *mukishi*. There are *nkissi* peculiar to a district, village or family: charms and amulets to shield the wearer or possessor

The streets of this town were paved with palm-canec, very orderly. Their houses were round like a hive, and, within, hanged with fine mats very curiously wrought. On the south-east end of the town was a mokiso [*mukishi*] which had more than three tons of elephants' teeth piled over him.

From this town of Cashil I travelled up into the country with the Gagas<sup>1</sup> two days, and came to Calicansamba, where the great Gaga had his camp, and was welcome to him. Among the cannibal people I determined to live, hoping in God that they would travel so far to the westward that we should see the sea again; and so I might escape by some ship. These Gagas remained four months in this place, with great abundance and plenty of cattle, corn, wine, and oil, and great triumphing,

---

against all the evils flesh is heir to, and others enabling the priest or *nganga* to discover crime or the cause of disease. The idea underlying the belief in the efficacy of these charms was very prevalent among our own ancestors, and the images, rosaries, crosses, relics, and other articles introduced by the Roman missionaries are looked upon by the natives as equivalent to their own *nkissi*. Even at the present day, images of S. Francis and of other saints may be seen in the collection of Royal Fetishes at S. Salvador, and a cross called *santu* (Santa Cruz) "is the common fetish which confers skill in hunting" (Bentley, *Pioneering on the Congo*, vol. i, pp. 35, 36, 39). The images, according to Bentley, seen among the natives are not idols but receptacles of "charms" or medicine. As to a belief in witchcraft (*ndoki*, witch; *Kindoki*, witchcraft), it is not even now quite extinct among Christian people, boasting of their civilisation, for a reputed wizard was drowned at Hedingham in Essex in 1863, and a witch burnt in Mexico as recently as 1873. Matthew Hopkins, the famous witch-finder, cannot claim a higher rank than an African *nganga*, although his procedure was not quite the same. Nor can I see any difference between a fetish and the miraculous "bambino" manufactured in the sixteenth century, and kept in the church of S. Maria Araceli, which a priest takes to the bedside of sick or dying persons, who are asked to kiss it to be cured, and whose guardians are at all times ready to receive the offerings of the faithful (see Dickens, *Pictures from Italy*).

<sup>1</sup> Marginal note by Purchas:—"Of these Gagas read also Pigafetta's *Book of Congo*, translated into English by M. Hartwell, and my *Pilgrimage*, l. 7. But none could so well know them as this author, who lived so long with them."

drinking, dancing, and banquetting, with man's flesh, which was a heavy spectacle to behold.

At the end of four months they marched towards the *Serras*, or mountains of Cashindcabar, which are mighty high, and have great copper mines, and they took the spoil all the way as they went. From thence they went to the river Longa,<sup>1</sup> and passed it, and settled themselves in the town of Calango,<sup>2</sup> and remained there five or six months. Then we arose and entered into the province of Tondo,<sup>3</sup> and came to the river Gonsa [Coanza],<sup>4</sup> and marched on the south side of the river to a lord that was called Makellacolonge, near to the great city of Dongo. Here we passed over mighty high mountains, and found it very cold.

Having spent sixteen months among these cannibals, they marched to the westward again, and came along the river Gonsa, or Gunza, to a lord that is called Shillambansa,<sup>5</sup> uncle to the King of Angola. We burnt his chief town, which was after their fashion very sumptuously builded. This place is very pleasant and fruitful. Here we found great store of wild peacocks,<sup>6</sup> flying up and down the trees, in as great abundance as other birds. The old lord Shillambansa was buried in the middle of the town, and had a hundred tame peacocks kept upon his grave, which peacocks he gave to his *Mokeso*, and they were called

<sup>1</sup> The river Longa [Lungu] enters the sea in lat. 10° 20' S.

<sup>2</sup> A soba Calungo is shown on the most recent maps as residing north of the river Longa.

<sup>3</sup> Perhaps we ought to read *Tunda*, the bush, the East. Lad. Magyar (*Reisen*, p. 378) has a chief Tunda in the country of the Sellas, and Falkenstein (*Loango Expedition*, p. 73) heard of a district Tunda, inland from Novo Redondo.

<sup>4</sup> The Gonsa or Gunza (Ngunza) of Battell is undoubtedly the Coanza. A river Ngunza enters the sea at Novo Redondo.

<sup>5</sup> *Shila*, nasty; *mbanza*, towns.

<sup>6</sup> According to Duarte Lopez (*Pigafetta*, p. 55), the feathers of peacocks and of ostriches are used as a standard in battle. Hence, peacocks are reared within a fence and reserved for the king.

*Angello Mokeso*,<sup>1</sup> that is, the Devil's or Idol's Birds, and were accounted as holy things. He had great store of copper, cloth, and many other things laid upon his grave, which is the order of that country.<sup>2</sup>

From this place we marched to the westward, along the river Coanza, and came right against the *Serras* or mountains of Cambambe, or Serras de Prata.<sup>3</sup> Here is the great fall of water, that falleth right down, and maketh a mighty noise that is heard thirty miles. We entered into the province of Casama,<sup>4</sup> and came to one of the greatest Lords, which was called Langere. He obeyed the great Gaga, and carried us to a Lord called Casoch,<sup>5</sup> which was a great warrior, for he had some seven years before overthrown the Portugals camp, and killed eight hundred Portugals and forty-thousand negroes, that were on the Portugals side. This Lord did stoutly withstand the Gagas, and had the first day a mighty battle, but had not the victory that day. So we made a sconce of trees after their fashion, and remained four months in the wars with

<sup>1</sup> *Njilo* (in Kimbundu), bird ; *mukishi*, a charm.

<sup>2</sup> See note, p. 51.

<sup>3</sup> Cambambe (*Ka*, diminutive ; *mbambi*, gazelle), a village on the north bank of the Coanza, below the falls formed by the river in forcing its way through the Serra de Prata. Silver, however, has never been found there (at least not in appreciable quantities), nor anywhere else in Angola or Congo. Still we are told (Paiva Manso, p. 50) that the King of Congo, in 1530, sent the wife of King Manuel two silver bracelets which he had received from one of his chiefs in Matamba, and that among the presents forwarded by Ngola Nbande, the King of Ndongo, to Paulo Dias in 1576, there were several silver bracelets, which the Regent of Portugal, Cardinal Henrique, had converted into a chalice, which he presented to the church at Belem (*Catalogo dos Governadores de Angola*). According to Capello and Ivens (*Benguella*, vol. ii, pp. 58, 233), silver ore is plentiful in Matamba, although they never saw any *in loco*.

<sup>4</sup> Battell's Casama is the wide province of Kisama (Quiçama), to the south of the Coanza.

<sup>5</sup> This Casoch (a misprint for Cafoch) is the Cafuxe (Cafuche) of the Portuguese, who defeated Balthasar de Almeida on April 22, 1594. On August 10, 1603, the Portuguese, led by Manuel Cerveira Pereira, retrieved this disaster.

them. I was so highly esteemed with the great Gaga, because I killed many negroes with my musket, that I had anything that I desired of him. He would also, when they went out to the wars, give charge to his men over me. By this means I have been often carried away in their arms, and saved my life. Here we were within three days' journey of Massangano, before mentioned, where the Portugals have a fort: and I sought means, and got to the Portugals again with merchant negroes that came to the camp to buy slaves.

[*Military Organisation of the Jagas.*]

There were in the camp of the Gagas twelve captains. The first, called Imbe Calandola,<sup>1</sup> their general, a man of great courage. He warreth all by enchantment, and taketh the Devil's counsel in all his exploits. He is always making of sacrifices<sup>2</sup> to the Devil, and doth know many times what shall happen unto him. He believeth that he shall never die but in the wars. There is no image among them, but he useth certain ceremonies. He hath straight laws to his soldiers: for, those that are faint-hearted, and turn their backs to the enemy, are presently condemned and killed for cowards, and their bodies eaten. He useth every night to make a warlike oration upon an high scaffold, which doth encourage his people.

It is the order of these people, wheresoever they pitch their camp, although they stay but one night in a place, to

---

<sup>1</sup> The name Calandola is by no means rare. A Calandula Muanji resided in 1884, eight miles to the north-east of Malanje (Carvalho, *Viagens*, vol. i, p. 443); another resided, formerly, near Ambaca (*ib.*, p. 230): and a third on the Lucala, south of Duque de Bragança, was visited by Capello and Ivens (*Benguella*, vol. ii, p. 45). A Jaga Calandula accompanied João Soares de Almeida on his disastrous expedition to Sonyo (*Cat. dos Gov.*, p. 390). Either of these may have been a descendant of Battell's Calandula.

<sup>2</sup> Human victims are still sacrificed by the diviner when consulting

build their fort, with such wood or trees as the place yieldeth : so that the one part of them cutteth down trees and boughs, and the other part carrieth them, and buildeth a round circle with twelve gates.<sup>1</sup> So that every captain keepeth his gate. In the middle of the fort is the general's house, intrenched round about, and he hath many porters to keep the door. They build their houses very close together, and have their bows, arrows, and darts standing without their doors ; and when they give alarm, they are suddenly all out of the fort. Every company at their doors [gates?] keep very good watch in the night, playing upon their drums and *tavales*.<sup>2</sup>

[*A River of Gold.*]

These Gagas told us of a river that is to the southward of the Bay of Vaccas,<sup>3</sup> that hath great store of gold : and that they gathered up great store of grains of gold upon the sand, which the fresh water driveth down in the time of rain. We found some of this gold in the handles of their hatchets, which they use to engrave with copper ; and they called it copper also, and do not esteem it.

---

<sup>1</sup> Cavazzi (*Historica Descrizione de tre Regni Congo, etc.*, Bologna, 1687, p. 207) gives a plan of a Jaga camp, or Kilombo. It is formed of a square stockade, having in its centre the quarters of the Commander-in-chief, within a triple hedge of thorns. Between the stockade, which has only a single gate, and the inner enclosure are the quarters of the six principal officers, including the Golambolo (*ngolo*, strength *mbula*, a blow), or Lieutenant-General, the Tendala, or Commander of the Rear-guard, and the Mani Lumbo (*lumbu*, a stockade), or Engineer-in-chief.

<sup>2</sup> *Tavales* (see note, p. 21).

<sup>3</sup> Bahia das Vaccas, old name for Benguella Bay. There seems to be no native name for gold ; yet Dr. Francisco Jose Maria de Lacerda, when with the abortive expedition of 1797, which was charged with the exploration of the Kunene, met a negress whose head-dress was composed of golden laminæ, said to have been washed in that river (Burton, *Lacerda's Journey to Cazembe*, London, 1873, p. 23). Ladislaus Magyar (*Reisen*, p. 176), says that about 1833 a Brazilian miner washed gold in the mountains of Hambo. Quite recently, in 1900, the Mossamedes Company granted a lease of the Kasinga goldfields to an English company.

[*Palm Wine.*]

These Gagas delight in no country, but where there is great store of Palmares, or groves of palms. For they delight greatly in the wine and in the fruit of the palm, which serveth to eat and to make oil. And they draw their wine contrary to the Imbondos.<sup>1</sup> These palm-trees are six or seven fathoms high, and have no leaves but in the top: and they have a device to go up to the top of the tree, and lay no hands on it, and they draw the wine in the top of the tree in a bottle.

But these Gagas cut the palm-trees down by the root, which lie ten days before they will give wine. And then they make a square hole in the top and heart of the tree, and take out of the hole every morning a quart, and at night a quart. So that every tree giveth two quarts of wine a day for the space of six and twenty days, and then it drieth up.

[*Jaga Raids.*]

When they settle themselves in any country, they cut down as many palms as will serve them wine for a month: and then as many more, so that in a little time they spoil the country. They stay no longer in a place than it will afford them maintenance. And then in harvest-time they arise, and settle themselves in the fruitfulness place they can find; and do reap their enemy's corn, and take their cattle. For they will not sow, nor plant, nor bring up any cattle, more than they take by wars.<sup>2</sup> When they come into any country that is strong, which they cannot the first day conquer, then their General buildeth his fort, and remaineth sometimes a month or two quiet. For he saith,

---

<sup>1</sup> The Imbondos are clearly the Nbandu of Angola, who draw the palm wine from the top, whilst the Jagas cut down the tree.

<sup>2</sup> Purchas adds, in a marginal note: "Fruges consumere nati."

it is as great wars to the inhabitants to see him settled in their country, as though he fought with them every day. So that many times the inhabitants come and assault him at his fort: and these Gagas defend themselves and flesh<sup>1</sup> them on for the space of two or three days. And when their General mindeth to give the onset, he will, in the night, put out some one thousand men: which do ambush themselves about a mile from their fort. Then in the morning the great Gaga goeth with all his strength out of the fort, as though he would take their town. The inhabitants coming near the fort to defend their country, being between them, the Gagas give the watchword with their drums, and then the ambushed men rise, so that very few escape. And that day their General overruneth the country.

[*Dress and Ornaments.*]

The great Gaga Calando<sup>2</sup> hath his hair very long, embroidered with many knots of Banba<sup>3</sup> shells, which are very rich among them, and about his neck a collar of *masoes*,<sup>4</sup> which are also shells, that are found upon that coast, and are sold among them for the worth of twenty shillings a shell: and about his middle he weareth *landes*, which are beads made of the ostrich eggs.<sup>5</sup> He weareth a palm-cloth about his middle, as fine as silk. His body is carved and cut with sundry works, and every day anointed with the fat of men.<sup>6</sup> He weareth a piece of copper cross

<sup>1</sup> "Flesh" in the sense of encourage.

<sup>2</sup> Calando should be Calandola (see note on p. 28).

<sup>3</sup> Mbamba, a whelk or trumpet-shell (Cordeiro da Matta, *Dicc. Kimbundu*).

<sup>4</sup> Mr. Dennet suggests *msose*, a turritella, popularly known as screw-shell.

<sup>5</sup> No ostriches are met with in Angola, and as to beads made of ostrich eggs, I can give no explanation.

<sup>6</sup> Monteiro was told that the Sobas and their wives among the

his nose,<sup>1</sup> two inches long, and in his ears also. His body is always painted red and white. He hath twenty or thirty wives, which follow him when he goeth abroad ; and one of them carrieth his bows and arrows ; and four of them carry his cups of drink after him. And when he drinketh they all kneel down, and clap their hands and sing.<sup>2</sup>

Their women wear their hair with high *trompes* full of bamba [*mbamba*] shells, and are anointed with civet.<sup>3</sup> They pull out four of their teeth, two above and two below, for a bravery. And those that have not their teeth out are loathsome to them, and shall neither eat nor drink with them. They wear great store of beads about their necks, arms, and legs ; about their middles, silk cloths.

[*Infanticide.*]

The women are very fruitful, but they enjoy none of their children : for as soon as the woman is delivered of her child, it is presently buried quick [alive], so that there is not one child brought up in all this generation.<sup>4</sup> But when they take any town they keep the boys and girls of thirteen or fourteen years of age as their own children. But the men and women they kill and eat. These little boys they train up in the wars, and hang a collar about their necks for a disgrace, which is never taken off till he proveth himself a man, and bring his enemy's head to the

---

<sup>1</sup> The practice of wearing such nose ornaments exists to the present day in Lunda, among the Bangala and other tribes (Capello and Ivens, *Benguela*, vol. i, p. 265 ; Carvalho, *Expedição Portuguesa ao Muatianvua*, *Lingua de Lunda*, p. 367 ; *Ethnographia*, p. 349).

<sup>2</sup> Marginal note by Purchas : " They use this ceremony in Florida."

<sup>3</sup> Civet-cats are numerous in this part of Africa.

<sup>4</sup> I am inclined to believe, from what we learn from Cavazzi and other missionaries, that only those children were killed which were born within the *Kilombo*. On the other hand, at the Court of the ferocious queen Jinga, we are told by Captain Füller, a Dutchman, that, on two days in 1648, 113 new-born infants born *outside* the camp were killed (Dapper, *Africa*, p. 545).

General : and then it is taken off and he is a freeman, and is called *Gonso* or soldier.<sup>1</sup> This maketh them all desperate, and forward to be free, and counted men : and so they do increase. In all this camp there were but twelve natural Gagas that were their captains, and fourteen or fifteen women. For it is more than fifty years since they came from Serra de Lion, which was their native country. But their camp is sixteen thousand strong, and sometimes more.<sup>2</sup>

[*Human Sacrifices.*]<sup>3</sup>

When the great Gaga Calandola undertaketh any great enterprise against the inhabitants of any country, he maketh a sacrifice to the Devil, in the morning, before the sun riseth. He sitteth upon a stool, having upon each side of him a man-witch : then he hath forty or fifty women which stand round about him, holding in each hand a *zevra* [zebra]<sup>4</sup> or wild horse's tail, wherewith they do flourish and sing. Behind them are great store of petes, pongs, and drums, which always play. In the midst of them is a great fire ; upon the fire an earthen pot with white powders, wherewith the men-witches do paint him on the

---

<sup>1</sup> *Ngunza*, according to Cordeira da Matta, means all-powerful ; according to Bentley a herald, who speaks on behalf of a chief.

<sup>2</sup> See note, p. 19.

<sup>3</sup> Human sacrifices among the Jaga are even now of frequent occurrence. They are made at the installation of a Jaga, one year after his election (when the sacrifice and its accompanying banquet are intended to conciliate the spirit of Kinguri, the founder of the Dynasty), at his death, on the outbreak of war, etc. The ceremony witnessed by Battell was an act of divination. The soothsayer summons the spirit of Kinguri, who is supposed to foretell the results of any enterprise about to be undertaken. In 1567, the Jaga Ngonga Kahanga, of Shela, having been advised by his soothsayers that he would suffer defeat in a war he was about to enter upon against the Portuguese, declined the arbitration of the sword, and submitted voluntarily. The body of the victim is cooked with the flesh of a cow, a goat, a yellow dog, a cock and a pigeon, and this mess is devoured (ceremoniously) by the Jaga and his *makotas* (councillors).

<sup>4</sup> The handle of this switch contains a potent medicine, which protects the owner against death.

forehead, temples, 'thwart the breast and belly, with long ceremonies and enchanting terms. Thus he continueth till sun is down. Then the witches bring his *Casengula*,<sup>1</sup> which is a weapon like a hatchet, and put it into his hand, and bid him be strong against his enemies : for his *mokiso* is with him. And presently there is a man-child brought, which forthwith he killeth. Then are four men brought before him ; two whereof, as it happeneth, he presently striketh and killeth ; the other two he commandeth to be killed without the fort.

Here I was by the men-witches ordered to go away, as I was a Christian, for then the Devil doth appear to them, as they say. And presently he commandeth five cows to be killed within the fort, and five without the fort : and likewise as many goats, and as many dogs, and the blood of them is sprinkled in the fire, and their bodies are eaten with great feasting and triumph. And this is used many times by all the other captains of their army.

[*Burial of the Dead.*]

When they bury the dead they make a vault in the ground, and a seat for him to sit.<sup>2</sup> The dead hath his his head newly embroidered, his body washed, and anointed with sweet powders. He hath all his best robes put on, and is brought between two men to his grave, and set in seat as though he were alive. He hath two of his wives set with him, with their arms broken, and then they cover over the vault on the top. The inhabitants when they die are buried after the same fashion, and have the most part

---

<sup>1</sup> *Casengula*, called *Kissengula*, p. 86, was perhaps a trombash, for *sangula* means to kill at a long range (Bentley).

<sup>2</sup> The Jagas are still buried sitting, and wives are sacrificed (Capello and Ivens, *From Benguella to the Territory of the Iacca*, vol. i, p. 330). In Ngois, likewise, the dead are occasionally buried in a sitting posture (Bastian, vol. i, p. 82). For a full account of a funeral, see Dennett's *Folklore*, p. 11.

of their goods buried with them. And every month there is a meeting of the kindred of the dead man, which mourn and sing doleful songs at his grave for the space of three days, and kill many goats, and pour their blood upon his grave, and palm-wine also ; and use this ceremony as long as any of their kindred be alive.<sup>1</sup> But those that have no kindred think themselves unhappy men, because they have none to mourn for them when they die. These people are very kind one to another in their health ; but in their sickness they do abhor one another, and will shun their company.

---

<sup>1</sup> These feasts are intended to secure the goodwill of the deceased, so that he may not injure the living. Human beings are occasionally sacrificed, in addition to goats and fowls.

---

## § IV.

*His return to the Portugals : invasions of diverse countries ; abuses ; flight from them and living in the woods diverse months ; his strange boat, and coming to Loango.*

[*João Rodrigues Coutinho's Campaign, 1602.*]

Being departed from the Gagas I came to Masangano, where the Portugals have a town of garrison. There was at that time a new Governor, which was called Sienor Iuan Coutinho,<sup>1</sup> who brought authority to conquer the mines or mountains of Cambamba ; and to perform that service the King of Spain had given him seven years' custom of all the slaves and goods that were carried thence to the West Indies, Brazil, or whithersoever, with condition that he should build three castles, one in Demba,<sup>2</sup> which are the salt mines, the other in Cambamba, which are the silver mines, and the other in Bahia das Vaccas, or the Bay of Cows.

This gentleman was so bountiful at his coming that his fame was spread through all Congo, and many mulatoes and negroes came voluntarily to serve him. And being some six months in the city he marched to the Outaba of Tombe,<sup>3</sup> and there shipped his soldiers in pinnaces, and went up the river Consa or Coanza, and landed at the

---

<sup>1</sup> João Rodrigues Coutinho received his appointment as Governor at Madrid, on January 30, 1601 (see Appendix).

<sup>2</sup> Ndemba, in Quissama, a territory famous for its salt mines, the chief of which was the Caculo Caquimone Casonga (Cadornega, 1702). In 1783, when P. M. Pinheiro de Lacerda invaded Quissama, a Caculo Caquimone still held the mines of Ndemba. *Kakulu*, the elder of twins, a title.

<sup>3</sup> Outaba seems to be a misprint for *libata* (village). Tombo is on the north bank of the Coanza, almost due south of Loanda.

Outaba of Songo,<sup>1</sup> sixty miles from the sea. This lord Songo is next to Demba, where the salt-mines be. In this place there is such store of salt that most part of the country are perfect clear salt, without any earth or filth in it, and it is some three feet under the earth as it were ice ; and they cut it out in stones of a yard long, and it is carried up into the country, and is the best commodity that a man can carry to buy anything whatsoever.

Here the Governor staid ten days, and sent a pinnace to Masangano for all the best soldiers that were there. So the captain of the castle sent me down among a hundred soldiers, and I was very well used by the Governor ; and he made me a sergeant of a Portugal company, and then he marched to Machimba,<sup>2</sup> from thence to Cauo, and then to Malombe, a great lord. Here we were four days, and many lords came and obeyed us. From thence we marched to a mighty lord called Angoykayongo,<sup>3</sup> who stood in the defence of his country with more than sixty thousand men. So we met with him, and had the victory, and made a great slaughter among them. We took captives all his women and children, and settled ourselves in his town, because it was a very pleasant place, and full of cattle and victuals. And being eight days in this town the Governor sickened and died, and left a captain in his room to perform the service.

<sup>1</sup> Songa, on the Coanza, below Muchima, a village in the territory of the Caculo Caquimone Casonga.

<sup>2</sup> Machimba I believe to be Muchima or Muxima, whilst (according to Cadornega) a chief Cavao occupied a district above Lake Quizua and below Massangano.

<sup>3</sup> According to the *Catalogo dos Governadores*, p. 356, the Governor died in Quissama. He was succeeded by his captain-major, Manuel Cerveira Pereira, and it was he who, on August 10, 1603, defeated Cafuxe, in the bloody battle to which reference is made in the text. Battell's Angoykayongo is undoubtedly identical with the *Agoacaiongo* of an anonymous account of the *Establimentos e Resgates Portuguezes* (1607), published by L. Cordeira. He was a Christian chief ; and a captain-major, with a detachment of cavalry, was stationed at his village to keep Quissama in order.

[*Manuel Cerveira Pereira carries on the war.*]

After we had been two months in the country of Angoykayongo we marched towards Cambambe, which was but three days' journey, and came right against the Serras da Prata, and passed the river Coanza, and presently overran the country, and built a fort hard by the riverside. Here I served two years.

They opened the silver-mines, but the Portugals did not like of them as yet, because they yielded small share of silver.<sup>1</sup>

This new up-start governor was very cruel to his soldiers, so that all his voluntary men left him; and by this means he could go no further.

At this time there came news by the Jesuits that the Queen of England was dead, and that King James had made peace with Spain.<sup>2</sup> Then I made a petition to the Governor, who granted me licence to go into my country; and so I departed with the Governor and his train to the city of St. Paul. But he left five hundred soldiers in the fort of Cambambe, which they hold still.<sup>3</sup>

[*A Trading Trip to Congo.*]

Then I went with a Portugal merchant to the province of Bamba, and from thence to the Outeiro ["hill"], or city standing upon a mountain of Congo,<sup>4</sup> from thence to Gongon<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See note, p. 27.

<sup>2</sup> Queen Elizabeth died April 3, 1603; but peace with Spain was only concluded on August 19, 1604.

<sup>3</sup> João de Araujo e Azevedo was the officer left in command at Cambambe.

<sup>4</sup> That is S. Salvador.

<sup>5</sup> Ngongo, according to Cavazzi (p. 521), is a place on the road from Sundi to Batta, where Girolamo da Montesarchio destroyed the heathen images. This place possibly corresponds to the modern Gongo, a station on the Stanley Pool Railway. Cadornega has a Gongo de Bata, which figures on Dapper's map as Congo de Bata, and lies to the west of the Mbanza of Bata. It is impossible to tell

and Batta,<sup>1</sup> and there we sold our commodities and returned in six months to the city [Loanda] again.

[*Final Escape from Captivity.*]

Then I purposed to have shipped myself for Spain, and thence homewards. But the Governor denied his word, and commanded me to provide myself within two days to go up to the Conquest again. This Governor had served his three years,<sup>2</sup> and the citizens looked every day for another out of Portugal. So I determined to absent myself for ten or twenty days, till the other Governor came, and then to come to the city again. For every Governor that cometh maketh proclamation for all men that be absent, to come with free pardon.

The same day, at night, I departed from the city with two negro boys that I had, which carried my musket and six pounds of powder, and a hundred bullets, and that little provision of victuals that I could make. In the morning I was some twenty miles from the city, up along the river Bengo, and there I staid certain days, and then passed Bengo and came to the river Dande, which is to the northward, purposing to know what news was in the city, for I was near the highway of Congo. And one of my negroes inquired of those that passed, and brought me word that it was certain that the new Governor came not that year.

Now I was put to my shifts, whether I would go to the

---

which of these places was visited by Battell; possibly he passed through both.

<sup>1</sup> The Mbanza or chief town of Mbata, or Batta, still exists in 8° S., long. 15° E. Bentley (*Pioneering*, vol. ii, p. 404) passed through it, and discovered a huge wooden cross, a relic of the ancient missionaries.

<sup>2</sup> D. Manuel Cerveira Pereira had assumed government at the beginning of 1603, and three years would conveniently carry us to 1606. The "new" Governor, D. Manuel Pereira Forjaz, was, however, only nominated on August 2, 1607.

city again and be hanged, or to stay and live in the woods, for I had run away twice before. So I was forced to live in the woods a month, betwixt the rivers of Dande and Bengo. Then I went to Bengo again, to Mani Kaswea, and passed over the river, and went to the lake of Casansa.<sup>1</sup> Here is the greatest store of wild beasts that is in any place of Angola. About this lake I staid six months, and lived only upon dried flesh, as buffes [buffaloes], deer, mokokes,<sup>2</sup> impolancas,<sup>3</sup> and roebucks, and other sorts, which I killed with my musket, and dried the flesh, as the savages do, upon an hurdle, three feet from the ground, making underneath it a great fire, and laying upon the flesh green boughs, which keep the smoke and heat of the fire down, and dry it. I made my fire with two little sticks, as the savages used to do. I had sometimes Guinea wheat [maize] which my negro boy would get of the inhabitants for pieces of dried flesh.

This lake of Casanze doth abound with fish of sundry sorts. I have taken up a fish that hath skipped out of the water on shore, four feet long, which the heathen call Sombo.<sup>4</sup>

Thus, after I had lived six months with the dried flesh and fish, and seeing no end of my misery, I wrought means to get away.

In this lake are many little island that are full of trees called *Memba* [*bimba*]<sup>5</sup> which are as light as cork and as soft. Of these trees I built a *Iergado* [*Jangada*], with a

<sup>1</sup> See note, p. 11.

<sup>2</sup> Nkoko, a large grey antelope.

<sup>3</sup> Impalanca, *Palanga*, or *Mpalanga*, an antelope (*Hippotragus equinus*).

<sup>4</sup> This is an electric silurus called *nsombo*, plur. *sinsombo*, by the natives. Fishermen dread its electrical discharges, but value its flesh (Pechuel-Loesche, *Die Loango Expedition*, vol. iii, p. 282). This fish, Mr. Dennett tells me, is the "xina" (taboo) of women, generally speaking, which may account for the word becoming a generic name for fish, as in Unyamwezi, Ugogo, and other countries, if vocabularies can be trusted.

<sup>5</sup> See note, p. 21.

knife of the savages that I had, in the fashion of a box nailed with wooden pegs, and railed round about, because the sea should not wash me out ; and with a blanket that I had I made a sail, and prepared three oars to row withall.

This lake of Casanza is eight miles over, and issueth into the river Bengo. So I entered into my *gingado* [*Jangada*], and my two negro boys, and rowed into the river Bengo, and so came down with the current twelve leagues to the bar. Here I was in great danger, because the sea was great ; and being over the bar I rode into the sea, and then sailed afore the wind along the coast, which I knew well, minding to go to the kingdom of Longo [Loango], which is towards the north ; and being that night at sea, the next day I saw a pinnace come before the wind, which came from the city, and was bound to San Thome, and she came near to me. The master was my great friend, for we had been mates together, and for pity's sake he took me in, and set me on shore in the port of Longo, where I remained three years, and was well beloved of the king, because I killed him deer and fowls with my musket.

## § V.

*Of the Province of Engoy [Ngoyo], and other Regions of Loango, with the Customs there observed by the King and People.*

## [Kabinda.]

From the Point of the Palmar [Ponta do Palmar],<sup>1</sup> which is the north side of the river Zaire, is the port of Cabenda [Kabinda],<sup>2</sup> where many ships use to water and refresh themselves; and it is five leagues northwards. This place is called Engoy [Ngoyo], and is the first province of Longo [Loango], and is full of woods and thickets. And seven leagues northwards of that place is the river Cacongo,<sup>3</sup> a very pleasant place and fruitful. Here is great stock of elephants' teeth, and a boat of ten tons may go up the river.

The Mombales<sup>4</sup> have great trade with them, and pass the river Zaire in the night, because then it is calm, and carry great store of elephants' teeth to the town of Mani Sonna [Sonyo], and sell them in the port of Pinda to the Portugals, or any other stranger that first cometh.<sup>5</sup>

At four leagues from Cacongo is the river of Caye, or Longo Leuyes.<sup>6</sup> This town of Caye [Kaia] is one of the

<sup>1</sup> This is Red Point, or Ponta Vermelha, where there is a grove of palms.

<sup>2</sup> Kabinda, 5° 31' S, on a fine bay.

<sup>3</sup> The river Kakongo, or Chiloango, enters the sea in lat. 5° 9' S. to the north of Landana. It is a very considerable river, and its waters discolour the sea for seven miles.

<sup>4</sup> Mbale, according to Bentley, is the coast region between the Congo and Ambrissette; but on Pigafetta's map (1591) a town, Mombales, is shown to the south-east of the chief place of Sonho (Sonyo).

<sup>5</sup> Pinda, or Mpinda, in Sonyo, is below the Mbanza of Sonyo, which on modern maps figures as St. Antonio.

<sup>6</sup> The Luiza Loango, or Massábi, river enters the sea in lat. 5° 1' S. Its depth across the bar is only 2 ft., but once within, it presents a fair waterway for over a hundred miles. Kaia is about ten miles up it.

four seats or lordships of Longo. And then the Angra, or Gulf, das Almadias.<sup>1</sup> In this gulf, or bay, are great store of canoes or fishermen, because the sea is smoother there than upon the coast. And two leagues northward is the port of Longo [Loango]. And it is a sandy bay, and a ship may ride within a musket-shot, of the shore in four or five fathoms.

[*The Capital of Loango.*]

The town of Mani Longo is three miles from the water-side, and standeth on a great plain. This town is full of palm and plantain-trees and very fresh, and their houses are built under the trees. The streets are wide and long, and always clean swept. The King hath his houses on the west side, and before his door he hath a plain, where he sitteth, when he has any feastings or matters of wars to treat of. From this plain there goeth a great wide street, some musket-shot from the place; and there is a great market every day, and it doth begin at twelve of the clock.

Here is great store of palm-cloths of sundry sorts, which is their merchandizes; and a great store of victuals, flesh, hens, fish, wine, oil, and corn. Here is also very fine log wood,<sup>2</sup> which they use to dye withall—it is the root of the log wood which is the best—and *molangos*<sup>3</sup> of copper. Here

<sup>1</sup> The Golfo das Almadias, or Canoe Bay, as described by Battell, corresponds to Black Point Bay, 4° 48' S., the inner bay of which, less than half a mile across, had become all but silted up by 1884.

<sup>2</sup> No logwood is found in Loango, and Purchas points out in a note (*post*, p. 82), that Battell's dyewood must be Red Sanders (*Pterocarpus tinctorius*), the *tacula* of Angola, and identical with the *tavila* of D. Lopez (Ficalho, *Plantas uteis*, p. 207). Pechuel-Loesche (*Loango Exp.*, vol. iii, p. 190), on the other hand, states that the dye known as *tacula* is camwood (*Baphia nitida*, Afz.), and Bentley (*Dict. of the Kongo Language*), who calls the dye *nkula*, is of the same opinion. Another red dye is obtained from the *Njilla sonde* (*Pterocarpus erinaceus*, Poir.).

<sup>3</sup> *Nlunga* (Bentley) or *malungu* (Cordeira da Matta) is the native word for bracelet.

is likewise great store of elephants' teeth, but they sell none in the market-place.

[*A Royal Audience.*]

The King hath ten great houses, and is never certain to be found but in the afternoon, when he cometh to sit. And then he keepeth always [to] one house. The house is very long, and at twelve of the clock it is full of noblemen. They sit upon carpets upon the ground. The house is always full of people till midnight.

The last king, Gembe [Njimbe],<sup>1</sup> never used to speak in the day, but always in the night. But this king speaketh in the day : howbeit he spendeth most of the day with his wives. And when the king cometh in he goeth to the upper end of the house, where he hath his seat, as it were a throne. And when the king is set, they clap their hands and salute him, saying in their language : *Byani Pemba, Ampola, Moneya, Quesinge*.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Maloango (*ma*, a contraction of *mani* or *mwanu*, son ; *mfumu*, chief) or king is selected by the Mamboma (see p. 59) and the princes, and must be a nephew (sister's son) of his predecessor. On his election he takes the title of *Nganga nvumbu* (*Nganga*, priest ; *nvumbu*, benevolent spirit, breath), but only proceeds to that of Maloango when rich enough to summon the whole country to a great feast, when declaration is made for the first time officially of the death of the former Maloango, and he is buried. As these festivities are very expensive, they are often deferred for years, and many a *Nganga nvumbu* has died without even troubling about the higher title. The successors of the Maloango Njimbi of Loango, of Battell's time, according to Mr. Dennett, have been : 1. Maloango Tati of Kondi ; 2. Mani Puati of Chibanga ; 3. Mani Yambi ; 4. Man'anombo ; 5. Mani Makosso Matukila of Kondi ; 6. Mani Makosso Manombo ; 7. Mani Makosso Masonga ; 8. Mani Puati. Nos. 3 to 8 never assumed the title of Maloango. Mani Puati very much disgusted the people with his cruelty (he had killed his own daughter because she refused to cohabit with him); and when the French, in 1898, called upon the Mamboma and the princes to produce a Maloango, they ignored the existence of Puati, and elected his nephew, Mani Luemba. This list, however, is evidently imperfect.

<sup>2</sup> Mr. Dennett, whose long residence at Loango and thorough knowledge of the languages entitle him to speak with authority,

[*The King's Wives.*]<sup>1</sup>

On the south side of the king's houses he hath a circuit [compound] or village, where his wives dwell, and in this circuit no man may come on pain of death. He hath in this place one hundred and fifty wives and more. And if any man be taken within this circuit, if he be with a woman, or do but speak to her, they be both brought into the market-place and their heads be cut off, and their bodies quartered, and lie one day in the street. The last king Gymbe [Njimbi], had four hundred children by his women.

[*The King Drinks !*]

When the king drinketh he hath a cup of wine brought, and he that bringeth it hath a bell in his hand, and as soon as he hath delivered the cup to the king, he turneth his face from the king and ringeth the bell ; and then all that be there fall down upon their faces, and rise not till the king have drunk. And this is very dangerous for any stranger that knoweth not the fashions, for if any seeth the king drink he is presently killed, whatsoever he be. There was a boy of twelve years, which was the king's son. This boy chanced to come unadvisedly when his father was in drinking. Presently the king commandeth he should be

---

finds this passage unintelligible, but ventures to suggest the following :—

*Baliani* (my companion) *ampembe* (white) *mpolo* (face), *muenyeye* (Boio, the underground *nkishni*), *ke zinga* (not live long) !

Freely translated, it would mean "My companion, the white face, has risen from underground, and will not live long." This is a curious greeting, but it fairly represents native ideas: for the white man, as long as he keeps to his ship (supposed to rise from the bottom of the ocean), is believed to live long ; whilst, once he comes to stay ashore, he is condemned to an early death.

<sup>1</sup> In a marginal note, Purchas says that the King's wives are called *Macomes*. Such a title is known neither to Mr. Dennett nor to Mr. Phillips. Macome is probably a misprint for Maconda, the title borne, according to Dapper, p. 522, by the king's "mother." *Nkondi*, according to Bentley, is a title of nobility.

well apparelled and victuals prepared. So the youth did eat and drink. Afterward the king commandeth that he should be cut in quarters and carried about the city, with proclamation that he saw the king drink.<sup>1</sup>

[*The King at Dinner.*]<sup>2</sup>

Likewise for his diet, when it is dinner-time, there is a house of purpose, where he always eateth, and there his diet is set upon a *bensa*,<sup>3</sup> like a table. Then he goeth in, and hath the door shut. So when he hath eaten, then he knocketh and cometh out. So that none see the king eat nor drink. For it is their belief, that if he be seen eating or drinking, he shall presently die. And this is an order with all kings that now are, or shall succeed, unless they abolish this cruel custom.

[*The King as a Rain-maker.*]

The king is so honoured as though he were a god among them, and is called *Sambe* and *Pongo*,<sup>4</sup> that is God. And they believe that he can give them rain when he listeth. So once a year, when it is time to rain, that is in December, the people come to beg rain and bring their gifts to the king, for none come empty.<sup>5</sup> Then he appointeth the day,

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Dennett informs me that, still at the present day, when the King (Maloango) or rather *Nganga nvumbu*, drinks in state, he covers his head with a cloth, so that the public may not see him drink. On ordinary occasions, however, this custom is no longer observed.

<sup>2</sup> The heads of all families eat alone; that is, they eat first, and their wives and children afterwards. Maloango still observes the same custom, with his *ma sa vi*, or house-steward, as the sole attendant (Dennett).

<sup>3</sup> *Bensa* may be a corruption of the Portuguese *banca*, a table. Mr. Dennett does not know the word.

<sup>4</sup> Not *Sambe* and *Pongo*, but *Nzambi-ampungu*! *Nzambi* is the name by which God is known; *Nzambi-ampungu* means the Most High (Supreme) God (Bentley, *Life on the Congo*, 1887, p. 62).

<sup>5</sup> The rains begin in October and last till April, being heaviest from November to March. They are very irregular. Thus, in February

and all the lords far and near come to the feast with all their troops, as they go in the wars. And when all the troops of men be before the king, the greatest Lord cometh forth with his bows and arrows, and sheweth his skill with his weapon; and then he hath a merry conceit or jest that he speaketh before the king, and kneeleth at his feet; and then the king thanketh him for his love: and in like manner they do all.

The king sitteth abroad in a great place, and hath a carpet spread upon the ground, which is some fifteen fathoms about, of fine *ensacks*,<sup>1</sup> which are wrought like velvet, and upon the carpet his seat, which is a fathom from the ground. Then he commanded his *Dembes* [Ndamba]<sup>2</sup> to strike up, which are drums, so great, that they cannot carry them, and others that are very great. He hath also eight *Pongos*,<sup>3</sup> which are his waits, made of the greatest elephants' teeth, and are hollowed and scraped light, which play also. And with the drums and waits they make an hellish noise. After they have sported and shewed the king pleasure, he ariseth and standeth upon his throne, and taketh a bow and arrows in his hand, and shooteth to the sky; and that day there is great rejoicing, because sometimes they have rain. I was once there when the king gave rain, and it chanced that day to rain mightily, which made the people have a great belief in their folly.<sup>4</sup>

---

1874, 2.2 ins. fell at Chinchosho; in the same month, 1875, 12.0 ins.; but in 1876 only 0.2 ins.

<sup>1</sup> *Ensaka*, according to D. Lopez (Pigafetta), a stuff resembling velvet.

<sup>2</sup> The *Ndamba* is no drum, as understood by Purchas, but a musical instrument made out of a piece of palm stem, about 4 or 5 ft. long. This is split down one side, the soft centre is then scooped out, and the edges of the split cut into notches. By rubbing these notches energetically with a stick, a loud rasping noise is produced (Monteiro, *Angola*, vol. ii, p. 139; Cordeiro da Matta, *Diccionario*, p. 118).

<sup>3</sup> An ivory trumpet (see note, p. 15).

<sup>4</sup> Battell seems to be mistaken. Mr. Dennett informs me that Maloango as *Ngangu nvumbu* (see note 44) collects the offerings of

[*Albinos.*]

Here are sometimes born in this country white children, which is very rare among them, for their parents are negroes. And when any of them are born, they are presented unto the king and are called *Dondos* [*Ndundu*].<sup>1</sup> These are as white as any white man. These are the king's witches, and are brought up in witchcraft, and always wait on the king. There is no man that dare meddle with these *Dondos*. If they go to the market they may take what they list, for all men stand in awe of them. The King of Longo had four of them.

[*The Nkishi, or Fetishes.*]

The king also is a witch, and believeth in two idols which are in Longo. The one is called *Mokisso à Longo*, the other is called *Checocke*.<sup>2</sup> This last is a little black image, and standeth in a little house at a village called Kinga, which standeth in the landing-place of Longo. This house of *Checocke* standeth in the highway, and they that go by clap their hands, which is the courtesy of the country. Those that be craftsmen, as fishermen, hunters, and witches, do offer to this idol, that they may have good luck. This *Checocke* doth sometimes in the night come

---

his people, and sends them with a petition for rain to the great rain-doctor, *Nganga mBunzi*, in Ngoyo. He has never heard that Maloango had usurped the functions of the great rain-doctor by shooting an arrow to the sky. Abbé Proyart (*Hist. de Loango*, c. 13), says that the Maloango being desirous of not committing himself, orders one of his ministers to make rain.

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Dennett tells me that *Ndundu* when born are thrown into the bush. During his long residence in Africa he has only seen one, and that was at Kinsembo, eighteen years ago. Proyart (*Histoire de Loango*, Paris, 1819, p. 150) says that these albinos are held higher than the Gangas, are looked upon almost as "divine," and that their hair is valued as giving protection against accidents. See also p. 81.

<sup>2</sup> *Mukishi à Loango*, the fetish or "charm" of Loango. *Checocke* is identical with Dapper's *Kikoko* (*Africa*, Amsterdam, 1671, p. 535).

and haunt some of his best beloved : sometimes a man, sometimes a boy or a woman. And then they be frantic for the space of three hours ; and whatsoever the frantic person speaketh, that is the will of *Checocke*. And they make a great feast and dancing at his house.<sup>1</sup>

There is another *Mokisso* which is also in Kinga, and it is called *Gomberi*. It is the name of a woman, and is in a house where an old witch dwelleth, and she is called *Ganga Gomberi*, which is, the Priest of *Gomberi*. Here once a year is a feast made, and *Ganga Gomberi* speaketh under the ground.<sup>2</sup> And this is a common thing every year. I have asked the negroes what it was, and they told me that it was a strong *Mokisso* that is come to abide with *Checocke*.

[*Children are born White.*]

The children in this country are born white, and change their colour in two days to a perfect black. As, for example, the Portugals, which dwell in the kingdom of Congo, have sometimes children by the negro women, and many times the fathers are deceived, thinking when the child is born it is theirs, and within two days it proveth the son or daughter of a negro ; which the Portugals do greatly grieve at, for they rejoyce when they have a mulato child, though it be a bastard.

[*The Royal Princes.*]

The town of Longo [Loango] standeth in the midst of four Lordships, and is governed by four Princes, which

<sup>1</sup> According to Mr. Bentley, hysteria is very common in this country. For the account of the ravings of a witch-doctor, see *Pioneering*, vol. i, p. 271.

<sup>2</sup> Mr. Dennett informs me that the underground speaking fetish in Loango is at the present time called *Boio*, and is found at Chilunga. He suggests that *Ngumbiri* may be a river spirit, or *Nkishi* from the country north of Mayumba. Dr. Bastian paid a visit to the holy place of the underground oracle of *Ngoio* near Moanda, known as *Mbunzi*, which only speaks on the accession of a king, whom he instructs as to

are the King's sisters' sons, for the King's sons can never be kings. The first is Mani Cabango,<sup>1</sup> the second Mani Salag, the third Mani Bock, the fourth Mani Cay. This Mani Cay is next to be king, and hath his train and court as a Prince. And when the King dieth, he cometh presently into the seat of the King. Then, Mani Bock cometh to Cay, Mani Salag cometh to Bock, and Mani Cabango cometh to Salag. And then they provide another to go to Cabango, so there be four Princes that wait on the King when their turns come.

[*The King's Mother.*]

The mother of these Princes is called Mani Lombo,<sup>2</sup> and she is the highest and chief woman in all the land. She maketh choice of her husband, and when she is weary of him she putteth him away, and taketh another. Her children are greatly honoured, and whosoever passeth by them kneel down and clap their hands, which is the courtesy of the country.

These Lordships are champaign grounds, and full of corn and fruit.

[*Palm Cloth.*]<sup>3</sup>

The men in this kingdom make good store of palm-cloth of sundry sorts, very fine and curious. They are never idle: for they make fine caps of needlework as they go in the streets.

---

<sup>1</sup> The mani (*mwana*, or princes) mentioned by Battell are those of Chibanga, Selanganga (of the family of the Petra Praia of Kenga), Mbuku, and Kaya, in Chikamba. (R. E. Dennett, on the law of succession, see note on p. 44.)

<sup>2</sup> Mani Lombe is a man's name: at least, at the present time, and is never given to a woman. It means "One who is peaceful and quiet." No special name or title is borne by the mother of the successors of Maloango. (R. E. Dennett); but as Lumbu means stockade, palace, or chief's house, Battell may have mistaken a word applied to this woman's residence for that of her title. Lombo means.

[*The Royal Tombs.*]

There is a place two leagues from the town of Longo, called Longeri,<sup>1</sup> where all their kings be buried, and it is compassed round about with elephants' teeth pitched in the ground, as it were a Pale, and it is ten roods in compass.

[*Europeans Committed to the Sea.*]

These people will suffer no white man to be buried in their land,<sup>2</sup> and if any stranger or Portugal come thither to trade, and chance to die, he is carried in a boat two miles from the shore, and cast into the sea. There was once a Portugal gentleman, that came to trade with them, and had his house on shore. This gentleman died, and was buried some four months. That year it did not rain so soon as it was wont, which beginneth about December, so that they lacked rain for some two months. Then their *mokisso* told them that the Christian, which was buried, must be taken out of the earth, and cast into the sea; and within three days it rained, which made them have a great belief in the devil.

---

<sup>1</sup> Dr. Bastian visited the Royal graves at Loangiri, or Loangele, and found each grave marked by a tusk. The visitors pulled out grass around the tomb and poured libations of rum upon the bare ground (*Die Deutsche Expedition an der Loango-Küste*, Berlin, 1874, vol. i, p. 69).

<sup>2</sup> This may be quite true of earlier times, when Europeans were looked upon as great wizards, who rose out of the sea and were returned to that element when they died. At present, however, a burial-place is set apart for them, and is looked after by the Petra Praia (Salanganga), an office created since the arrival of the Portuguese for the purpose of looking after the affairs of the white men (R. E. Dennett).

---

## § VI.

*Of the Provinces of Bongo, Calongo, Mayombe, Manikesocke, Motimbas : of the ape-monster Pongo : their Hunting, Idolatries, and divers other observations.*

## [Bongo.]

To the eastward of Longeri is the Province of Bongo, and it bordereth on Mococke, [of which] the great Angeca<sup>1</sup> is king. In this place is great store of iron, and palm-cloth, and elephants' teeth, and great store of corn.

## [Cango.]

To the north-east is the great province of Cango,<sup>2</sup> and it is fourteen days journey from the town of Longo. This place is full of mountains and rocky ground, and full of woods, and hath great store of copper. The elephants in this place do excel, and there are so many that the people of Longo hath great store of elephants' teeth, and bring them to the port of Longo.

## [Calongo.]

To the northwards of Longo, three leagues, is the river Quelle :<sup>3</sup> and on the north side is the province of Calongo [Chilunga]. This country is always tilled, and full of corn,

<sup>1</sup> There is some confusion here. Angeca is evidently the Anziki or Anzique of D. Lopez and others, now represented by the Banteke, on Stanley Pool. The word may be derived from *anseke*, far or distant. The proper name of the tribe is Atio (A. Sims, *Kiteke Vocabulary*, 1886). *Mococke* (*Makoko*) is a title. Bongo is evidently the country of the Obongo of Du Chaillu, the Babongo of Lenz, Bastian, and Falkenstein : a race of dwarfs between the coast and the Banteke, varying in stature between 51 and 56 ins. Compare note, p. 59.

<sup>2</sup> Identical with Chinkanga, on the river Juma, where the French have a post, Wemba.

<sup>3</sup> The river Kuilu, 4° 28' S.

and is all plain and champaign ground, and hath great store of honey. Here are two little villages that show at sea like two hummocks,<sup>1</sup> which are the marks to show the port of Longo ; and fifteen miles northward is the river Nombo,<sup>2</sup> but it hath no depth for any bark to go in. This province, towards the east, bodereth upon Bongo ; and towards the north upon Mayombe, which is nineteen leagues from Longo along the coast.

[ *Yumbe.* ]<sup>3</sup>

The province of Mayombe is all woods and groves, so overgrown that a man may travel twenty days in the shadow, without any sun or heat. Here is no kind of corn nor grain, so that the people liveth only upon plantains and roots of sundry other sorts, very good, and nuts ; nor any kind of tame cattle, nor hens. But they have great store of elephants' flesh, which they greatly esteem, and many kinds of wild beasts ; and great store of fish. Here is a great sandy bay, two leagues to the southward of Cape Negro, which is the port of Mayombe. Sometimes the Portugals take logwood<sup>4</sup> in this bay. Here is a great river called Banna.<sup>5</sup> In the winter it hath no bar, because the general winds cause a

---

<sup>1</sup> *As duas moutas* (the two copses) of Juan de la Cosa's map (1500), near the mouth of the Kuilu.

<sup>2</sup> Fifteen miles carry us to the Longebonda of the Admiralty Chart, 4° 20' S., which has very little water in it at the most favourable time of the year (*Africa Pilot*, vol. ii, 1893, p. 136), but the river meant is evidently the Numbi, which enters Chilunga (Kilonga) Bay in 4° 13' S., a mere stream (*Deutsche Loango Expedition*).

<sup>3</sup> Yumba is the name of the country. *Mayumba* (*Mani Yumba*) means chief of Yumba. The Bay of Mayumba, 3° 19' S., lies about 10 miles to the south of Cape Mayumba, which is undoubtedly the Cabo Negro of Battell.

<sup>4</sup> Dyewoods are still an article of export, but not logwood (see note, p. 43.)

<sup>5</sup> The Banya, a lagoon extending to the south-east, parallel with the coast.

great sea ; but when the sun hath his south declination, then a boat may go in, for then it is smooth because of the rain. This river is very great, and hath many islands, and people dwelling in them. The woods are covered with baboons, monkeys, apes and parrots, that it will fear any man to travel in them alone. Here also are two kinds of monsters, which are common in these woods, and very dangerous.

[*Gorillas and Chimpanzis.*]<sup>1</sup>

The greatest of these two monsters is called *Pongo* [*Mpungu*] in their language, and the lesser is called *Engeco*. This *Pongo* is in all proportions like a man, but that he is more like a giant in stature than a man ; for he is very tall, and hath a man's face, hollow-eyed, with long hair upon his brows. His face and ears are without hair, and his hands also. His body is full of hair, but not very thick, and it is of a dunnish colour. He differeth not from a man but in his legs, for they have no calf. He goeth always upon his legs, and carryeth his hands clasped upon the nape of his neck when he goeth upon the ground. They sleep in the trees, and build shelters from the rain. They feed upon fruit they find in the woods and upon nuts, for they eat no kind of flesh. They cannot speak, and have no more understanding than a beast.

The people of the country, when they travel in the woods, make fires when they sleep in the night. And in the morning, when they are gone, the *Pongoes* will come

---

<sup>1</sup> The *Mpungu* is the gorilla. For *Engeco* (printed *Encego* in the earlier editions) we ought to read *Nsiku*, the native name for the chimpanzi, a larger variety of which is known as *Chimpenso* (Pechuel-Loesche, *Loango Expedition*, vol. iii, p. 248). P. Du Chaillu, the first European to kill a gorilla in his native haunts (*Adventures in Equatorial Africa*), declares Battell's stories to be mere traveller's tales, "untrue of any of the great apes of Africa." Sir R. F. Burton (*Two Trips to Gorilla Land*, vol. i, p. 240) suggests that as Battell had not seen a gorilla, he may have confounded gorillas with bushmen.

and sit about the fire till it goeth out, for they have no understanding to lay the wood together. They go many together, and kill many negroes that travel in the woods. Many times they fall upon the elephants, which come to feed where they be, and so beat them with their clubbed fists and pieces of wood that they will run roaring away from them.

Those *Pongoes* are never taken alive, because they are so strong that ten men cannot hold one of them, but yet they take many of their young ones with poisoned arrows. The young Pongo hangeth on his mother's belly, with his hands clasped fast about her, so that when the country people kill any of the females, they take the young one which hangeth fast upon his mother. When they die among themselves, they cover the dead with great heaps of boughs and wood, which is commonly found in the forests.

[Purchas adds in a marginal note :

"He told me in a conference with him that one of these Pongos took a negro boy of his, which lived a month with them, for they hurt not those which they surprise at unawares, except they look on them, which he [the boy] avoided. He said, their height was like a man's, but their bigness twice as great. I saw the negro boy.

"What the other monster [the Engeco] should be he hath forgotten to relate, and these papers came to my hand since his death, which otherwise, in my often conferences, I might have learned. Perhaps he meaneth the Pigmy Pongo-killers mentioned."]

### [*Hunting Dogs.*]

The Morombes<sup>1</sup> use to hunt with their country-dogs, and kill many kinds of little beasts, and great store of pheasants. But their dogs be dumb, and cannot bark at all.<sup>2</sup> They hang wooden clappers about their necks, and

<sup>1</sup> Misprint for Mayumbas?

<sup>2</sup> Dr. Pechuel-Loesche (*D. Loango Exp.*, vol. iii, p. 302) says that native dogs do *not* bark, but that they often acquire the habit when living among European dogs. Most of them are mongrels, but there are some superior breeds trained for hunting. These dogs carry a

follow them by rattling of the clappers. The huntsmen have *Petes* [whistles], which they whistle their dogs withall. These dogs, in all this country, are very little, with prickt ears, and are for the most part red and dun. The Portugal mastiff dog, or any other great dog, are greatly esteemed because they do bark. I have seen a dog sold up in the country for thirty pounds.

[*The Maramba Fetish.*]<sup>1</sup>

In the town of Mani Mayombe is a fetish called Maramba, and it standeth in a high basket made like a hive, and over it a great house. This is their house of religion, for they believe only in him, and keep his laws, and carry his reliques always with them. They are for the most part witches, and use their witchcraft for hunting and killing of elephants and fishing, and helping of sick and lame men, and to forecast journeys, whether they shall speed well or evil. By this Maramba are all thefts and murders tried, for in this country they use sometimes to bewitch one another to death. And when any dieth, their neighbours are brought before the Maramba; and if it be a great man that dieth, the whole town cometh to swear. The order is, when they come before Maramba, to kneel and clasp Maramba in their arms, and to say: *Emeno, eyge bembet Maramba*, that is, "I come to be tried, O Maramba."<sup>2</sup> And if any of them be guilty, they fall down

---

wooden bell (*ndibu*) round the neck, the clatter of which scares the game. When the scent grows warm, the dogs begin to whine, and when the game is in sight they give tongue. After each beat the dogs sit down apart from the hunters, raise their heads, and howl for several minutes. Mr. Dennett, in a letter to me, confirms the barking (*kukula*, to bark) of the native dogs.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 82 for further information on this fetish.

<sup>2</sup> Neither Mr. Dennett, nor one of the officials in the French Colonial Office, thoroughly acquainted with the language, has been able to make sense out of this sentence. The latter suggests *Ku Kwiza bukie lika*, "I come for the truth!" For another version of this appeal, see p. 83. The sentence is evidently very corrupt.

stark dead for ever. And if any of them that swear hath killed any man or child before, although it may be twenty years past, he presently dieth. And so it is for any other matter.

From this place, as far as it is to Cape de Lopo Gonçalves, they are all of this superstition. I was twelve months in this place, and saw many die after this sort.

These people be circumcised,<sup>1</sup> as they are through all Angola, except the kingdom of Congo, for they be Christians. And those that will be sworn to Maramba<sup>2</sup> come to the chief Gangas, which are their priests or men-witches, as boys of twelve years of age, and men and women. Then the Gangas put them into a dark house, and there they remain certain days with very hard diet. After this they are let abroad, and commanded not to speak for certain days, what injury soever they be offered, so that they suffer great penury before they be sworn. Lastly, they are brought before Maramba, and have two marks cut upon their shoulders before, like a half moon, and are sworn by the blood that falleth from them, that they shall be true to him. They are forbidden some one kind of flesh and some one kind of fish, with many other toys [trifles]. And if they eat any of this forbidden meat they presently sicken, and never prosper.<sup>3</sup> They all carry a relique of Maramba in a little box, and hang it about their necks, under their left arms.

The Lord of this province of Mayombe hath the ensign or shape of Maramba carried before him, and whithersoever

<sup>1</sup> Circumcision is common in some districts, but no magical or mystic influence is ascribed to it (Bentley).

<sup>2</sup> For an account of the initiation into the guild called *Ndembo*, see Bentley's *Dictionary*, p. 506.

<sup>3</sup> The custom of prohibiting certain food to be eaten, etc., is very common. *Mpangu* is the name for this taboo in the case of new-born infants; *Konko*, a taboo imposed in connection with an illness. The thing tabooed is called *nlongo* (Bentley).

he goeth ; and when he sitteth down it is set before him ; and when he drinketh his palm-wine the first cup is poured at the foot of the *Mokiso* or idol, and when he eateth anything, the first piece he throweth towards his left hand, with enchanting words.

[*Sette.*]

From Cape Negro northward is a great Lord called Mani Seat,<sup>1</sup> which has the greatest store of elephants' teeth of any Lord in the kingdom of Longo, for his people practice nothing else but to kill elephants. And two of these negroes will easily kill an elephant with their darts. And here is great store of logwood.

[*Mani Kesock.*]<sup>2</sup>

There is another Lord, to the eastward, which is called Mani Kesock, and he is eight days' journey from Mayombe. Here I was with my two negro boys to buy elephants' hairs and tails. And in a month I bought twenty thousand, which I sold to the Portugals for thirty slaves, and all my charges borne.

From this place I sent one of my negro boys to Mani Seat with a looking-glass. He did esteem it much, and sent me four elephants' teeth (very great) by his own men, and desired me to cause the Portugals, or any other ship, to come to the northward of the Cape Negro, and he would make fires where his landing place is, for there was never yet any Portugal or other stranger in that place.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> This refers no doubt to Sette, the river of which enters the sea in 2° 23' S. The capital of the same name being fifty miles up it. Barwood is still exported, but no logwood.

<sup>2</sup> His modern representative seems to be the Mani Kasoche on the Upper Ngonga, who was visited by Güssfeldt.

<sup>3</sup> Not to be taken literally, for Cão certainly touched at this bay.

[*Pygmy Elephant-Hunters.*]

To the north-east of Mani Kesock are a kind of little people called Matimb<sup>1</sup>, which are no bigger than boys of twelve years old, but are very thick, and live only upon flesh, which they kill in the woods with their bows and darts. They pay tribute to Mani Kesock, and bring all their elephants' teeth and tails to him. They will not enter into any of the Marombos<sup>2</sup> houses, nor will suffer any to come where they dwell; and if by chance any Maramba, or people of Longo [Loango], pass where they dwell, they will forsake that place and go to another.

The women carry bow and arrows, as well as the men, and one of these will walk in the woods alone, and kill the *Pongos* [gorillas] with their poisoned arrows. I have asked the Marombos whether the elephant sheddeth his teeth or no, and they say no! But sometimes they find their teeth in the woods, but they find their bones also.

[*Poison Ordeals.*]

When any man is suspected of any offence he is carried before the king, or before Mani Bomma [Mamboma],<sup>3</sup> which is, as it were, a judge under the king. And if it be upon matter that he denieth, and cannot be proved but by their oath, then the suspected person is thus sworn: they have a kind of root which they call *Imbondo* [*mbundu*].<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The usual designation for "Dwarf" is *mbaka* or *kimbakabaka* (the diminutive of *mbaka*), but *Batumba* (with which Battell's *matimba* seems to be identical) is likewise applied to a dwarf person or thing (Bentley). In Angola, *Matumbu* means a far-off, unknown country (Cordeiro da Matta). Compare note, p. 52.

<sup>2</sup> "Marombos" seems to be a misprint for Mayumbas (see note, p. 55).

<sup>3</sup> The Mamboma is a sort of home secretary. He buries the Maloango, and summons the princes for the election of a successor. *Mboma* is the black python; *boma* means fear. Hence the title has been translated "Lord of Terror."

<sup>4</sup> *Mbundu*, the powdered root of a species of strychnos, is administered to confessed witches accused of having caused the death

This root is very strong, and is scraped into water. The virtue of this root is, that if they put too much of it into water, the person that drinketh it cannot void urine, and so it striketh up into the brain, as though he were drunk, and he falleth down, as though he were dead. And those that fall are counted as guilty, and are punished.<sup>1</sup>

[Purchas adds, in a marginal note :—

“He told me that this root makes the water as bitter as gall (he tasted it), and one root will serve to try one hundred. They which have drunk and made water are cleared, before which, if dizziness take them, they cry: *Undoke, Undoke*,<sup>2</sup> and presently execute them. See my *Relations*, b. 7 c. 10, which I writ from his mouth.<sup>3</sup> Neither may this be ascribed to the virtue of the herb, but to the vice of the Devil, a murderer and his instrument, the *Ganga* or priest.<sup>4</sup> And therefore that conjecture seems unprobable. For how could an ordinary trial of life where are so

---

of a person. If the accused be guilty, this poison causes him to lose all control over the *sphincter urethræ*; he discharges red urine profusely, runs a few paces, falls down and dies. An innocent person only discharges a few drops on a banana leaf (Pechuel-Loesche, *Loango Exp.*, vol. iii, p. 188). *Nkasa*, prepared from the bark of *Erythrophloeum guineense*, paralyses the action of the heart, but if thrown up at once, it will not kill (Dr. M. Böehr, *Correspon. der Deutschen Afrik. Ges.*, vol. i, p. 332). It is administered to persons who deny being witches. (For a full account of such a trial, see Dennett, *Seven Years Among the Fjort*, p. 165.) In the case of minor offences, the ordeal of the hot matchet—*bikalo*, *bisengo*, or *bau*—is resorted to. The knife is passed thrice over the skin of the leg, and if it burns the accused is declared guilty (see also Dennett, *Notes on the Folk-Lore of the Fjort*, p. 162). The Nganga is, of course, open to a bribe, and in the case of a chief the poison may be administered to a substitute—a dog or a slave—and the penalty commuted to a fine. See also Bentley's *Pioneering on the Congo*, London, 1900.

<sup>1</sup> The poison administered in this case was *nkasa*, and not *mbundu* (see p. 80).

<sup>2</sup> *Ndoki*, a witch; *undoki*, that which pertains to witchcraft (Bentley).

<sup>3</sup> That is, *Purchas his Pilgrimage, or Relations of the World*, bk. vii, ch. 10, dealing with Loango.

<sup>4</sup> Worthy Purchas grows quite incoherent in his indignation, but the reader will nevertheless be able to gather his meaning, and will appreciate his distinction between a Jewish priest and a heathen *Nganga*, both administering the same rite. He thus shares the opinion of the Roman Catholic missionaries who recognised the efficacy of native charms, but ascribed it to the Devil, whilst claiming greater potency for their crosses, relics, etc., deriving their potency from Heaven.

many so perilous ; and therefore curious (more than) spectators, nor perceive this in so long and frequent experience, which costs so many their dearest friends their dearest life? I think rather that this was the transcriber's conjecture. I remember no such scruple in his narrations to me. Who knows not the Devil's ambition of Deity, and cruel misanthropy or man-hating? This is his apish imitation of Divinity, and those rites prescribed for trial in the case of jealousy, Numbers, v.<sup>1</sup> In Guinea like trial is made by salt, and also by the *Fetisseroes* pot. In *Benomotapa* by water also ; in the *Maramba* trial before [mentioned (see p. 56)], and *Motamba* trial by hot iron in Angola ;<sup>2</sup> the ploughshares in olden times with us ; and the trial of witches in the East parts by water, etc., were not unlike in deceivable superstition." ]

[*Death and Witchcraft.*]<sup>3</sup>

In this country none of any account dieth but they kill another for him, for they believe they die not of their own natural death, but that some other hath bewitched them to death. And all those are brought in by the friends of the dead which they suspect, so that many times there come five hundred men and women to take the drink made of the foresaid root *Imbonda* [*mbundu*]. They are brought

<sup>1</sup> The poison ordeal, which required a woman suspected of infidelity to her husband to drink "bitter water" administered by the Jewish priest, is here referred to. This ordinance, of course, was not applicable in case of a similar offence charged against a husband (Numbers v, 12-31).

<sup>2</sup> Valdez (*Six Years in Angola*, vol. ii, p. 130) calls this ordeal *quirigué tubia* (*Kiriké tubia*), and says that the hot hatchet may be applied to any part of the person. The meaning of *kiri* is truth ; of *tubia*, fire. Purchas is evidently mistaken when he calls this procedure *Motamba*, for *tambi* or *mutambi* is a kind of funeral feast or wake. The body having been buried, and potsherds, pipes, and other articles placed on the grave, the mourners devour a roast pig, the skull of which is afterwards thrown into a neighbouring river.

<sup>3</sup> Illness and death are frequently ascribed to witchcraft. If a disease does not yield to medical treatment by a *Nganga a moko*, the *nganga a ngombo*, or witch-doctor, is called in with his fetish. He may ascribe the death to natural causes, or to a charm worked by a person recently deceased and beyond his reach ; or he may denounce one or more persons as witches. The persons thus denounced are compelled to submit to the poison ordeal (see, among others, Dennett's *Seven Years among the Fjort*, and his *Folk-Lore*).

all to the high street or market-place, and there the master of the *Imbonda* sitteth with his water, and giveth everyone a cup of water by one measure ; and they are commanded to walk in a certain place till they make water, and then they be free. But he that cannot urine presently falleth down dead, and all the people, great and small, fall upon him with their knives and beat and cut him into pieces. But I think the witch that giveth the water is partial, and giveth to him whom he will have to die, the strongest water, but no man can perceive it that standeth by. And this is done at the town of Longo almost every week in the year.

---

## § VII.

*Of the Zebra and Hippopotamus; The Portugals Wars in those parts; the Fishing, Grain, and other things remarkable.*

[*Domestic Animals.*]

In this kingdom there is no kind of tame cattle but goats, for none other cattle will live here. Oxen and kine have been brought hither, but they presently die. The hens in this place do so abound that a man may buy thirty for the worth of sixpence in beads.<sup>1</sup>

[*Wild Birds.*]

Here is store of pheasants, and great plenty of partridges and wild fowl. Here is a kind of fowl that lives in the land bigger than a swan, and they are like a heron, with long legs and long necks, and it is white or black, and hath in her breast a bare place without feathers, where she striketh with her beak. This is the right Pelican, and not those sea-birds which the Portugals call pelicans, which are white and as big as geese, and these abound in this country also.

[*The Zebra.*]

Here is also the *severa* or zebra, which is like a horse, but that his mane, his tail, his strakes and divers colours down his sides and legs do make a difference. These *severas* are all wild and live in great herds, and will suffer a man to come within shot of them, and let them

---

<sup>1</sup> Garcia Mendes de Castellobranco, p. 33, says, in 1621, that hens abounded and also goats and sheep, but that cows were rare.

shoot three or four times at them before they will run away.<sup>1</sup>

[*The Hippopotamus.*]

Moreover, there are great store of sea or river horses, which feed always on the land, and live only by grass, and they be very dangerous in the water. They are the biggest creature in this country, except the elephant. They have great virtue in the claws of their left forefoot,



The Zevera, or Zebra.

and have four claws on every foot, like the claws of an ox. The Portugals make rings of them, and they are a present remedy for the flux.

[*Portuguese dealings with the Natives.*]

The Portugals make war against the negroes in this manner. They have out of Congo a nobleman, which is

---

<sup>1</sup> Zebras are still found in Benguella, but not any longer in Angola or Congo. Duarte Lopez, p. 49, speaks of a "pet zebra" (in Bamba?) which was killed by a "tiger." Further on he says that zebras were common, but had not been broken in for riding. M. Garcia Mendez likewise mentions the "zebra." The native name is *ngolo* (Kangolo). "Zebra" is a corruption of its Abyssinian appellation.

known to be a good Christian and of good behaviour. He bringeth out of Congo some one hundred negroes that are his followers. This *Macicongo* [*mwishi-Kongo*] is made *Tandala*,<sup>1</sup> or general over the black camp, and hath authority to kill, to put down Lords and make Lords, and hath all the chief doings with the negroes. And when any Lord cometh to obey he first cometh to the Tandala and bringeth his present, as slaves, kine and goats. Then the Tandala carrieth him before the Portugal Governor, and bringeth two slaves for the Governor's page, before he goeth in. Then he must have a great gift for the Governor, which is sometimes thirty or forty slaves, besides cattle. But when he cometh before the Governor he kneeleth down and clappeth his hands, and falleth down with his face upon the ground, and then he riseth and saith : " I have been an enemy, and now I protest to be true, and never more to lift my hand against you." Then the Governor calleth a soldier, which hath deserved a reward, and giveth the Lord to him. This soldier seeth that he have no wrong ; and the Lord acknowledgeth him to be his master, and he doth maintain the soldier and maketh him rich. Also, in the wars he commandeth his master's house to be built before his own, and whatsoever he hath taken that day in the wars, he passeth [divideth] with his master. So that there is no Portugal soldier of any account, but hath his negro *sova*, or Lord.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Tandale, in Kimbundu, means councillor or minister of a *soba* or kinglet ; *tumba'ndala* was an old title of the Kings of Angola, and may be translated Emperor (Cordeiro da Matta, *Diccionario*).

<sup>2</sup> All this is borne out by Portuguese documents. From the very beginning, Dias de Novaes handed over the Sovas to the mercy of his fellow-adventurers and the Jesuits. The system was still in force in 1620 when Garcia Mendez de Castello Branco proposed to King Philip a " regimen de aforamento " of the native chiefs, which would have yielded a revenue of fifteen million Reis, and would, at the same time, afforded some slight protection to the natives. Those who would have profited most largely by these " reforms " would have been the Jesuits.

## [Fishing.]

They use upon this coast to fish with harping irons, and wait upon a great fish that cometh once a day to fish along the shore, which is like a grampus. He runneth very near the shore and driveth great shoals of fish before him ; and the negroes run along the shore as fast as they are able to follow him, and strike their harping irons round about him, and kill great store of fish, and leave them upon the sand till the fish hath done feeding ; and then they come and gather their fish up.

This fish will many times run himself on ground, but they will presently shove him off again, which is as much as four or five men can do. They call him *Emboa*, which is in their speech a dog, and will by no means hurt or kill any of them.<sup>1</sup>

Also, they use in the bays and rivers, where shoal water is, to fish with mats, which are made of long rushes, and they make them of an hundred fathoms long. The mats swim upon the water, and have long rushes hanged upon one edge of the mat, and so they draw the mat in compass, as we do our nets. The fishes, fearing the rushes that hang down, spring out of the water and fall upon the mat, that lyeth flat on the water, and so are taken.

---

<sup>1</sup> According to Dr. Pechuel-Loesche (*Die Loango Expedition*, vol. iii, p. 279), this seems to be the cowfish of the whalers, or *Tursions gillii*, Dale. The natives call it *ngulu-mputu* (*ngulu*, hog-fish ; *mputu*, Portugal). He says that the natives will not suffer this fish to be injured, as it drives other fish ashore and into their nets ; and that if one of these fish were to be wounded or killed they would stop away for ever so long. The Rev. W. M. Holman Bentley, in his *Dictionary of the Kongo Language*, says that the *ngola* of the natives is a bagre, or catfish. A gigantic bagre, 8 ft. in length, is found in the Upper Coanza (Monteiro, *Angola*, vol. ii, p. 134). Mr. Dennett suggests the *Chialambu*, a kind of bream, which is said to chase other fish ; *Mboa*, *Mbwa*, or *Imboa* certainly means dog, and is not the name of a fish.

## [“Corn.”]

They have four sorts of corn in Longo. The first is called *Masanga*,<sup>1</sup> and it groweth upon a straw as big as a reed, and hath an ear a foot long, and is like hempseed. The second is called *Masembala*.<sup>2</sup> This is of great increase, for of one kernel there springs four or five canes, which are ten foot high, and they bear half a pint of corn apiece. This grain is as big as tares, and very good. Thirdly, they have another that groweth low like grass, and is very like mustard-seed: and this is the best.<sup>3</sup> They have also the great Guinea wheat, which they call *Mas-impoto*.<sup>4</sup> This is the least esteemed.

## [Ground-nuts.]

They have very good Peason [peas], somewhat bigger than ours, but they grow not as ours do; for the pods grow on the roots, underneath the ground, and by their leaves they know when they be ripe.<sup>5</sup> They have another kind of Peason, which they call *Wando*.<sup>6</sup> This is a little tree,

---

<sup>1</sup> *Massa-ngo*, the *Penisetum typhoideum*, introduced from abroad. It is the *milho*, or millet, of the Portuguese (see Capello and Ivens, *Benguella*, vol. i, p. 103; vol. ii, p. 257).

<sup>2</sup> *Massa-mballa* is *sorghum* (Ficalho). A white variety is known as *Congo-mazzo*.

<sup>3</sup> This is *luku*, or *Eleusine coracana*, introduced from Asia. It is extensively grown in Abyssinia and among the Niamniam (Schweinfurth, *The Heart of Africa*, vol. i, p. 248; Ficalho, *Plantas uteis*, p. 41).

<sup>4</sup> *Massa-mamputo*, or *Grão de Portugal*, is *Zea mayz*, introduced from America (Ficalho). See note, p. 7.

<sup>5</sup> This is the ground-nut (*Arachis hypogaea*), or underground kidney bean. Its native name is *nguba* or *mpinda*. According to Ficalho, p. 142, it was introduced from America, while *Voandzeia subterranea*, called *vielo* in Angola, is certainly indigenous. The seeds of the latter are smaller and less oleaginous than those of *Arachis*, and hence its commercial value is less.

<sup>6</sup> *Wandu* (of Congo) is the *mbarazi* of the Swahili, the *Cajanus indicus* of botanists. It is grown all over Africa, and Welwitsch con-

and the first year that it is planted it beareth no fruit ; but after, it beareth fruit three years, and then it is cut down.<sup>1</sup>

[*Plantains, or Bananas.*]

Their plantain trees bear fruit but once, and then are cut down, and out of the root thereof spring three or four young trees.

[*Bees and the Baobab.*]

They have great store of honey, which hangeth in the *Elicondy* trees.<sup>2</sup> They gather it with a hollow piece of wood, or chest, which they hang in the top of the tree, and once a year it is full, by smoke rewarding the laborious creatures with robbery, exile, death.

[Purchas here adds in the margin, "out of Battell's own reports" :—

This *Alicunde* or *Elicondi* tree is very tall and exceeding great, some as big as twelve men can fathom, spreading like an oak. Some of them are hollow, and from the liberal skies receive such plenty of water, that they are hospitable entertainers of thousands in this thirsty region. Once have I known three or four thousand remain at one of these trees, and thence receiving all their watery provision for four and twenty hours, and yet not empty.

siders it indigenous. In Angola a variety is known as *nsonje* (Ficalho, p. 143; Burton, *Two Trips to Gorilla Island*, vol. ii, p. 119).

<sup>1</sup> In a marginal note to his reprint of Pigafetta's book (p. 1005), Purchas quotes Battell as confirming Lopez when he states, with regard to the *Cola* (*c. acuminata*, R. Br.), that "the liver of a hen, or of any other like bird, which putrified and stinketh, being sprinkled over with the juice of this fruit (the *Cola*), returneth into its former estate, and becometh fresh and sound again."

<sup>2</sup> See note, p. 24. Monteiro (vol. ii, 165) confirms that hives are securely placed in the branches of a tree, the *Baobab* being chosen in

The negroes climbed up with pegs of hardwood (which that softer easily receiveth, the smoothness not admitting other climbing), and I think that some one tree hold forty tuns of water.

This tree affords not less bountiful hospitality to the back than belly, yielding (as her belly to their bellies, so) her back to their backs ; excepting that this is better from the younger trees, whose tenderer backs being more seasonable for discipline, are so soundly beaten (for man's fault, whence came the first nakedness), whereby one fathom cut from the tree is extended into twenty, and is presently fit for wearing, though not so fine as the *Iuzanda*<sup>1</sup> tree yields. This tree yields excellent cloth from the inner bark thereof by like beating.

[*Palm Trees.*]

Of their palm trees, which they keep with watering and cutting every year, they make velvets, satins, taffetas, damasks, sarsenets, and such like ; out of the leaves, cleansed and purged, drawing long threads and even, for that purpose. They draw wine (as it is said) from the palm-tree. There is another kind of palm-tree which beareth a fruit good for the stomach and for the liver, and most admirable.<sup>2</sup>

[*A Crocodile Story.*]

One crocodile was so huge and greedy that he devoured an *Alibamba*,<sup>3</sup> that is, a chained company of

<sup>1</sup> A misprint from *Inganda*, i.e., *Nsanda*, banyan.

<sup>2</sup> The three kinds of palm are, the wine-palm (*Raphia*) ; the oil-palm (*Elaeis*) ; and the date-palm (*Phœnix*).

<sup>3</sup> *Lubambu* (in Kimbundu) ; *luvambu* (in Congoese) means a chain. Dr. Lacerda says that a *Libambo* was made of sufficient length to hold twelve slaves (*The Lands of Cazembe*, ed. by Burton, London, 1873, p. 18).

eight or nine slaves, but the indigestible iron paid him his wages, and murdered the murderer, found afterwards in his belly. I have seen them watch their prey, hailing in gennet, man, or other creature, into the water. But one soldier thus wrapt in shallower water drew his knife, took his taker in the belly, and slew him.]

[THE END.]





ON THE  
RELIGION AND THE CUSTOMS  
OF THE PEOPLES OF  
ANGOLA, CONGO AND LOANGO.

---

THE following notes on the religion and customs of the Negroes of Angola, Congo and Loango, are taken from Book vii, chapters ix and x, of *Purchas His Pilgrimage, or Relations of the World and the Religions observed in all Ages and Places discovered from the Creation unto this Present*. London (H. Fetherstone), 1617. This account is a compilation. Purchas quotes, among others, Duarte Lopez, De Barros, Osorio, Marmol, and Du Jarric. In what follows, we confine ourselves to the oral information which Purchas received from his friends or acquaintances, Andrew Battell and Thomas Turner.

---

CHAP. IX, § I.—ANGOLA.

[*The Slave Trade.*]

. . . . .



MASTER THOMAS TURNER, one that had lived a long time in Brasil, and had also been at Angola, reported to me<sup>1</sup> that it was supposed eight and twenty thousand slaves (a number almost incredible, yet such as the Portugals told him) were yearly shipped from Angola and Congo, at the Haven of Loanda.<sup>2</sup> He named

---

<sup>1</sup> For his *Relations*, see Purchas, lib. vi. ch. viii.

<sup>2</sup> Domingos d'Abreu de Brito, in a memoir addressed in 1592 to King Philip, states that 52,000 slaves were exported from Angola to

to me a rich Portugal in Brasil, which had ten thousand of his own, working in his *Ingenios*<sup>1</sup> (of which he had eighteen) and in his other employments. His name was John du Paus, exiled from Portugal, and thus enriched in Brasil.<sup>2</sup> A thousand of his slaves at one time entered into conspiracy with nine thousand other slaves in the country, and barricaded themselves for their best defence against their master, who had much ado to reduce some of them into their former servitude.

[*Fetishes.*]

To return to Angola, we may add the report of another of our countrymen, Andrew Battell (my near neighbour, dwelling at Leigh, in Essex) who served under Manuel Silvera Perera,<sup>3</sup> Governor under the King of Spain, at his city of St. Paul, and with him went far into the country of Angola, their army being eight hundred Portugals and fifty thousand Naturals. This Andrew Battell telleth that they are all heathens in Angola. They had their idols of wood in the midst of their towns, fashioned like a negro, and at the foot thereof was a great heap of elephants' teeth, containing three or four tuns of them: these were piled in the earth, and upon them were set the skulls of dead men, which they had slain in the wars, in monument of their victory.<sup>4</sup> The idol they call *Mokisso* [*Mukishi*],

---

Brazil and the Spanish Indies between 1575 and 1591, and 20,131 during the last four years of this period (Paiva Manso, *Hist. do Congo*, p. 140). Cadornega, quoted by the same author, estimates the number of slaves annually exported between 1580 and 1680 at eight or ten thousand (*ib.*, p. 287).

<sup>1</sup> *Recte*, *Engenho*, a mill, and in Brazil more especially a sugar mill.

<sup>2</sup> Turner says, in his *Relations*, p. 1243, that John de Pais (*sic*) owned ten thousand slaves and eighteen sugar mills.

<sup>3</sup> Manuel Cerveira Pereira was Governor 1603-7 (see p. 37).

<sup>4</sup> Carvalho (*Ethnographia*, pp. 248, 258) describes trophies of these as also trophies of war, built up of the skulls of enemies killed in battle. Bastian (*Loango Expedition*, vol. i, p. 54) saw a fossil tusk, which was looked upon as a fetish, around which were piled up the horns of oxen, and the teeth and skulls of hippopotami.

and some of them have houses built over them. If any be sick, he accounteth it *Mokisso's* hand, and sendeth to appease his angry God, with pouring wine (which they have of the palm tree) at his feet.<sup>1</sup> They have proper names of distinction for their *Mokissos*, as *Kissungo*, *Kalikete*, etc., and use to swear by them, *Kissungo wy*, that is, by *Kissungo*.<sup>2</sup>

[*Trial by Ordeal.*]

They have another more solemn oath in trial of controversies: this trial is called *Motamba*,<sup>3</sup> for which purpose they lay a kind of hatchet, which they have, in the fire, and the *Ganga-Mokisso*, or *Mokisso's* Priest,<sup>4</sup> taketh the same red-hot, and draweth it near to the skin of the accused party; and if there be two, he causeth their legs to be set near together, and draweth this hot iron without touching between them; if it burns, that party is condemned as guilty, otherwise he is freed.

[*Burial.*]<sup>5</sup>

For the ceremonies about the dead, they first wash him, then paint him, thirdly apparel him in new clothes, and then bring him to his grave, which is made like a vault, after it is digged a little way down, undermined, and made spacious within; and there set him on a seat of earth, with

<sup>1</sup> Libations are a common practice. Dr. Bastian (*Loango Expedition*, vol. i. p. 70) observed libations of rum being poured on the royal graves at Loangiri; Capello and Ivens (*Benguella*, vol. i, p. 26) say that the Bandombe, before they drink spirits, pour a portion on the ground, as a libation to *Nzambi*; whilst in Congo (according to Bentley), the blood of a beast killed in the chase is poured on the grave of a good hunter, to ensure success in the future. Instances of this practice could easily be multiplied. Compare note, p. 51.

<sup>2</sup> *Wá*, an interjection, O! *Kizangu* is a fetish image (see note, p. 24). *Kuleketa*, to prove, to try (Cordeiro da Matta's *Diccionario*).

<sup>3</sup> On this ordeal, as practised in Angola, see note, p. 61.

<sup>4</sup> *Nganga á mukishi*.

<sup>5</sup> See note, p. 34.

his beads (which they use on chains and bracelets for ornament), and the most part of his goods, with him in his last home. They kill goats and shed the blood in the graves, and pour wine there in memorial of the dead.

[*Dogs.*]<sup>1</sup>

. . . . . Andrew Battell saith that the Dogs in these countries are all of one sort, prick-eared curs of a mean bigness, which they use also to hunt with, but they open not (for they cannot bark), and therefore they hang clappers made of little boards about their necks. He hath seen a mastiff sold for three slaves. . . . .

[*Quizama.*]

This kingdom [of Angola] hath many lordships subject thereto, as far as the sea-coast as Cape Negro. Towards a lake called Aquelunda<sup>2</sup> lieth a country called Quizama, the inhabitants whereof being governed after the manner of a commonwealth, have showed themselves friendly to the Portugals, and helped them in their wars against Angola. The houses in Angola are made in fashion like a bee-hive.

[*Women and the Moon.*]

The women at the first sight of the new moon, turn up their bums in despite, as offended with their menstruous courses, which they ascribe unto her.

---

<sup>1</sup> See note, p. 55.

<sup>2</sup> Battell is named in the margin as authority for this paragraph, but it is not likely that he would have mentioned a lake Aquelunda, which we now know does not exist. It rather seems that Purchas got this bit of information out of Pigafetta. The Quizama here referred must not be confounded with the country of the same name, to the south of the Coanza. It was the district of the Quiluangi quia Sama (or quia Samba, according to Lopez de Lima, p. 60), the ancestor of a chief of the same name now living near the Portuguese fort of Duque de Bragança. The "commonwealth" is an evident reference to the country of the Dembos (*ndembu*, plural *iindembu*, ruler, chief),

[*Horses' Tails.*]<sup>1</sup>

The men sometimes, in a valorous resolution, will devote themselves unto some haughty attempt in the wars; and, taking leave of the king, will vow never to return until they bring him a horse-head, or some other thing, very dangerous in the enterprise, and will either do it or die. Horse-tails are great jewels, and two slaves will be given for one tail, which commonly they bring from the River of Plate, where horses are exceedingly increased and grown wild. They will, by firing the grass round about, hem the horses about with a fiery circle, the fire still straightening and growing nearer till they have advantage enough to kill them. Thus have the European cattle, of horse and kine, so increased in the other world, as they spare not to kill the one for their hides, and the other for their tails.

## CHAPTER IX, § II.—OF CONGO.

[*A Crocodile Story.*]<sup>2</sup>

... Andrew Battell told me of a huge crocodile which was reported to have eaten a whole *Alibamba*, that is, a company of eight or nine slaves chained together, and at last paid for his greediness: the chain holding him slave, as before it had the negroes, and by his undigestible nature devouring the devourer; remaining in the belly of him after he was found, in testimony of this victory. He hath seen them watch and take their prey, haling a gennet, man, or other creature into the water. A soldier thus drawn in by a crocodile, in shallower waters, with his knife wounded him in the belly, and slew him.

<sup>1</sup> It need scarcely be stated that the horse was first introduced into Angola by the Portuguese. The tails seen by the early Portuguese, and sometimes described as horse-tails, were in truth the tails of the Zebra.

<sup>2</sup> See another version of the same story, p. 69.

CHAPTER IX, § III.—OF THEIR . . . . STRANGE  
TREES . . . .

Having stated that they use in Congo to make "clothes of the *Enzanda* tree,<sup>1</sup> of which some write the same things that are reported of the Indian fig-tree," that it sends forth a hairy substance from the branches, which no sooner touch the ground but they take root, and grow up in such sort, that one tree would multiply itself into a wood, if nature set not some obstacle (a marginal note adds that "Andrew Battell saith that the tree which thus strangely multiplieth itself is called the *Manga* tree"<sup>2</sup>). Purchas continues as follows :—

"But more admirable is that huge tree called *Alicunde*,<sup>3</sup> of which my friend Andrew Battell supposeth some are as big (besides their wonderful tallness) as twelve men can fathom. It spreads like a oak. Some of them are hollow, and the liberal clouds into those natural casks disperse such plenty of water, that one time three or four thousand of them, in that hot region, continued four and twenty hours at one of these, which yielded them all drink of her watery store, and was not emptied. Their negroes climbed up with pegs<sup>4</sup> (for the tree is smooth and not therefore otherwise to be climbed, and so soft that it easily receiveth pegs of harder wood, driven into her yielding substance with a stone), and dipped the water, as it had been out of a well. He supposed that there is forty tuns of water in some one of them. It yielded them a good opportunity for honey,

<sup>1</sup> The *nsanda* is the banyan, or wild fig-tree (*ficus umbelata*, Vahl).

<sup>2</sup> Battell has been misunderstood by Purchas, for the *manga* tree is the Mangrove (*Rhyzophora mangle*) called *Mangue* in Kimbundu, which rejoices in adventitious roots, as also does the *nsanda*.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 24, for note on the *Nkondo* or *Baobab*.

<sup>4</sup> For an account of this mode of climbing a tree, see Pechuel-Lösche, *Loango Expedition*, vol. iii, p. 179.

to which end the country people make a kind of chest, with one hole in the same, and hang it upon one of these trees, which they take down once a year, and with fire or smoke chasing or killing the bees, take thence a large quantity of honey.<sup>1</sup> Neither is it liberal alone to the hungry or thirsty appetite, but very bountifully it clothes their backs, and the bark thereof, which, being taken from the younger *Alicundes* [*nkondo*], and beaten, one fathom which they cut out from the tree will by this means extend itself into twenty, and presently is cloth fit for wearing, though not so fine as that which the *Inzanda*<sup>2</sup> tree yieldeth. [It serves them also for boats, one of which cut out in proportion of a scute<sup>3</sup> will hold hundreds of men."]<sup>4</sup> In a further marginal note Purchas adds: "These boats, saith Andrew Battell, are made of another tree, for the *Alicunde* is of too spongy a substance for that purpose."

---

CHAPTER X, § I.—OF LOANGO.

[*Offerings.*]

. . . . Andrew Battell lived among them [the Bramas of Loango]<sup>5</sup> for two years and a half. They are, saith he, heathens, and observe many superstitions. They have

---

<sup>1</sup> On honey, see note, p. 68.

<sup>2</sup> *Nsanda*, the banyan-tree.

<sup>3</sup> Schuit, a boat, in Dutch.

<sup>4</sup> This sentence is introduced on the authority of Duarte Lopez (Pigafetta, p. 22). The other tree referred to by Battell is the *mfuma*, or cotton-tree (see Tuckey, *Narrative*, p. 225). Dr. Falkenstein, however, affirms that the soft wood of the *baobab* is that usually employed for making canoes ("dug-outs").

<sup>5</sup> Battell, I have no doubt, never employed the word "Bramas" (Bramanes in Portuguese, Brahmans). D. Lopez (Pigafetta) must be held responsible for the statement that the inhabitants of Loango were originally known as Bramas. Surely this cannot be (as supposed by Degrandpré) because of the red and yellow stripes with which the women in Loango paint their foreheads in honour of a certain fetish, and the similarity of these with the marks of the votaries of Siva in India.

their *Mokissos* or images [*nkishi*] to which they offer in proportion to their sorts and suits;<sup>1</sup> the fisher offereth fish when he sueth for his help in his fishing; the countryman, wheat; the weaver, *Alibungos*,<sup>2</sup> [that is] pieces of cloth; others bring bottles of wine; all wanting that they would have, and bringing what they want, furnishing their *Mokisso* with those things whereof they complain themselves to be disfurnished.

[*Funeral Rites.*]

Their ceremonies for the dead are divers. They bring goats and let them bleed at the *Mokisso's* foot, which they after consume in a feasting memorial of the deceased party, which is continued four or five days together, and that four or five several times in the year, by all his friends and kindred. The days are known, and though they dwell twenty miles thence, yet they will resort to these memorial exequies, and, beginning in the night, will sing doleful and funeral songs till day, and then kill, as aforesaid, and make merry. The hope of this maketh such as have store of friends to contemn death; and the want of friends to bewail him makes a man conceive a more dreadful apprehension of death.<sup>3</sup>

[*Prohibitions—Taboo.*]

Their conceit is so ravished with superstition that many die of none other death. *Kin*<sup>4</sup> is the name of unlawful and

<sup>1</sup> Dr. Bastian (*Loango Expedition*, vol. i, pp. 158, 202, 232) mentions offerings of this kind. Thus the skull of an animal killed in the chase is placed before the fetish.

<sup>2</sup> *Mbongo*, cloth (Bentley's *Dictionary*).

<sup>3</sup> See note, p. 35.

<sup>4</sup> Restrictions upon the use of certain articles of food are imposed by the doctor (*ngangu*), even before the child is born (*mpangu*), and upon the sick (*konko*). The things forbidden to be eaten are called *nlongo*, and it is believed that a disregard of this taboo entails

prohibited meat, which, according to each kindred's devotion, to some family is some kind of fish; to another a hen; to another a buffe [beef]; and so of the rest: in which they observe their vowed abstinence so strictly that if any should (though all unawares) eat of his *Kin*, he would die of conceit, always presenting to his accusing conscience the breach of his vow, and the anger of *Mokisso*. He hath known divers thus to have died, and sometimes would, when some of them had eaten with him, make them believe that they had eaten of their *Kin*, till, having sported himself with their superstitious agony, he would affirm the contrary.

They use to set in their fields and places where corn or fruits grow, a basket, with goat's horns, parrot's feathers, and other trash: this is the *Mokisso's* Ensign, or token, that it is commended to his custody; and therefore, the people very much addicted to theft, dare not meddle, or take anything. Likewise, if a man, wearied with his burthen, lay it down in the highway, and knit a knot of grass, and lay thereon; or leave any other note (known to them) to testify that he hath left it there in the name of his idol, it is secured from the lime-fingers of any passenger. Conceit would kill the man that should transgress in this kind.<sup>1</sup>

In the *banza* [*mbanza*], or chief city, the chief idol is named *Chekoke*.<sup>2</sup> Every day they have there a market, and the *Chekoke* is brought forth by the *Ganga*, or priest, to keep good rule, and is set in the market-place to pre-

---

most disastrous consequences (Bentley, *Dictionary*, pp. 353, 389). In Loango things forbidden are called *Shin*, or *thina* (Dennett, *Folk-Lore*, p. 138).

<sup>1</sup> Any place guarded by a "charm," such as a shell, a bit of cloth, or the like, is respected by the natives as being protected by the *nkishi* (Dennett, *Folk-Lore*, pp. 6, 18).

<sup>2</sup> See note, p. 48.

vent stealing. Moreover, the king hath a Bell,<sup>1</sup> the strokes whereof sound such terror into the heart of the fearful thief that none dare keep any stolen goods after the sound of that bell. Our author inhabited in a little reed-house, after the Loango manner, and had hanging by the walls, in a cloth case, his piece, wherewith he used to shoot fowls for the king, which, more for the love of the cloth than the piece, was stolen. Upon complaint, this bell (in form like a cow-bell) was carried about and rung, with proclamation to make restitution; and he had his piece next morning set at his door. The like another, found in a bag of beans of a hundred pound weight, stolen from him, and recovered by the sound of this bell.

[*Poison Ordeal.*]<sup>2</sup>

They have a dreadful and deadly kind of trial in controversies, after this manner: there is a little tree, or shrub, with a small root (it is called *Imbunda*) about the bigness of one's thumb, half a foot long, like a white carrot. Now, when any listeth to accuse a man, or a family, or whole street, of the death of any of his friends, saying, that such a man bewitched him, the *Ganga* assembleth the accused parties, and scrapes that root, the scrapings whereof he mixeth with water, which makes it as bitter as gall (he tasted of it); one root will serve for the trial of a hundred men. The *Ganga* brews the same together in gourds, and with plantain stalks hitteth everyone, after they have drunk, with certain words. Those that have received the drink walk by, till they can make urine, and then they are

---

<sup>1</sup> This bell is called *Shi-Ngongo*, and the Maloango alone is allowed to order it to be struck. Thus, when a messenger is sent round the town, striking this *Shi-Ngongo*, the people know that it is the voice of Maloango which speaketh. It is thus quite likely that a thief, under these circumstances, should be frightened into restoring stolen property. (From a letter by Mr. Dennett.) See also note, p. 20.

thereby free'd. Others abide till either urine frees them, or dizziness takes them, which the people no sooner perceive but they cry, *Undoke, Undoke*,<sup>1</sup> that is "naughty witch"; and he is no sooner fallen by his dizziness, but they knock him on the head, and dragging him away, hurl him over the cliff. In every Liberty<sup>2</sup> they have such drinks, which they make in case of theft, and death of any person. Every week it falls out that some or other undergoes this trial, which consumeth multitudes of people.

[*Albinos.*]<sup>3</sup>

There be certain persons called *Dunda* [*ndundu*], which are born by negro parents, and yet are, by some unknown cause, white. They are very rare, and when such happen to be born, they are brought to the king, and become great witches: they are his councillors, and advise him of lucky and unlucky days for execution of his enterprisēs. When the king goes any whither the *Dundas* go with him, and beat the ground round about with certain exorcisms before the king sits down, and then sit down by him. They will take anything in the market, none daring to contradict them.

[*The Gumbiri Fetish.*]

Kenga is the landing-place of Loanga. They have there an idol called *Gumbiri*, and a holy house called *Munsa Gumbiri*,<sup>4</sup> kept and inhabited by an old woman, where once a year is a solemn feast, which they celebrate with drums, dances, and palm-wines; and then, they say, he speaketh under the ground. The people call him

<sup>1</sup> *Ndōke*, or *ndoki*, witchcraft, sorcerer.

<sup>2</sup> A misprint for *Libata*, village.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 48.

<sup>4</sup> *Munsa*, should be *inzo* or *nzo*, a house (see also note, p. 49).

*Mokisso Cola*,<sup>1</sup> or a strong *Mokisso*, and say, that he comes to stay with *Chekoke*, the idol of the banza. That *Chekoke* is a negro image, made sitting on a stool ; a little house is then made him. They anoint him with *Toccola* [*tacula*],<sup>2</sup> which is a red colour made of a certain wood, ground on a stone, and mixed with water, wherewith they daily paint themselves, from the waist upwards, esteeming it a great beauty ; otherwise they account not themselves ready. It is for like purposes carried from hence to Angola.

[*Possessed of the Fetish.*]

Sometimes it falls out that some man or boy is taken with some sudden enthusiasm, or ravishment, becoming mad, and making a whooping and great clamours.

They call them *Mokisso-Moquat*,<sup>3</sup> that is, taken of the *Mokisso*. They clothe them very handsomely, and whatever they bid in that fit (for it lasteth not very long), they execute as the *Mokisso's* charge.

[*The Maramba Fetish.*]<sup>4</sup>

Morumba<sup>5</sup> is thirty leagues northwards from hence, in the Mani Loango's dominions, where he [Battell] lived nine months. There is a house, and in it a great basket, proportioned like to a hive, wherein is an image called *Morumba*, whose religion extendeth far. They are sworn to this religion at ten or twelve years old ; but, for probation are first put in a house, where they have hard diet, and must be mute for nine or ten days, any provocation to

<sup>1</sup> *Nkishi ngolo*, a strong *nkishi*.

<sup>2</sup> Marginal note by Purchas : "This seemeth to be Red Sanders. A. Battell saith it is logwood." Purchas is right ! *Tacula* is Red Sanders (*Pterocarpus tinctorius*).

<sup>3</sup> *Nkwa*, the possessor of a thing or quality ; *akwa*, possessed of.

<sup>4</sup> Compare p. 56, where we are told that a fetish called *Maramba* (*Morumba*), stood in the town of the Mani Yumba.

<sup>5</sup> Evidently a misprint for Mayumba.

speaking notwithstanding. Then do they bring him before *Morumba*, and prescribe him his *Kin* [kina], or perpetual abstinence from some certain meat. They make a cut in his shoulder like to a half moon, and sprinkle the blood at *Morumba's* feet, and swear him to that religion. In the wound they put a certain white powder in token of his late admission; which, so long as it continueth, doth privilege him to take his meat and drink with whomsoever he pleaseth, none denying him the same, at free cost.

They also have their fatal trials before this image, where the accused party, kneeling down and clasping the hive, saith: "*Mene quesa cabamba Morumba*," signifying that he comes thither to make trial of his innocence;<sup>1</sup> and if he be guilty he falls down dead; being free he is free'd.

Andrew Battell saith he knew six or seven, in his being there, that made this trial.

---

CHAP. X, § III.—OF THE GIACCHI, OR IAGGES.<sup>2</sup>

[*Origin of the Jagas.*]

... Andrew Battell lived (by occasion of the Portugals treachery) with the Iagges a longer time than ever any Christian or white man had done, namely, sixteen months, and served them with their [his] musket in the wars; neither could Lopez (saith he) have true intelligence whence they came,<sup>3</sup> for the Christians at that time had

---

<sup>1</sup> Another version of this address will be found on p. 56.

<sup>2</sup> Marginal note with reference to the existence of amazons (Pigafetta, p. 124): "Andr. Battell, which travelled near to these parts [where Amazons are supposed to exist] denieth this report of Lopez as untrue." The Amazons of Lopez lived in Monomotapa, on the Zambezi.

<sup>3</sup> We may presume that Purchas told his friend what was reported by Lopez (Pigafetta, vol. ii, chs. 5, 9) and others about the origin of the Jagas. Battell, upon this, not only rejects the conjecture of

but uncertain conjectures of them : neither after had the Portugals any conversing, but by way of commerce ; but he, being betrayed, fled to them for his life, and after, by stealth, escaped from them : the only European that ever lived in their camp.

He saith they are called Iaggés by the Portugals, by themselves Imbangolas<sup>\*1</sup> (which name argues them to be of the Imbij and Galæ before mentioned) and come from Sierra Liona ;<sup>\*2</sup> that they are exceeding devourers of man's flesh, for which they refuse beef and goats, whereof they take plenty. They have no settled habitation, but wander in an unsettled course.

[*Infanticide among the Jaga.*]

They rise in harvest, and invading some country, there stay as long as they find the palms, or other sufficient means of maintenance, and then seek new adventure. For they neither plant nor sow, nor breed up cattle, and, which is more strange, they nourish up none of their own children, although they have ten or twenty wives a man, of the properest and comeliest slaves they can take. But when they are in travail they dig a hole in the earth, which presently receiveth in that dark prison of death the new-

---

Lopez, but also disclaims having any knowledge of their origin himself. Elsewhere, however, Purchas makes his author responsible for the assertion that they came from Sierra Leone (see note, p. 19).

<sup>1</sup> The Bangála (*akibangála*, in Kimbundu *Jimbangála*, sing. *kibangála*) are the people of the Jaga of Kasanj. The term merely means "people," and they have absolutely nothing to do with the Bangala on the middle Kongo, still less with the Galla (see Carvalho, *Exp. Port. do Muatianvua*, *Ethnographia*, p. 85).

<sup>2</sup> The words within asterisks are obviously a parenthesis of worthy Purchas. He speaks (p. 854) of the Gallæ [our Galla] as a "nationless nation," either the same as or like in condition to the Giacchi or Iaggés [Jaga], and (p. 857) of the Imbij as "a barbarous nation" near Mombaza. There exists not the slightest justification for identifying the Jagas of Angola with the Sumbas of Sierra Leone, the Mazimbas of the Zambezi, or the Galla. The whole of this question is dealt with in the Appendix.

born creature, not yet made happy with the light of life. Their reason is that they will not be troubled with education, nor in their flitting wanderings be troubled with such cumbersome burthens.<sup>1</sup>

Once, a secret providence both punisheth the father's wickedness, and preventeth a viperous generation, if that may be a prevention where there is a succession without generation ; and as Pliny saith of the Esseni (lib. v, c. 15), *Gens æterna est in qua nemo nascitur*. For of the conquered nations they [the Jaga] preserve the boys from ten to twenty years of age, and bring them up as the hope of their succession, like *Negro-azimogli*,<sup>2</sup> with education fitting their designs. These wear a collar about their neck in token of slavery, until they bring an enemy's head slain in battle, and then they are uncollared, free'd, and dignified with the title of soldiers ; if one of them runs away he is killed and eaten ; so that, hemmed in betwixt hope and fear, they grow very resolute and adventurous, their collars breeding shame, disdain, and desperate fury, till they redeem their freedom as you have heard.

Elembe,<sup>3</sup> the great Iagge, brought with him twelve thousand of these cruel monsters from Sierra Liona, and after much mischief and spoil settled himself in Benguele,<sup>4</sup> twelve degrees from the Zone southwards, and there breedeth and groweth into a nation. But Kelandula, sometime his page, proceeds in that beastly life before mentioned, and the people of Elembe, by great troops, run to him and follow his camp in hope of spoil.

---

<sup>1</sup> On infanticide, see note, p. 32.

<sup>2</sup> In a marginal note Purchas adds : "*Azimogli* are the children of Christians taken from the parents by the Turke, the spawn of their *Ianizaries*." It should be *Ajem oglan* ("inexperienced boys"), the children of Christians who were handed over to Turks to be brought up as Moslims, and trained as recruits for the *Yanizaries* (*Yeni-cheri*, new troops) organised by Sultan Urkhan in 1328. This unruly force ceased to exist in 1826.

<sup>3</sup> *Elembe* means pelican.

<sup>4</sup> See notes, pp. 19, 28.

[*Human Sacrifices.*]

They have no *fetissos*, or idols. The great Iagge, or Prince, is master of all their ceremonies, and a great witch. I have seen this Kelandula (sayth our author) continue a sacrifice from sun to sun, the rites whereof are these: himself sat on a stool, in great pomp, with a cap adorned with peacocks' feathers (which fowls, in one country called *Shelambanza*,<sup>1</sup> are found wild; and in one place, empaled about the grave of the king, are fifty kept and fed by an old woman, and are called *Ingilla Mokisso*, that is, Birds of Mokisso).<sup>2</sup> Now, about him thus set, attended forty or fifty women, each of them waving continually a zebra's tail in their hands. There were also certain Gangas, priests or witches. Behind them were many with drums and pipes, and *pungas*<sup>3</sup> (certain instruments made of elephants' teeth, made hollow a yard and a half, and with a hole like a flute, which yield a loud and harsh sound, that may be heard a mile off). These strike and sound, and sing, and the women wave (as is said) till the sun be almost down. Then they bring forth a pot, which is set on the fire with leaves and roots, and the water therein, and with a kind of white powder the witches or Gangas spot themselves, one on the one cheek, the other on the other; and likewise their foreheads, temples, breasts, shoulders, and bellies, using many enchanting terms, which are holden to be prayers for victory. At sunset a Ganga brings his *Kissen-gula*,<sup>4</sup> or war-hatchet, to the Prince (this weapon they use to wear at their girdles) and putting the same in his hands bid him to be strong, [that] their God goes with him, and he shall have victory. After this they bring him four or five negroes, of which, with a terrible countenance, the

<sup>1</sup> See note, p. 26.<sup>2</sup> *Njilo mukisho*, see p. 27.<sup>3</sup> *Mpungi*, an ivory trumpet.<sup>4</sup> See note, p. 34.

great Iagge with his hatchet kills two, and the other two are killed without the fort. Likewise, five kine are slain within, and other five without the fort ; and as many goats and as many dogs, after the same manner.

This is their sacrifice, at the end whereof all the flesh is, in a feast, consumed. Andrew Battell was commanded to depart when the slaughter begun, for their devil, or *Mokisso* (as they said) would then appear and speak to them.<sup>1</sup>

This sacrifice is called *Kissembula*<sup>2</sup> which they solemnise when they undertake any great enterprise. There were few left of the natural Iagges, but of this unnatural brood the present succession was raised.

---

<sup>1</sup> See note, p. 33.

<sup>2</sup> *Kuzambula*, a soothsayer, diviner. Neves, p. 19, mentions a *Mocoa-co-Zambulla* as officiating among the Jagas of Cassanje.







## APPENDIX I.

---

### ANTHONY KNIVET IN KONGO AND ANGOLA :

BEING

Extracts from "The Admirable Adventures and Strange Fortunes  
of MASTER ANTONIE KNIVET, which went with MASTER  
THOMAS CANDISH in his Second Voyage to the South  
Sea, 1591," published in *Purchas His Pilgrimes*,  
Part IV, lib. vi, c. 7. London, 1625.

---

#### INTRODUCTION.



MASTER ANTHONY KNIVET joined the second expedition of Thomas Cavendish, which left England in August, 1591. He seems to have served on board the *Roebuck*, of which vessel one Cocke was captain. Nothing in his narrative enables us to identify this Cocke with the Abraham Cocke of Limehouse, who was "never heard of more" after he parted from Battell on the coast of Brazil in 1590, nor with the Abram Cocke who, according to Knivet, put in at the Ilha Grande in 1598, in the hope of making prizes of some of the richly-laden Spanish vessels returning from the Rio de la Plata. Battell, surely, may be supposed to have been acquainted with the fate of his old shipmate, whilst Knivet gives no hint that the Abram Cocke of the Ilha Grande

was the captain of the *Roebuck*, to whom he was indebted for his life when Cavendish was about to throw him overboard in Magellan's Strait. It is, however, just possible that there was but one Abraham Cock, who had not been heard of for some time when Battell returned to England about 1610.<sup>1</sup>

When Cavendish returned from Magellan's Strait, he put Knivet and nineteen other sick men ashore near St. Sebastian, to shift for themselves. Knivet was ultimately taken by the Portuguese ; but they spared his life, and he became the "bond-slave" of Salvador Correa de Sá, the Governor of Rio de Janeiro ; and, apart from the time he spent among the cannibal Indians, and on a voyage to Angola, he remained with his master to the end, and returned with him to Portugal in 1599.

My friend, Colonel G. Earl Church, to whom I applied for an opinion on the trustworthiness of Knivet's statements with regard to Brazil, writes as follows :—

"Yesterday morning I spent at the R. Geo. Soc., refreshing my memory of Knivet's extraordinary adventures. One must read them always bearing in mind the romantic spirit of the age in which they were written, and the novel surroundings in which every adventurer found himself in the New World. Giving due weight to all this, I find Knivet's relation of his voyages singularly truthful, so far as my knowledge of Brazil goes. What he states, excepting in two or three minor particulars, clashes with no geographical, descriptive, or historical point with which I am familiar, and he often throws in a sentence which relates to facts which no man could invent, and which makes his narrative impressive with truthfulness. I utterly discard Cavendish's opinion of his men and companions for Cavendish appears to have been one of the most cold-

blooded freebooters who ever cut a throat or raided a settlement or scuttled a prize."

I regret not being able to write in terms equally favourable of what Knivet claims to have experienced during his visit to Angola and Kongo. Knivet says that he ran away from bondage on June 27th, 1597, and that he reached the "port of Angola" after a perilous voyage of five months, that is in November. He then sailed up the Kwanza, and reached Masanganu, where he remained three months, when he was arrested in consequence of a requisition of his master and sent back to Brazil, which he must have reached before June, 1598. We should be quite prepared to accept this part of his story if his description of Masanganu did not show that he can never have been there. Knivet, however, is not content with such modest honours, but claims to have resided for some time at the court of the King of Kongo, and to have fallen in the hands of the Portuguese when on his road to Prester John's country. By them he was carried to Masanganu, where he lived three months. These two accounts are absolutely irreconcilable. As to the author's astounding geographical misstatements, I refer the reader to the notes appended to his narrative.

#### FIRST ACCOUNT (*Purchas*, pp. 1220-2).

Continually I desired my master to give me leave to get my living, intending to come into my country, but the Governor would not let me go from him. When I saw no means to get leave of my master, I determined to run away to Angola, for to serve the King as a soldier in Massangano till such time that I might pass myself to the King of Anyeca,<sup>1</sup> which warreth against the Portugals,

---

<sup>1</sup> Masanganu is the famous fort on the Kwanza built by Paulo Dias de Novaes in 1583. Anyeca, elsewhere called Ancica, Angica, Angila and Anguca, is clearly meant for Anzica, that is the country of the Nteke above Stanley Pool.

and so have come through Prester Johns country into Turkey.

On the seven and twentieth day of June, 1597, I embarked myself unknown to my master, in a small ship of one Emanuell Andrea, for to come for Angola. In this voyage we were driven so near the Cape of Good Hope that we thought all of us should have been cast away, the seas are there so great; and by reason of the current they brake in such sort that no ship is able to endure. There we brake both our main mast and our mizzen. It pleased God to send us the wind Eastward, which brought us to our desired harbour [of] Angola.<sup>1</sup> We had been five months in our voyage, and by that means other ships that departed two months after us were there before us.

When I heard that there were ships of the River of Ienero [Rio de Janeiro], I durst not go ashore for fear of being known of some of the Portugals. The next day after that we came into the harbour, there came a great boat aboard us, to ask if we would sell any Cassava meal. We told them we would, and asked them whither they went with their boat. They answered, that they tarried for the tide to go up to the River of Guansa [Kwanza] to Masangano. Then I thought it a fit time for my purpose, and so embarked myself in the bark. The Portugals marvelled to see me go willingly to Masangano; for there men die like chickens, and no man will go thither if he can chose.

Nine days we were going up the River of Guansa [Kwanza], in which time two Portugal soldiers died; the country is so hot that it pierceth their hearts. Three days after I had been in Masangano, Don Francisco de Mendosa Fortado,<sup>2</sup> the Governor of the city of Kongo, having

---

<sup>1</sup> That is, St. Paul de Loanda, the chief town of Angola.

<sup>2</sup> João Furtado de Mendonça was Governor of Angola (not Kongo), 1594-1601.

received a letter from Salvador Coria de Sasa [Salvador Correa de Sá], who was his great friend, sent a Pursuivant for me, who brought me by land through the King of Kongo's country, and in six days we came to a town called Saint Francis<sup>1</sup> (where the Governor was), hard by the kingdom of Manicongo.

When I came before the Governor he used me very kindly in words, and asked me what I meant, to cast myself away wilfully in Masangano. Then I told him how long I had served Salvador Coria de Sasa ; and in how many dangers I had been for him and his Son, without ever having any recompence of any of them, and therefore I thought it better to venture my life in the King's service, than to live his Bond-slave. The Governor commanded me to be carried to Angola, and charged a pair of bolts to be put upon my legs, because I should not run away.

About a fortnight after I was sent back again in a Carvell [caravel] of Francis Lewes, and in two months we arrived in the River of Jenero [Rio de Janeiro], and I was carried with my bolts on my legs before the Governor ; when he saw me he began to laugh and to jest with me, saying that I was welcome out of England. So, after many jests he spake, he bade pull off my bolts from my legs, and gave me clothes and used me very well.

## SECOND ACCOUNT (*Purchas*, pp. 1233-7).

Angola is a kingdom of itself in Ethiopia, where first the Portugals did begin to inhabit : The country of Angola cometh along the coast ; as Portugal doth upon Spain, so doth Angola run upon the Kingdom of Longa [Luangu] and Manicongo.

---

<sup>1</sup> I know of no town (or even church) in the whole of Angola dedicated to St. Francis.

In Angola the Portugals have a City called the Holy Ghost,<sup>1</sup> where they have great store of Merchandise, and the Moors do come thither with all kind of such things as the country yieldeth; some bring elephant's teeth, some bring negro slaves to sell, that they take from other kingdoms which join hard by them; thus do they use once a week, as we keep markets, so do all the Blackamoors bring hens and hogs, which they call gula,<sup>2</sup> and hens they call Sange,<sup>3</sup> and a kind of beast that they take in the wilderness, like a dog, which they call ambroa:<sup>4</sup> then they have that beast which before I have told you of, called gumbe, which is bigger than a horse.<sup>5</sup>

The Blackamoors do keep good laws, and fear their King very much; the King is always attended with the nobles of his realm, and whensoever he goeth abroad, he has always at the least two hundred archers in his guard, and ten or twelve more going before him, singing and playing with pipes made of great canes, and four or five young Moors

<sup>1</sup> There is no such city in Angola. It seems to me that Knivet found the name in Linschoten, a translation of whose work appeared in 1698. Linschoten says here of the island of Luandu, which lies in front of the Portuguese town of S. Paul de Loanda, that "there were seven or eight villages upon it, at one of which called 'Holy Ghost', resides the Governor of Kongo, who takes care of the right of fishing up shells." This "Governor" was an officer of the King of Kongo. The island, with its valuable cowrie fishery, was ceded to Portugal in 1649.

<sup>2</sup> *Ngulu*, a hog.

<sup>3</sup> *Sanji*, a hen.

<sup>4</sup> *Imboa*, or *mbwa*, dog.

<sup>5</sup> Earlier in his narrative he mentions having seen, at the Straits of Magellan, "a kind of beast bigger than horses; they have great eyes about a span long, and their tails are like the tail of a cow; these are very good: the Indians of Brazil call them *tapetywason*: of these beasts I saw in Ethiopia, in the Kingdom of Manicongo. The Portugals call them *gombe*" (marginal note by Purchas). The *gombe* (*ngombe*) of the Portugals is undoubtedly a cow, whilst the *tapetywason*, called "taparussu" in a *Noticia de Brazil* of 1589, and *tapyra*, in the language of the Tupi Indians, is applied to any large beast, and even to the oxen imported by the Portuguese, which they call *tapyra sobay go ara*, that is, "foreign beasts," to distinguish them from their own *tapyra caapora* or "forest beast."

coming after him as his pages. After them follow all his noblemen.

When there falleth out any controversy among them, they crave battle of the King, and then they fight it out before him. They come before the King and fall flat on their breasts ; then they rise up and kneel upon their knees, stretching out their arms crying, *Mahobeque benge, benge* ;<sup>1</sup> then the King striketh them on the shoulders with a horse-tail ; then they go to the camp, and with their bows they fight it out till they kill one another. After the battle is done, if any liveth, he that liveth falleth down before the King in the same manner as he did when he went to the field ; and after a long oration made, he taketh the horse-tail from the King's shoulder, and waveth it about the King's head, and then layeth it on his shoulder again, and goeth away with great honour, being accompanied with all the nobles of the Court. The Moors of Angola do know that there is a God, and do call God *Caripongoa*,<sup>2</sup> but they worship the sun and the moon.

The country is champaign plain, and dry black earth, and yieldeth very little corn ; the most of anything that it yieldeth is plantons [plantains], which the Portugals call *baynonas* [bananas], and the Moors call them *mahonge*,<sup>3</sup> and their wheat they call *tumba*,<sup>4</sup> and the bread *anou* ; and if you will buy any bread of them, you must say, *Tala cuna auen tumbola gimbo* ; that is, *Give me some bread, here is*

<sup>1</sup> This account of a "trial by battle" does much credit to the author's ingenuity. No such custom is referred to by any other visitor to the Kongo. The meaning of "Mahobeque" we cannot discover, but *mbenge-mbenge* means "principally."

<sup>2</sup> *Nkadi*, one who is, and *mpungu*, the highest. The usual word to express the idea of God is *nzambi*, or *nzambi ampungu*, God the most high ! *Nkadi ampemba*, according to Bentley, means Satan. The word used in Angola is, *Karia-pemba*.

<sup>3</sup> *Ri-konjo*, banana.

<sup>4</sup> *Mutombo* is the flour from which cassava-bread is made.

money.<sup>1</sup> Their money is called *gullginbo*,<sup>2</sup> a shell of a fish that they find by the shore-side; and from Brazil the Portugals do carry great store of them to Angola.

These Moors do esteem very much of red, blue and yellow cloths. They will give a slave for a span of cloth in breadth, I mean, and the length of it, of the breadth of the piece; those pieces of cloth they wear about their middles, and under it they hang the skin of a great weasel before them, and another behind them, and this is all the garments that they wear. A weasel in their language is called *puccu*.<sup>3</sup> You can do a Blackamoor no greater disgrace than to take away his skin from before him, for he will die with grief if he cannot be revenged.

The Portugals do mark them as we do sheep, with a hot iron, which the Moors call *crimbo*.<sup>4</sup> The poor slaves stand all in a row one by another, and sing *Mundele que sumbela he Carey ha belelelle*,<sup>5</sup> and thus the poor rogues are beguiled, for the Portugals make them believe that they that have not the mark is not accounted a man of any account in Brazil or in Portugal, and thus they bring the poor Moors to be in a most damnable bondage under the cover of love.

The country of Angola yieldeth no stone, and very little wood: the Moors do make their houses all covered with earth.

<sup>1</sup> The name for bread, both in Kimbundu and Kishikongo, is *mbolo* (derived from the Portuguese word for cake or *bolo*). *Anou* or *auen* may stand for *mwan*, a cassava-pudding; *tala* means look! *kuna*, here! The Rev. Thomas Lewis would say, in the Kongo language of Salvador: *Umpana mbolo tambula nzimbu*; literally, "Give me bread, take or receive money."

<sup>2</sup> The cowrie-shells fished up at Luanda Island (the old "treasury" of the Kings of Kongo) are called *njimbu* in Angola, but *nsungu* in Kongo. *Njimbu* in Kongo means beads, or money generally, and hence the author's "gullginbo" evidently stands for *ngulu anjimbu*, red beads.

<sup>3</sup> *Npuku*, a field mouse.

<sup>4</sup> *Crimbo* (*kirimbo*) seems to be a corruption of the Portuguese *carimbo*, a stamp.

<sup>5</sup> The Rev. Thomas Lewis suggests: *Mundele ke sumbanga ko, kadi wan bele-bele*; that is, "The white men do not buy, but they have gone away in a hurry."

These houses are no bigger than a reasonable chamber, and within are many partitions, like the cabins of a ship, in such sort that a man cannot stand upright in them. Their beds are made of great bulrushes sowed together with the rinds of a tree. They do make cloth like spark of velvet (but it is thinner) of the bark of a tree, and that cloth they do call *mollelleo*.<sup>1</sup>

The elephants do feed in the evening and in the morning in low marshes, as there be many. The Moors do watch which way they come, and as soon as the elephants are at meat, they dig great holes in the ground, and cover them with sticks, and then they cover the pits with earth; and when they have made all ready they go to the elephants and shoot at them with their arrows; and as soon as the elephants feel themselves hurt, they run at whatsoever they see before them, following after the Blackamores that chase them. Then they fall into the deep pits where, after they are once in, they cannot get out.

The Moors of Angola are as black as jet; they are men of good stature; they never take but one wife, whom they call *mocasha*.<sup>2</sup> These Moors do cut long streaks in their faces, that reach from the top of their ears to their chins. The women do wear shells of fishes<sup>3</sup> on their arms, and on the small of their legs. The law amongst them is, that if any Moor do lie with another's wife, he shall lose his ears for his offence. These Moors do circumcise their children, and give them their names, as we do when we baptize.

Angola may very easily be taken, for the Portugals have no forts to defend it of any strength.

The King<sup>4</sup> of Congo is the greatest King in all Ethiopia;

<sup>1</sup> *Nlele*, the general name for European cloth. They do make cloth from the inner bark of the banyan tree (see p. 18, *note*).

<sup>2</sup> *Mukaji*; wife, woman, concubine.

<sup>3</sup> The "fishes" are no doubt molluscs.

<sup>4</sup> The King at the time of Knivet's alleged visit was Alvaro II.

and doth keep in the field continually sixty thousand soldiers, that do war against the King of Vangala,<sup>1</sup> and the King of Angola ; this King is a Christian, and is brother-in-law of arms with the King of Spain. His servants of his house are most of them all Portugals, and he doth favour them very much.

The King is of a very liberal condition, and very favourable to all travellers, and doth delight very much to hear of foreign countries. He was in a manner amazed to hear how it was possible Her Majesty [Queen Elizabeth] had lived a maiden Queen so long, and always reigned in peace with her subjects. When I was brought before the King, and told him of my country, what plenty of things we had, if the Portugals had not liked of it, they would interrupt my speech, and the King would show himself very angry, and tell them that every man was best able to speak of his country, and that I had no reason but to tell him that which was true.

The King of Congo, when he goeth to the camp to see his army, rideth upon an elephant in great pomp and majesty ; on either side of the elephant he hath six slaves. Two of them were kings, that he himself had taken in the field ; all the rest were of noble birth ; some of them were brothers to the King of Ancica, and some of them were of the chiefest blood of the great King of Bengala. These noble slaves, at every command of the King of Congo, do fall flat on the ground on their breasts. When the King doth ride, as you have heard, they carry a canopy, as it were a cloth of state, over his head. His two secretaries, the one a nobleman of Spain, the other a Moor, do ride next after him. Before him goeth at the least five hundred archers which are his guard ; then there followeth a Moor, which

---

<sup>1</sup> The Vangala, spelt Bengala lower down, seems to represent the Imbangolas of Battell, more generally known as Jagas (see p. 84, *note*).

doth nothing but talk aloud in praise of the King, telling what a great warrior he hath been, and praising his wisdom for all things that he hath accomplished very honourably to his great fame of such as knew him.

When this King of Congo cometh to his host, all the soldiers, as he passeth, fall flat on their faces to the ground. He never cometh into his host after any battle, but he dubbeth at the least twenty Knights Portugals, and as many Moors, giving them very great living according to their callings, and the service that they have done. The brother of this King was in Spain at my coming from thence for ambassador from his brother.<sup>1</sup>

Here the Portugal Captain would have taken me perforce, to have been a common soldier, but the King commanded that they should let me go whither I would, and my determination at that time was to have gone for the country of Prester John [Abyssinia], for I had a great desire to see the River of Nilo and Jerusalem (for I accounted myself as a lost man, not caring into what country or kingdom I came) But it was not the will of God that I should at that time obtain my desire, for travelling through the kingdom of Congo, to have gone to the kingdom of Angila,<sup>2</sup> it was my fortune to meet a company of Portugal soldiers that went to a conquest that the King of Spain had newly taken, called Masangana ; which place is on the borders of Anguca. Here they made me serve like a drudge, for both day and night I carried some stone and lime to make a fort.

It lyeth right under the Line, and standeth in a bottom

---

<sup>1</sup> D. Alvaro sent several embassies to Europe, but never a brother of his. The most famous of these ambassadors was Duarte Lopez, who was at Rome in 1590.

<sup>2</sup> This certainly seems to be a misprint for Angola, for a party of Portuguese going to Masanganu would never stray so far north as Anzica. On the other hand, if Knivet was really on his way from the capital of Congo to Prester John's country, that is, Abyssinia, he must have gone in the direction of Anzica.

in the middle of four hills, and about are many fogges [bogs] but not one river.<sup>1</sup> It is the unfirmer country under the sun. Here the Portugals die like chickens. You shall see men in the morning very lusty, and within two hours dead. Others, that if they but wet their legs, presently they swell bigger than their middles ;<sup>2</sup> others break in the sides with a draught of water. O, if you did know the intolerable heat of the country, you would think yourself better a thousand times dead, than to live there a week. There you shall see poor soldiers lie in troops, gaping like camelians [camels?] for a puff of wind.

Here lived I three months, not as the Portugals did, taking of physick, and every week letting of blood and keeping close in their houses when they had any rain, observing hours, and times to go abroad morning and evening, and never to eat but at such and such times. I was glad when I had got anything at morning, noon, or night ; I thank God I did work all day from morning till night ; had it been rain or never so great heat, I had always my health as well as I have in England.

This country is very rich. The king had great store of gold<sup>3</sup> sent him from this place : the time that I was there, the King of Angica had a great city at Masangana ; which city Paulas Dias, Governor of Angola, took and situated there ; and finding hard by it great store of gold, fortified it with four forts, and walled a great circuit of ground round about it, and within that wall ; now the Portugals do build a city, and from this city every day they do war against

---

<sup>1</sup> Masanganu actually stands at the confluence of the Rivers Kwanza and Lukala !

<sup>2</sup> That is, they suffered from elephantiasis.

<sup>3</sup> Gold is often referred to in ancient documents, but its actual discovery (so far in unremunerative quantities) is quite a recent affair. Silver was supposed to exist in the hills of Kambambe above Masanganu, but has not as yet been actually found.

the King of Angica, and have burnt a great part of his kingdom.

The Angicas<sup>1</sup> are men of goodly stature ; they file their teeth before on their upper jaw, and on their under jaw, making a distance between them like the teeth of a dog ; they do eat man's flesh ; they are the stubbornest nation that lives under the sun, and the resolute in the field that ever man saw ; for they will rather kill themselves than yield to the Portugals. They inhabit right under the line, and of all kinds of Moors these are the blackest. They do live in the law of the Turks, and honour Mahomet. They keep many concubines, as the Turks do ; they wash themselves every morning upwards, falling flat on their faces towards the east. They wear their hair all made in plaits on their heads, as well men as women ; they have good store of wheat, and a kind of grain like vetches, of which they make bread ; they have great store of hens like partridges, and turkeys, and all their feathers curl on their backs. Their houses are like the other houses of the kingdoms aforenamed.

And thus I end, showing you as brief as I can, all the nations and kingdoms, that, with great danger of my life, I travelled through in twelve years of my best age, getting no more than my travel for my pain. From this kingdom, Angica, was I brought in irons again to my master, Salvador Corea de Sasa, to the City of San Sebastian in Brazil, as you have heard.

---

<sup>1</sup> These Angicas are certainly identical with the Anziques or Anzicanas of Duarte Lopez, according to whom they eat human flesh and circumcise. The Angolans have at no time been charged with cannibalism.





## APPENDIX II.

---

### A SKETCH OF THE HISTORY OF KONGO TO THE END OF THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY.

---

#### THE EARLY HISTORY OF KONGO.



If traditions may be accepted where written history fails us, the foundation of the Empire of Kongo lies back no further than the middle of the fifteenth century.

The founder of the dynasty and first King of Kongo—Ntotela ntinu nekongo—was Nimi a Lukeni, the son of Nimi a nzima and of Lukeni lua nsanzi, the daughter of Nsa ku ki-lau. His father appears to have been a mere village chief in Kurimba (Corimba),<sup>1</sup> a district of the kingdom of Kwangu. He had established

---

<sup>1</sup> Cavazzi, p. 262, calls Corimba a province of the kingdom of Coango (not Loango, as in Labat's version) on the Zaire. Cadornega (quoted by Paiva Manso, p. 285) tells us that our river Kwangu (Coango) is called after a lordship of that name, and was known to the people as the "great" Zaire (*nzari anene*). On the other hand, D. Pedro Affonso II, in a letter of 1624, speaks of Bangu, which had recently been raided by the Jaga, aided by the King of Loango (*sic*), as the "trunk and origin of Congo" (Paiva Manso, p. 177). But then this Pedro Affonso was not of the original dynasty of Nimi a Lukeni.

himself at a ferry on a great river (*nzari*), now known to us as the Kwangu, and levied a toll upon all travellers who crossed the stream. One day the young man's aunt came that way, and claimed exemption on the ground of being the old chief's sister. Her brother was absent, and not only was the claim denied, but young Nimi a Lukeni, notwithstanding that she was with child, caused her to be disembowelled. The younger members of his clan looked upon this act of brutality as one of bravery, and shielded him against his father's just wrath. He then placed himself at their head, assumed the title of *ntinu* (king), and started westward upon a career of conquest.

The country he was about to invade was inhabited by a people kindred to those of Angola and of the country to the north of the Zaire, split up into numerous small clans<sup>1</sup> ruled by independent kinglets. This, no doubt, would account for the rapidity and the extent of his conquests, which have been matched however, in our own days, by the Makololo.

Having defeated Mbumbulu mwana Mpangala of Mpemba-kasi, he founded his capital—Mbazi a nkanu—<sup>2</sup> upon a rock within that chief's territory. By degrees he extended his conquests southward to the Kwanza and even beyond, installed his uncle Nsa ku ki-lau as ruler of

---

<sup>1</sup> Collectively known as Ambundu, a term applied in Angola to black men generally, but in Kongo restricted to slaves, *i.e.*, the conquered. Bunda, in Kongo, has the meaning of "combine;" in Lunkumbi (Nogueira, *Bol.* 1885, p. 246) it means "family." Cannecatim, in the introduction to his Grammar, says that Kimbundu originated in Kasanj, and that the meaning of Abundo or Bundo is "conqueror." According to Carvalho (*Exp. Port. ao Muatianvua, Ethnographia*, p. 123) Kimbundu should be translated "invaders." The derivations of the word Kongo are quite as fanciful. Bentley seems to favour *nkongo*, a "hunter." Cordeiro da Matta translates Kongo by "tribute;" whilst Nogueira says that Kongo (*pl.* Makongo) denotes a "prisoner of war."

<sup>2</sup> "Palaver place" or "court," corrupted by European travellers into "Ambasse." Subsequently this town became known as S. Salvador.

the important province of Mbata, bestowed large territories upon others of his adherents, and even restored some of their father's territories to the children of the Mwana Mpangala. His "sons," attended by the great Nganga Ngoyo, he sent across the Zaire, and they became the founders of the "kingdoms" of Kakongo and Luangu; whilst a third son, by a slave woman, is supposed to be the ancestor of the "counts" of Sonyo or Soyo.<sup>1</sup> Anciently the King of Kakongo, before he assumed his kingship, was bound to marry a princess of the blood royal of Kongo, whilst he of Luangu married a princess of Kakongo; yet the ruler of Luangu was highest in rank, for he enjoyed the title of *nunu* ("aged person"), whilst his brother of Kakongo had to be contented with the inferior title of *nkaji* ("spouse"). The Kings were elected by the feudal princes, but their choice was limited to the sons of princesses, as in a great part of negro Africa.<sup>2</sup>

Of the early institutions of Kongo we know next to nothing, though we may presume that the law of succession was originally the same there as in the sister-states to the north, for the first Ntotela was succeeded by two nephews

---

<sup>1</sup> Both the Rev. W. H. Bentley and the Rev. Tho. Lewis believe Sonyo to be a corruption, at the mouths of natives, of San Antonio. This is quite possible, for when the old chief was baptised, in 1491, he received the name of Manuel (after the King), whilst his son was thenceforth known as Don Antonio. Images of Sa. Manuela and S. Antonio are still in existence, and are venerated by the natives as powerful fetishes (Bastian, *Loangoküste*, vol. i, p. 286). Soyo, according to the same author, is the name of a district near the Cabo do Padrão. Yet Garcia de Resende and Ruy de Pina, in their Chronicles of King João II, only know a Mani Sonho, whom João de Barros calls Mani Sono. No hint of the suggested corruption is given by any author.

<sup>2</sup> On these northern kingdoms, whose connexion with Kongo proper seems never to have been very close, see Proyart, *Histoire de Loango, Cacongo, et autres royaumes d'Afrique*, Paris, 1776; Degrandpré, *Voyage à la côte occidentale d'Afrique*, 1786-7, Paris, 1801; and of recent books, R. D. Dennett, *Seven Years among the Fjort*, London, 1887, Güssfeldt, Falkenstein, and Pechuel-Loesche, *Die Loango Expedition*, Berlin, 1879-83; and that treasury of ill-digested information, Bastian, *Die Deutsche Expedition an der Loangoküste*, Jena, 1874-5.

(Nanga kia ntinu and another, whose name has not reached us). But even thus early, and anterior to the introduction of Christianity, the old law of succession was broken through, for Nkuwu a ntinu, the fourth Ntotela, was a son of Ntinu Nimi a Lukeni, and was succeeded by a son of his own, Nzinga a Nkuwa, the first Christian Ntotela, better known in history as John I.

If Dapper may be believed, it was the custom to bury twelve virgins with the earlier kings—a distinction much sought after, as in other parts of Africa; but the people of Kongo have never been charged with cannibalism, nor its rulers with the bloody rites practised by the Jaga.

#### CÃO'S DISCOVERY OF THE KONGO, 1482.<sup>1</sup>

It was towards the end of 1482, that the natives at the mouth of the River Kongo for the first time saw rising above the horizon the white wings of a European vessel, ascending, as it were, from the Land of Spirits; and we can imagine their surprise when they for the first time beheld the bleached faces of its inmates. Yet they came on board, offering ivory in exchange for cloth. The interpreters from the Guinea coast who were with Cão naturally failed to make themselves understood, but they learnt from signs that far inland there dwelt a powerful king. Cão at once despatched some Christian negroes in search of this potentate. They were the bearers of suitable presents, and were instructed to assure the King of the friendly intentions of his visitors, whose only desire it was to trade with him.

Before continuing his voyage, Cão set up the first of the stone pillars, or *padroes*, which he had on board. He then sailed south along the coast, noting its prominent

---

<sup>1</sup> On the voyages of Cão and Dias, see my paper in the *Geographical Journal*, 1900, pp. 625-655.

features, but curiously missed the Kwanza or River of Angola, although its clayey waters discolour the sea for ten or fifteen miles. On a low foreland, Cabo do Lobo,<sup>1</sup> ten miles beyond the cliffs named by him Castello d'Alter Pedroso, he set up a second pillar, to mark the furthest point reached by him.

On again returning to the Kongo, he was annoyed to find that his messengers had not returned; and as he was naturally anxious to make known in Portugal his discovery of a magnificent river and a powerful kingdom, he left them behind him, and seized instead four unsuspecting visitors to his ship as "hostages;" giving their friends to understand that they should be restored to them after the lapse of fifteen months, when they would be exchanged for his own men. These latter appear to have been treated with distinction at first, but when the King heard of Cão's high-handed proceedings he refused to admit them any longer to his presence, and even threatened them with death, should his own people not be restored.

Among the hostages carried off by Cão there was a man of some distinction in his own country, Nsaku (Caçuto) by name, who picked up Portuguese quickly, and much pleased King John by the information he was able to give. He, as well as his companions, were much petted in Portugal, and, in defiance of all sumptuary laws, were dressed in fine cloths and silks.

Cão himself, soon after his arrival, in April, 1484, was appointed a cavalier in the Royal household, granted an annuity of 18,000 reals, and on the 14th of that month he was "separated from the common herd," and granted a coat-of-arms charged with the two pillars erected by him during this memorable voyage.

---

<sup>1</sup> Now Cape St. Mary, 13° 28' S.

## CÃO'S SECOND VOYAGE, 1485-6.

Cão's departure on a second voyage was much delayed, either because the King's Council were opposed to these adventures, which strained the resources of a small kingdom like Portugal, or—and this is more likely—because it was desired that a change in the Royal Arms, which was only made in June, 1485, should be recorded on the stone pillars which Cão was to take with him.

Great was the rejoicing when Cão's "fleet" appeared in the Kongo, and the hostages, loud in praise of the good treatment they had received, were once more among their friends. Cão at once forwarded rich presents to the King, with an invitation to throw aside all fetishes, and to embrace the only true and saving faith; promising that, on his return from a voyage to the south, he would personally visit the capital of his kingdom. This promise Cão was not permitted to fulfil, for having set up a pillar on Monte Negro ( $15^{\circ} 40' S.$ ) and another on Cape Cross ( $21^{\circ} 50'$ ),<sup>1</sup> he died a short distance beyond. Of the details of his death we know nothing.<sup>2</sup> It seems, however, that the loss of their commander induced a speedy return home: for Cão's vessels must have arrived in Portugal before August, 1487, as in that month Dias sailed on his famous voyage, taking with him the negroes whom Cão had kidnapped to the south of the Kongo, with a view to their learning Portuguese, and being employed as interpreters in future voyages.

Cão, therefore, never saw the King of Kongo; and there are good grounds for believing that Nsaku who was sent by

---

<sup>1</sup> The "Cabo do Padrão" of early maps.

<sup>2</sup> A legend on the chart of Henricus Martellus Germanus (1489), and the "Parecer" of the Spanish pilots of 1525, are our only authorities on this fact. Cão is not again mentioned in Portuguese documents (see my Essay, *Geographical Journal*, p. 637).

the King to Portugal to ask for priests, masons, carpenters agricultural labourers, and women to make bread, only reached Europe in one of Dias's vessels, in December, 1488. Nsaku, most certainly, was first introduced to King John at Beja, in January, 1489, when he and his companions were baptised, the King himself, the Queen, and gentlemen of title acting as sponsors.<sup>1</sup> He was sent back to the Kongo with Don Gonçalo de Sousa, in December, 1490, about two years after he had been baptised.<sup>1</sup>

#### THE EMBASSY OF 1490-1.<sup>2</sup>

Don João de Sousa, the ambassador, left Portugal on December 19th, 1490, with a fleet commanded by Gonçalo de Sousa, as captain-major. Among the pilots were Pero d'Alemquer and Pero Escovar, men famous in the maritime history of Portugal. Ten Franciscan Friars<sup>3</sup> went out with this fleet, and so did Nsaku, the ambassador of the King of Kongo. The plague was raging at Lisbon at the time, and before the vessels reached the Cape Verde Islands, this dreaded disease had carried off João de Sousa (the ambassador), the captain-major, and many others. Ruy de Sousa, a nephew of the captain-major, was then chosen to take the place of D. João de Sousa.

After a voyage of a hundred days the vessels reached the Kongo, and the Mwana of Sonyo and his son, who

<sup>1</sup> Nsaku was henceforth known as Don João da Silva. See Ruy de Pina, p. 149; Garcia de Resende, c. 69; and De Barros, *Asia*, t. I, Pt. I, pp. 177, 224.

<sup>2</sup> On this embassy, see De Barros, *Asia*, Dec. I, Liv. 3; Ruy de Pina's *Chronica*, pp. 174-179; Garcia de Resende's *Chronica*, cc. 155-161; D. Lopez, Bk. II, c. 2; Fr. Luis de Sousa, *Historia de S. Domingos*, Parte II, Livro vi, c. 8; and Parte IV, Livro iv, c. 16.

<sup>3</sup> Not Dominicans, as is usually stated. Garcia de Resende says Franciscans; and P. Fernando da Soledade, *Historia Serafica*, has proved the documents published by Paiva Manso in favour of the Dominican claim to be forgeries. Compare Eucher, *Le Congo*, Huy, 1894, p. 64.

had already been instructed in the Christian doctrine by a priest from S. Thomé, were baptised on Easter Sunday, April 3rd, 1491, and were thenceforth known as Don Manuel and Don Antonio da Silva; for it was the practice of the Portuguese, from the very beginning, to bestow Portuguese names and titles upon the negroes who submitted to the sacrament of baptism.

This ceremony performed, Ruy de Sousa started for the King's capital,<sup>1</sup> which he reached on April 29th. The King received him seated on a platform, in a chair inlaid with ivory. He wore a loin-cloth, presented to him by Cão, copper bracelets, and a cap of palm-cloth. A zebra tail depended from his left shoulder—a badge of royalty.<sup>2</sup>

The King was about to join his son Mbemba a Nzinga, Duke of Nsundi, who had taken the field against the Bateke;<sup>3</sup> but before doing so he was anxious to be baptised. The foundations of a church having been laid on Rood Day, May 3rd,<sup>4</sup> the King and his Queen were baptised at once by Frei João de Santa Maria, and were named Don João and Donna Leonor, after the King and Queen of Portugal.

The King, marching for the first time under the banner of the Cross, and supported by the firearms of his

<sup>1</sup> Mbaji a ekongo, the palaver-place of Kongo. See Index sub *San Salvador*.

<sup>2</sup> The insignia of royalty of the Kings of Kongo are the chair, a bâton, a bow and arrow, and the cap.

<sup>3</sup> De Barros calls them Mundequetes, but D. Lopez says they should be called Anziquetes. They are the Anzicanas of later writers, about whose identity with the Bateke there can be no doubt. Their king bore the title of Makoko (Nkaka).

Hence this, the oldest church of S. Salvador, became known as *Egreja da Vera Cruz*. In it the Christian kings of Kongo were formerly buried; but when the Devil took up its roof and carried the body of the unbelieving D. Francisco to hell, their coffins were removed to other churches (see post, p. 121). Other churches, subsequently built, are S. Salvador, N. S. do Socorro, S. Jago, S. Miguel, dos Santos, de Misericórdia, S. Sebastian.

Portuguese allies, came back a victor to his capital. His eldest son and many nobles were then baptised.

When Ruy de Sousa departed, he left behind him Frei Antonio<sup>1</sup> with other priests, and gave instructions for an exploration of the Kongo river above the cataracts, which do not appear to have been acted upon. He also founded a factory near the mouth of the Kongo, where the enterprising people of S. Thomé had already established commercial relations, although formal permission to do so was only granted them by King Manuel on March 26th, 1500. Dom Pedro, a cousin of the King of Kongo, accompanied him, with nine attendants, who, having been taught to read and write, returned to their native country with D. João Soares, early in 1494.<sup>2</sup>

The missionaries lost no time in preaching the doctrines of their Church; but whilst Don Affonso proved an ardent Christian, who recklessly destroyed all fetishes discovered in his province of Nsundi, the King himself soon grew lukewarm, owing to the priests' interference with polygamy and other valued social institutions. In the country at large, the heathen still held their ground.

#### D. AFFONSO I, 1509-1540.<sup>3</sup>

And thus it happened that when João I died in 1509, the chiefs favoured his second son, *Mpanzu a nzinga*,<sup>4</sup> a heathen, whilst the dowager queen and the Count of Sonyo

<sup>1</sup> Frei João had died soon after reaching the capital.

<sup>2</sup> Paiva Manso, pp. 2-4.

<sup>3</sup> Paiva Manso, pp. 6-76, publishes quite a series of letters and documents bearing upon the reign of Affonso, and dated between 1512, and December 15th, 1540. Cavazzi makes him die in 1525, but in letters written between February 15th, 1539, and December 4th, 1540, the King refers to D. Manuel, who was about to go to Rome, as his "brother." If the letters had been written by his successor Don Pedro II Affonso, Don Manuel would have been an uncle, and not a brother.

<sup>4</sup> Cavazzi calls him *Mpanzu a kitima*; D. Lopez invariably *Mpangu*.

took the part of the elder brother. Don Affonso, immediately on hearing of his father's illness, hurried up to the capital, accompanied by only thirty-six Christians. He found that his father had died. His brother approached with a mighty army, but five flaming swords seen in the heavens on the eve of battle gave courage to his small following, whilst a white cross and the appearance of St. James at the head of the celestial host struck terror into the hearts of the assailants. They fled in a panic.<sup>1</sup> Mpanzu himself was taken, wounded, and decapitated.

Order having been restored throughout the country, King Affonso availed himself of the presence of Gonçalo Rodriguez Ribeiro, who had come from Portugal with a number of priests, and was about to return to that country, to send an embassy to Pope Julius II and King Manuel.<sup>2</sup> The head of this mission was Don Pedro (de Castro?), a cousin of the King (who was accompanied by his wife), and with him went D. Manuel, a brother of the King, and D. Henrique, a son. The presents conveyed to Portugal included seven hundred copper bracelets, elephant tusks, slaves, parrots, civet cats and other animals, and native cloth. D. Henrique remained behind at Rome, where he was ordained and created Bishop of Utica in 1518.<sup>3</sup>

The mission sent by King Manuel in return was far-reaching in its effects upon the political development of

---

<sup>1</sup> King Affonso, whose account of this battle may be read in Paiva Manso, p. 8, does not mention the flaming swords, but there can be no doubt that they were seen, for they were introduced in the coat-of-arms subsequently granted to the King. D. Lopez (p. 82) substitutes the Virgin for the white cross seen during the battle. Cavazzi (p. 273), and others, down to Father Eucher (*Le Congo*, Huy, 1894, p. 36), unhesitatingly accept this miracle. The Rev. W. H. Bentley most irreverently suggests a solar halo; but such a phenomenon might account for flaming swords, but not for the Virgin and St. James.

<sup>2</sup> On this embassy, see the documents printed by Paiva Manso, and also Damian de Goes, *Chron. do Rei D. Emanuel*, vol. iii, c. 37.

<sup>3</sup> *Alguns Documentos*, p. 419.

Kongo.<sup>1</sup> Of its magnitude we may judge when we learn that it embarked in five vessels. Its leader, Simão da Silva, dying on the road to S. Salvador, his place was taken by Alvaro Lopes, the Royal factor. In his company were priests, experienced soldiers, masons and carpenters to build churches and a royal palace, and a lawyer (*letrado*) to explain the law books which figured among the royal gifts, besides horses, mules, cloth, banners, church furniture and images. The ambassador was instructed to explain the management of the royal household in Portugal, and King Affonso quickly learnt the lessons he received, and at once introduced the Portuguese titles of Duke, Marquis, and Count. The ambassador likewise had with him an elaborate coat-of-arms for the King,<sup>2</sup> and twenty less ambitious heraldic designs for his principal noblemen; and the monarch himself adopted a title closely imitated from that of his "brother" of Portugal.<sup>3</sup> The ambassador was likewise instructed to make inquiries about the origin of the Kongo in a lake, and to bring home cargoes of slaves, copper and ivory.

---

<sup>1</sup> On this mission, see *Alguns documentos*, pp. 277-289, for the instructions given to Simão da Silva; Paiva Manso, pp. 5-12, or King Manuel's letter, and D. Affonso's manifesto; and also Damian de Goes, *Chronica*, vol. iii, cc. 38-39.

<sup>2</sup> This coat-of-arms is fully described by King Affonso himself (Paiva Manso, p. 11), as follows:—The field *gules*, and the chief of the coat *azure*, quartered by a cross-fleury *argent*. Each quarter of the chief charged with two shells, *or*, on a foot *argent*, bearing a shield *azure*, charged with the five plates of Portugal. The field *gules* is charged with five arms holding swords, *or*. An open helmet, *or*, with a royal crown surmounts the coat. Crest: the five swords. Supporters: two idols, decapitated, with their heads at their feet. The coats figured on Pigafetta's map and by Cavazzi, p. 274, are much less elaborate, but are both charged with five swords. The arrow in the latter is one of the royal insignia.

<sup>3</sup> In the formal documents addressed to his "brother" of Portugal, he claims to be "By the Grace of God, King of Kongo, Ibumgu, Kakongo, Ngoyo this side and beyond Zari, lord of the Ambundus, of Ngola, Aquisyma (Ptolemy's Agisymba), Muswalu, Matamba, Muyilu and Musuku, and of the Anzicas (Bateke), and the Conquest of Mpanzu-alumbu," &c.

The King was delighted with all these gifts, not being aware that by accepting them he virtually acknowledged himself to be a vassal of the King of Portugal; and he published a long manifesto to his people, in which he dwelt upon his past career, the blessings of the Christian faith, and the honours now done him. He actually read the six bulky folios, but he told Ruy d'Aguiar (in 1516) that if complicated laws like these were to be introduced in his dominions, not a day would pass without a legal offence of some kind being committed.<sup>1</sup>

The intercourse between Kongo and Lisbon must have been very active in those days. We learn, for instance, that in 1526 the King asked for physicians and apothecaries, and in 1530 he forwarded to his "brother" Manuel two silver bracelets, which he had received from Matamba. Many young Kongoese were sent to Portugal to be educated; but, to judge from a letter written by the King in 1517, the results were not always very gratifying.<sup>2</sup> Nay, he accuses Antonio Viera, to whom he entrusted twenty young relations to be taken to Portugal, of having parted with several among them to Mpanzu-alumbu, his enemy, and of having left others behind him at S. Thomé.<sup>3</sup> A second embassy left Kongo in 1540, to do homage to Pope Paul III. It was headed by D. Manuel, a brother of the King, who had been a member of D. Pedro's mission. King Affonso expected the King of Portugal to pay 3,000 cruzados towards the expenses of this mission, in consideration of the large profits which he derived from the trade with Kongo.<sup>4</sup>

As a member of the Church militant, King Affonso deserved well of the priesthood. He ruthlessly ordered all

---

<sup>1</sup> D. de Goes, *Chronica*, vol. iv, c. 3.

<sup>2</sup> Paiva Manso, pp. 15, 17.

Paiva Manso, p. 71. Concerning Mpanzu-alumbu, see below.

On this mission, see Paiva Manso, pp. 69-74.

fetishes to be destroyed throughout his dominions, but supplied their place with images of saints, crosses, agni dei, and other ecclesiastical paraphernalia, which he held to be more effectual. The clergy were numerous in his day, and in addition to secular priests included Franciscans, Dominicans and Austin Friars. They were wealthy, too, for lands and slaves had been given them, and Christian churches arose even in remote parts of the country. A Franciscan friar, Antonio de Dénis (known in the world as D. Diogo de Vilhegas) had been appointed Bishop of S. Thomé and Kongo,<sup>1</sup> and took possession of his see in 1534, on which occasion exceptional honours were shown him. He was a man of energy and much sincerity, but, unhappily for his Church, survived only a few years. On his death-bed he desired that D. Henrique, the King's son, whom he himself had ordained a priest, when in Rome, and whom the Pope (as already mentioned) had created Bishop of Utica in 1518, should succeed him in the episcopal chair. The Pope, however, before he would consent to the appointment of a native, desired personally to inquire into the matter. D. Henrique went to Rome, but died on the voyage home, in 1539 or earlier.

King Affonso deserved his reputation as a zealous Christian, and had certainly proved himself a good friend to the regular and secular clergy who undertook to convert his people. Yet, as early as 1515, he had occasion to call upon the King of Portugal to aid him in suppressing the irregularities of these "unworthy preachers of the Holy Catholic Faith," whose inordinate desire of power and covetousness brought scandal upon the Church, and promised little for the future.<sup>2</sup> Towards the close of his

---

<sup>1</sup> On the bishops of Kongo, see *Add. MS.* 15183 (British Museum), and R. J. da Costa Mattos, *Corographia Historica das Ilhas S. Thomé, etc.* Oporto, 1842.

<sup>2</sup> Paiva Manso, n. 31.

reign, in 1540, one of these priests, Frei Alvaro, actually attempted to assassinate the King, in church, and after Mass!<sup>1</sup>

The Portuguese living at the time in Kongo were placed under a royal factor and a Corregedor (magistrate), and enjoyed ex-territorial jurisdiction. They had a factory at Mpinda, at the mouth of the Kongo, where the King of Portugal levied heavy duties. The commercial relations do not appear to have been at all times of the most friendly nature. In 1514 the King complained that Fernão de Mello, the Governor of S. Thomé, traded with the Mpangu-lungu<sup>2</sup> who were his enemies; and in 1526 he remonstrated against the conduct of the Portuguese slave-merchants. Indeed, so preposterous were the claims put forward by the Portuguese officials, that King Affonso, in 1517, humbly begged to be allowed to employ a ship of his own when trading; or, at least to be exempted from paying the heavy duties exacted by a foreign, albeit suzerain, power upon the outlanders trading in his kingdom. These ill-advised exactions explain, too, why trade gradually deserted the Kongo, and sought more favourable openings to the south, at Luandu, as is shown by an inquiry held in 1548.<sup>3</sup>

The Portuguese made an effort to exploit the mineral wealth of the country. Ruy Mendes, the "factor of the copper mines," is stated to have discovered lead; and Gimdarlach (Durlacher?), a German "fundidor," in 1593 discovered copper, lead, and silver. The King, however, would not allow the mines to be worked, for he feared that such a concession might cost him his kingdom.

---

<sup>1</sup> For King Affonso's account of this event, as also for an account of a second conspiracy, apparently planned by Fernão Rodrigues Bulhão, see Paiva Manso, pp. 76-80.

For Mpangu-lungu, see Index and Glossary.

<sup>3</sup> The minutes of this inquiry are printed by Paiva Manso, p. 84.

Proposals for the exploration of the interior were made, but bore no fruit. Gregorio de Quadra, who had spent several years as a prisoner among the Arabs, was sent to Kongo in 1520, with instructions to make his way thence to the country of Prester John. The King refused his consent; Quadra returned to Portugal, and died a monk.<sup>1</sup> Balthasar de Castro, the companion of Manuel Pacheco in Angola, desired to explore the upper Kongo in 1526; but neither his scheme nor that of Manuel Pacheco himself, who was to have built two brigantines, seems to have been carried out.

Of the domestic wars carried on by the King, we know next to nothing. Angola and Matamba seem to have been virtually independent in his day, though the island of Luandu, with its valuable cowry-fishery, was held by him and his successors until 1649. He conquered, however, Mpanzu-alumbu (Mpangu-lunga?)<sup>2</sup> on the lower Kongo, a district inhabited by a predatory tribe.<sup>3</sup> That his successes in these "wars" were due to his Portuguese mercenaries and their fire-locks is a matter of course.

Don Affonso died in 1540, or soon afterwards, leaving behind him a son, D. Pedro, who succeeded him, and three daughters.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> D. de Goes, *Chron. de Rei D. Em.*, iv, c. 54.

<sup>2</sup> See Index, *sub* Mpanzu-alumbu *and* Mpangu-lunga.

<sup>3</sup> See Paiva Manso, pp. 60, 69. Later sovereigns claimed also to be kings of the Matumbulas, *i.e.*, the spirits of their dead ancestors buried at S. Salvador, whom they pretended to be able to consult, and who were dreaded as fetishes.

<sup>4</sup> According to a Jesuit canon, who wrote in 1624 (Paiva Manso, p. 174), these daughters were: (1) Nzinga a mbembe, the mother of D. Diego, Affonso II, and Bernardo; (2) D. Isabel Lukeni lua mbemba, the mother of Alvaro I, Alvaro II, Alvaro III, and Bernardo II; (3) D. Anna Tumba a mbemba, the mother of D. Affonso Mbikia ntumba, Duke of Nsundi, whose son was Pedro II. This genealogy does not seem to be quite trustworthy.

## D. PEDRO AND HIS SUCCESSORS, 1540-1561.

PEDRO I had been educated in Portugal, and is described by Cavazzi as a wise prince who had inherited all the virtues of his father, and was a great friend of the missionaries. His reign was apparently a short one,<sup>1</sup> and he was succeeded by a cousin, D. FRANCISCO, who only reigned two or three years, and left the kingdom to a son,<sup>2</sup> D. DIOGO.<sup>3</sup> Duarte Lopez describes this prince as a man of noble mind, witty, intelligent, prudent in council, an upholder of the missionaries, and at the same time a great warrior who, in the course of a few years, conquered many of the neighbouring countries. His "wars" certainly did not enlarge the borders of his kingdom, and the only war we know of ended in disaster. The Portuguese at S. Salvador, jealous of the growing commercial importance of Luandu, had persuaded the King to send an army against Ngola Mbandi, they themselves furnishing an auxiliary corps. The Kongoese, in spite of this, were defeated on the river Dande (about 1556); and Ngola not only appealed to Portugal for protection, but also allied himself with the Jagas, with whose aid he invaded Kongo (in 1558).

Nor were the relations of D. Diogo with the missionaries quite as friendly as Lopez would lead us to believe. As early as 1549, D. Diogo complained of the overbearing

<sup>1</sup> Several authors say that he came to the throne in 1525 or 1532, but the letters written by D. Affonso, and published by Paiva Manso, conclusively show that this is impossible (see *supra*).

<sup>2</sup> His native name proves him to have been a *son* of D. Francisco. He is, however, generally described as a cousin or grandson of D. Pedro.

<sup>3</sup> The earliest published letter of D. Diogo is dated April 25th, 1547. His death is mentioned in a letter dated November 4th, 1561 (Paiva Manso, pp. 81, 113). He may, however, have died a considerable time before that date. Lopez de Lima (*An. Mar.* 1845, p. 101) makes him die in 1552, after a reign of nine years.

conduct of the Jesuits who had arrived in that year in the company of D. João Baptista, the Bishop of S. Thomé;<sup>1</sup> the priests, on their side, accused the King of having shown little respect to the bishop, and of having ordered them to be pulled out of their pulpits, when they denounced his vices and those of his people.<sup>2</sup> The Jesuits may have been over-zealous in the performance of what they conceived to be their duty, and too prone to meddle in politics; but they seem to have led clean lives, which cannot be said of all of their clerical brethren. When D. Gaspar Cão,<sup>3</sup> the Bishop of S. Thomé and Kongo, a man who took the duties of his office seriously, visited S. Salvador, these priests openly defied his authority. But after several of the recalcitrant priests had been deported to Portugal, whilst others had left voluntarily with such wealth as they had been able to amass, discipline was re-established.<sup>4</sup>

#### A REIGN OF ANARCHY, 1561-1568.

When Diogo died, about 1561, the Portuguese residents endeavoured to secure the throne for one of their own creatures, and caused the duly elected favourite of the people to be assassinated. As a result, the people of S. Salvador rose upon the Portuguese, many of whom were killed, not even priests being spared. The accounts<sup>5</sup> of

---

<sup>1</sup> This bishop was a Dominican. He entered upon his charge in 1549. The four Jesuits going in his company were Christovão Ribeira, Jacome Dias, Jorge Vaz, and Diogo de Soveral.

<sup>2</sup> See letters in Paiva Manso, pp. 91-93.

<sup>3</sup> He was appointed bishop in 1554, and died at S. Thomé in 1574.

<sup>4</sup> For the minutes of an inquiry into a conspiracy planned by one D. Pedro ka nguanu of Mbemba, in 1550, see Paiva Manso, pp. 101, 110.

<sup>5</sup> Compare D. Lopez, p. 93; Cavazzi, p. 276; a list of kings given by the Duke of Mbamba to the bishop D. Manuel Baptista in 1617 (Paiva Manso, p. 166), the statement of a Jesuit canon of S. Salvador made in 1621 (*ibid.*, p. 174), and Christovão Dorte de Sousa's letter to

this period of disorder are too confused to enable us to be certain even of the names of the reigning kings. D. AFFONSO II, a son (probably illegitimate) of D. Diogo, ascended the throne of his father, but was murdered by his brother, D. BERNARDO, who appears to have been the candidate favoured by the Portuguese. He at once sent Father Estevão de Laguos on an embassy to Queen Catherine of Portugal, who, in a letter dated June 26th, 1562,<sup>1</sup> congratulated him upon his accession, whilst gently chiding him for the murder of his brother. This King was evidently friendly disposed towards the Portuguese; and Antonio Vieira, a negro, who had visited Portugal as member of an embassy, when writing to Queen Catherine in April 1566,<sup>2</sup> suggested that he might be induced to allow the mines of copper and tin to be worked. D. Bernardo is stated by the Duke of Mbamba to have fallen in a war with the Anzicas, "in defence of Christianity and the Fatherland." He was succeeded by D. HENRIQUE, a brother of D. Diogo, who, after a short and troubled reign, died of a wound received in a battle, either against some revolted vassals,<sup>3</sup> or fighting the Anzicanas.<sup>4</sup> He was the last king of the original dynasty, for Alvaro I, his successor, was only a step-son.

#### D. ALVARO I AND THE AYAKA, 1568-1574.<sup>5</sup>

D. Alvaro, immediately on his accession, sent an embassy to Portugal, to apologise for the massacre of

---

Queen Catherine of Portugal, dated (Luandu) November 4th, 1561 (*ibid.*, p. 113); also a letter by P. Rodrigues de Pias, 1565 (Eucher, *Le Congo*, p. 70).

<sup>1</sup> Printed by Paiva Manso, p. 114.

<sup>2</sup> His letter is printed by Paiva Manso, p. 116. It was during the reign of this king, in 1563, that a "missionary" is stated to have crossed Africa (Garcia d'Orta, *Coloquios dos simples e drogas*. Goa, 1567).

<sup>3</sup> Lopez de Lima, *An. Mar.*, 1845, p. 101.

<sup>4</sup> Duarte Lopez, p. 93.

<sup>5</sup> Alvaro, according to Cavazzi, came to the throne in 1542 and died in 1587, whilst Lopez de Lima, quite arbitrarily, puts off his

many Portuguese during the reigns of his predecessors, which he excused on the ground of the vices and abuses of the clergy. These excuses were apparently accepted in Portugal, fortunately for D. Alvaro, for the very next year the dreaded Ayaka<sup>1</sup> invaded his kingdom by way of Mbata; and, being worsted, the King fled with his adherents to the Hippopotamus Island,<sup>2</sup> on the lower Kongo, where they suffered many hardships, and whence he appealed piteously to the Portuguese for help. This help was not denied him. Francisco de Gouvea, corregedor of S. Thomé, in 1570, hastened to his aid with six hundred Portuguese, expelled the Ayaka, reinstated the King in his capital, and built a wall round S. Salvador for greater security. The King fully recognised the value of the service that had been rendered him, for Paulo Dias de Novaes told Garcia Mendes<sup>3</sup> that he acknowledged himself a vassal of Portugal;<sup>4</sup> and as neither gold or silver had been discovered in his country, he agreed to pay a tribute in *njimbo*s, which he actually did for a few years.

No sooner was Alvaro once more seated securely upon his throne than he sent the Count of Sonyo against Ngola (1572). Several encounters took place in Musulu and Mbuila (Ambuila); but in the end Ngola was allowed to retain his father's conquests, the river Dande being fixed upon as the boundary between the two kingdoms. Kongo,

accession to 1552. These figures are absolutely incorrect, as may be seen from the date of the letter of Queen Catherine to D. Bernardo. D. Alvaro cannot possibly have ascended the throne anterior to 1568.

<sup>1</sup> The Ayaka still inhabit a large stretch of country along the Kwangu, and are generally considered to be identical with the Jagas (Cavazzi speaks of them as Jaga, or Aiaka), an opinion which I do not share. See *post*, p. 149.

<sup>2</sup> I imagine the account given by Duarte Lopez, p. 96, is much exaggerated.

<sup>3</sup> Garcia Mendes, p. 9.

<sup>4</sup> As a proof of vassalage we may mention that the King was denied the title of *Alteza* (Highness), which would have implied sovereign rights, and was only allowed that of *Senhoria* (lordship).

however, retained possession of the valuable island of Luandu.

Among other events of this reign we should mention a second visit of D. Gaspar Cão, the bishop, shortly before his death (in 1574); and the scandal caused by the burial of a notorious infidel, D. Francisco Mbula matadi, in the church of S. Cruz, the roof of which was taken off by night, and the body carried away by the Devil!<sup>1</sup>

D. Alvaro only enjoyed his prosperity for a short time, for when Paulo Dias landed at Luandu, in 1575, he was already dead.<sup>2</sup>

#### D. ALVARO II, 1574-1614.

Alvaro II, a son of Alvaro I, is described by Bishop D. Manuel Baptista as a "zealous Christian, father and friend of all;"<sup>3</sup> but it is evident that he looked not with over-much favour upon the Portuguese residents in his country, and he is charged, in a memoir addressed by Domingos d'Abreu Brito to King Philip I, in 1592, with having plotted with the kings of Ndongo and Matamba against the Portuguese. An army which he sent ostensibly to the aid of the Portuguese in 1583 retired, apparently without striking a blow, whilst he furnished a contingent to the forces of Matamba which invaded Angola in 1590. He hindered, by specious excuses, the completion of a stone fort at Mpinda, which had been commenced in 1609 by Antonio Gonçalves Pitta, until all the workmen had died. He favoured Dutch traders to the great detriment of the

---

<sup>1</sup> Duarte Lopez, p. 9. Originally, the Christian kings of Kongo were buried in this church, but upon this desecration their bodies were removed to other churches.

<sup>2</sup> Our information concerning the reign of this king is exceedingly scanty. We think we have shown satisfactorily that he cannot have reigned from 1542 to 1587, but are unable to vouch either for the date of the invasion of his country by the Ayaka, or for that of his death.

<sup>3</sup> In a letter of September 15th, 1617 (Paiva Manso, p. 166).

Portuguese; and we know from Samuel Braun,<sup>1</sup> that an effort was made in 1612 to expel the Dutch from the Kongo, and that it would have been successful, had not the natives sided with these heretical enemies, whose dealings appeared to them to be more generous. Moreover, the King, although he had promised Sebastian da Costa (1580) that he would allow the supposed silver mines to be sought for, eventually refused his consent.<sup>2</sup>

Turning to Church affairs, we hear of the usual applications for missionaries, and of several episcopal visitations by D. F. Antonio de Goiva (1578), D. Manuel de Ulhoa, D. Miguel Baptista Rangel, and D. Manuel Baptista. D. Manuel de Ulhoa presided over a synod at S. Salvador, in 1585, and laid down statutes for the government of his see. D. Miguel Baptista Rangel was the first Bishop of Kongo, which had been separated from the diocese of S. Thomé by a Bull of May 20th, 1596. His successor, D. Manuel Baptista, resided for several years in Kongo, where he died in 1621; and a letter addressed to King Philip II, in 1612,<sup>3</sup> speaks of the results of over a century of missionary effort as insignificant, and describes the people as incurable barbarians, full of vice.

#### D. PEDRO II AFFONSO, 1622-1624.

BERNARDO II, a son of Alvaro II, only reigned for a few months, for he was killed by his brother, ALVARO III, and a complaint addressed to him by the Governor of

---

<sup>1</sup> Samuel Braun, who visited the Kongo in 1612, says that the fort built near the Padrão, and another on an uninhabited island, had been razed.

<sup>2</sup> Sebastian da Costa had been sent to Kongo to announce the accession of Philip I, in 1580. He was given a letter by D. Alvaro, but died on the voyage, and Duarte Lopez, upon whose writings and discourses Pigafetta based his work on the Kongo (see p. 19), was appointed in his stead. For an account of this embassy, see Duarte Lopez, pp. 101-108.

<sup>3</sup> Printed by Paiva Manso, p. 158.

Angola about the admission of heretical Dutchmen to trade in Sonyo was answered by his successor. This Alvaro III, the fratricide, is nevertheless described by Cavazzi as having been "wise, modest, courageous, and above all a zealous Christian." It was during his reign, in 1619, that the Jesuits founded a college at S. Salvador. A proposed mission of Italian Capuchins came to nothing, for King Philip of Spain, by royal letters of September 22nd, 1620, forbade foreign missionaries to enter Portuguese colonies without first obtaining a royal license.<sup>1</sup> Alvaro III died on May 26th, 1622, and was succeeded by D. PEDRO II AFFONSO, whom Cavazzi describes as a son of Alvaro III; whilst a Jesuit canon of S. Salvador,<sup>2</sup> who wrote an interesting life of this prince in 1624, makes him out to have been a son of Mbiki antumba, Duke of Nsundi, and a descendant, in the female line, of the first King of Kongo. If this biographer can be trusted, he was a man of much promise, and of a mild, forgiving temper; for although the Duke of Mbamba had sought his life, he conferred upon him the marquisate of Wembo. His reign was a short and troubled one. In August, 1622, the Duke of Mbata had been killed by rebels, and his vassal, the King of Kwangu (Ocango), had suffered a defeat. João Correa de Souza, the Governor of Angola, summoned him to surrender Luandu Island and all the copper mines; and this being refused, the Portuguese under Luiz Gomez, aided by the Jagas, crossed the Dande at Ikau and invaded Nambu a ngongo, and (in December) also Mbumbi, where the Duke of Mpemba and many others were killed and eaten by the Jagas, in spite of their being Christians. The people of the invaded districts revenged themselves by killing the Portuguese

---

<sup>1</sup> This order was, as a matter of course, issued at the instance of the Council of Regency at Lisbon.

<sup>2</sup> Paiva Manso, pp. 174-177.

living in their midst, the King vainly endeavouring to protect them. These invaders had scarcely been driven off, when Captain Silvestre Soares, with a body of Jagas, entered Ngombe and Kabanda. But that which gave most pain to the King was the destruction of the kingdom of Bangu, and the murder of its King by the Jagas, with the aid of the King of "Loango," which was the "trunk and origin of the kingdom of Kongo."<sup>1</sup> In the midst of these afflictions, the King was rejoiced to learn the arrival of D. Simão Mascarenhas at Luandu; but he met with an accident, and died on April 13th, 1624, after a short reign of less than two years, and mourned by six sons and two daughters.<sup>2</sup>

#### D. PEDRO'S SUCCESSORS, 1624-1641.

GARCIA, the eldest son of D. Pedro, when elected was only twenty years of age. He was succeeded by D. AMBROSIO, in October, 1626, whose reign, up till March, 1631, was one continuous warfare with his powerful vassals. The country became unsafe, and the Portuguese retired for a time from S. Salvador. ALVARO IV, a son of Alvaro III, made himself master of the kingdom, and retained possession until his death, February 25th, 1636. He was succeeded by his son, ALVARO V, who, doubting

---

<sup>1</sup> We confess that this is unintelligible to us. Perhaps we ought to read Coango (Kwangu), instead of Loango. There is, of course, the "kingdom" of Kwangu beyond the Kwangu river, within which lies the district of Kurimba, the birthplace of the first King of Kongo (see p. 102). Bangu is evidently the district on the river Mbengu. It may have been the home of the King's ancestors; and the Kwangu here referred to may be a neighbouring district of that name (see Index).

<sup>2</sup> It was during the reign of this King that five Portuguese merchants crossed the Kwangu, and fell into the hands of the Makoko, who made slaves of them. But upon this, his kingdom was visited by plague and famine, and his armies were beaten; and these "miracles" only ceased when, acting on the advice of his diviners, he had sent back his prisoners to S. Salvador, richly compensated for their sufferings (Cavazzi, p. 281).

the loyalty of his half-brothers, the Duke of Mbamba and the Marquis of Kiowa, made war upon them, was defeated and taken prisoner, but liberated. Unmindful of the generosity of his opponents, he once more tried the fortune of battle, was taken again, and executed (in August, 1636). The Duke of Mbamba was unanimously elected in his place, and reigned, as ALVARO VI, until his death on February 22nd, 1641. He waged two unsuccessful wars against the Count of Sonyo, in 1636 and again in 1637; and was obliged to surrender the district of Makuta (Mocata) to his adversary.

GARCIA II AFFONSO, O KIMBAKU, 1641-1663,<sup>1</sup>

the half-brother and old companion in arms of Alvaro VI, took possession of the throne at a critical time; for in August of the year of his accession, the Dutch captured Luandu, and the fortunes of the Portuguese were at the lowest ebb. The Dutch lost no time in sending an embassy to Kongo (1642),<sup>2</sup> and these new allies lent him their assistance in a small war against Mwana Nsala, who had defied the royal authority.<sup>3</sup> But they declined to give effective help against a more powerful vassal, the Count of Sonyo, as it might have interfered with their trade interests on the Lower Kongo.<sup>4</sup> The King's army was defeated twice on April 29th, 1645, when Affonso, the King's son, was taken prisoner, and again in July 1648, in the forest of Mfinda angulu. Meanwhile the Dutch had broken the *padrão* set

---

<sup>1</sup> For documents referring to the reign of this king, see Paiva Manso, pp. 187-237.

<sup>2</sup> Whether the Dutch ambassadors prostrated themselves when presented to the king, as shown on one of Dapper's plates, may be doubted.

<sup>3</sup> The auxiliary force of thirty Dutchmen was commanded by Captain Tihman (Dapper, p. 541).

<sup>4</sup> They sent, indeed, a vessel to remonstrate, but the Duke defied them to land, and they retired humbly.

up by Cão at the mouth of the Kongo; they had re-named S. Antonio's Bay after ~~the~~ their river Pampus at Amsterdam; had gone to S. Salvador; and at least one of them, Johan Herder,<sup>1</sup> had travelled far inland, and visited the Mwana Nkundi on the Kwangu. The heretical tracts and books which they liberally distributed were in due course burnt by the Capuchin friars.

Portugal was, moreover, irritated by the admission of Italian and Castilian Capuchins, a batch of whom, headed by P. Bonaventura of Alessano,<sup>2</sup> arrived at S. Salvador, on September 2nd, 1645, without having previously called at Lisbon. This first mission was followed by three others in 1648, 1651 and 1654,<sup>3</sup> and mission stations were established in Mbata, in Nkusu, Nsundi, Mpemba, Mbwela, and Wembo (Ovando).<sup>4</sup> Among the more noteworthy missionary travels of the time was that of P. Girolamo of Montesarchio, who visited Konko a bele (Concobello), in 1652.<sup>5</sup>

Even greater offence was given to Portugal by a mission which the King despatched to Rome in 1646, and which arrived there, by way of Holland, in May, 1648. P. Angelo de Valenza, the head of this mission, had been instructed to beg the Pope to appoint three bishops for

<sup>1</sup> Dapper, p. 572. Perhaps the itinerary on one of Dapper's maps from Mpinda, by way of Mbamba, S. Salvador, Mbata and Nsundi, is supplied by Herder. The names *conso*, *canda*, *quing* and *ensor* of the map are corruptions of the names of the four week-days (*konso*, *nkanda*, *nkenga* and *nsona*), and designate places where markets are held on those days.

<sup>2</sup> He died at S. Salvador in 1651, when about to start for Abyssinia, and was succeeded by P. Giovanni Francisco of Valenza, as Prefect. For a full account of the missions of 1645 and 1648, see Pellicer de Tovar, *Mission Evangelica al Reyno de Congo*, Madrid, 1649; and P. Francisco Fragio, *Breve Relazione*, Rome, 1648.

<sup>3</sup> Giovanni Antonio de Cavazzi, of Montecuccolo, was a member of this mission.

<sup>4</sup> This district was invaded by Queen Nzinga, in 1649, and the missionaries, P. Bonaventura of Correglia, and P. Francesco of Veas, retired.

<sup>5</sup> See Cavazzi, pp. 512-15.

Kongo, Matamba and the Makoko's country, without reference to the claims of Portugal. This the Pope declined to do ; but to show his pleasure at receiving this mission, he had a medal struck in memory of its visit, with the inscription " Et Congo agnovit Pastorem," and sent the King a Royal crown blessed by himself. The King, however, when his mission returned (1651), and when he heard that the Pope had refused to change Kongo from an elective into a hereditary monarchy, grew wroth. He openly renounced Christianity, forbade the Capuchins to preach the word of God, and recalled his native ngangas. But when some bags containing relics and ornaments, which the King had taken out of the churches, were miraculously spared by a fire which broke out in his palace, he reconsidered his position. A reconciliation with the Capuchins was effected, and soon afterwards the King, in penitential robes, actually marched at the head of a procession which had been organised to turn away a threatened plague of locusts ; he allowed himself to be crowned by P. Giannuario of Nola, in the name of his Holiness, and took an active part in the celebration of the Pope's jubilee.<sup>1</sup>

Meanwhile the Portuguese had recovered Luandu, and the King was called upon to pay the penalty for having made friendship with the Dutch heretics, and admitted foreigners as missionaries. Bartholomeu de Vasconcellos invaded Kongo. The King at once sent P. Domingos Cardoso, a Jesuit, and the Capuchin Friar Bonaventura Sardo, to Luandu, where they had an interview with the Governor (on February 19th, 1649), and preliminary terms of peace were arranged.<sup>2</sup> The treaty was reported upon by

---

<sup>1</sup> Those of our readers who have no time or inclination to wade through the bulky tomes of Cavazzi and other missionaries of those days, may be recommended to read an excellent summary by the Franciscan Friar Eucher (*Le Congo, Essai sur l'Histoire Religieuse de ce Pays*, Huy, 1860).

<sup>2</sup> Paiva Manso, pp. 200-229.

the *Conselho Ultramarino*, and confirmed in 1651 at Lisbon, whither Friar Bonaventura<sup>1</sup> of Sorrento had gone to do homage to the King of Portugal, on behalf of the Prefect of the Capuchins, as also to plead the cause of his Order in reference to the proposed treaty. The terms of this treaty, as modified, were as follows:—Castilians or Dutchmen not to be permitted to reside or travel in Kongo nor their ships to be admitted, unless provided with a Portuguese passport; the Capuchin friars to communicate with Rome only by way of Luandu or Lisbon, and no Castilians to be admitted among them; the Kings of Kongo and Portugal to mutually assist each other if attacked by an enemy; an ambassador of the King of Kongo to take up his residence at Luandu, as also a royal prince, as hostage, or in his absence two or three men of rank; compensation to be granted for all the losses suffered by the Portuguese since the arrival of the Dutch, and fugitive slaves to be surrendered; Portuguese merchants to be exempted from the payment of tolls; a site to be granted at the mouth of the Kongo for a fortress; all gold and silver mines to be ceded to the crown of Portugal, and the country to the south of the river Dande to be ceded absolutely; and finally the King of Kongo to acknowledge himself a “tributario” of Portugal.

The King seems to have long hesitated before he ratified this treaty, for in 1656, Diogo Gomes de Moraes was ordered to invade Kongo to enforce it, and was on the point of crossing the river Loje into Mbamba, when he was recalled, as envoys from the King had arrived at Luandu, definitely to arrange the terms of peace.

---

<sup>1</sup> Fr. Bonaventura had left Luandu in December, 1649; in June, 1650, he was in Rome; in July, 1651, at Lisbon. He then returned to Kongo in the company of P. Giacinto Brusciotto of Vetralla (1652), but ultimately joined the mission in Georgia. To Brusciotto we are indebted for a grammar and vocabulary of the Sonyo dialect, published at Rome in 1659.

During the later years of his life, D. Garcia once more fell away from his Christian teachers, whom he accused of being influenced by political motives. Suspecting the Duke of Mpemba of a desire to deprive his son of the succession, he had him executed; and when the native diviners accused his eldest son, Affonso, of aiming at his life, he had his second son elected as his successor. He died in 1663.

D. ANTONIO I, 1663-66.

D. Antonio had been enjoined by his dying father to avenge the humiliation forced upon him by the Portuguese. He inaugurated his reign by killing his own brother and other relatives, whom he suspected of disloyalty. The warnings of heaven—fiery balls, an earthquake, which destroyed part of his capital, a plague, which decimated the population—were disregarded by him.

He very soon found himself involved in a war with the Portuguese, who claimed possession of the mines which had been promised by treaty, and complained of raids made upon friendly chiefs. On July 13th, 1665, the King called upon his people to rise in defence of their country and liberty.<sup>1</sup> His diviners had promised him an easy victory. The Portuguese had recently been reinforced from Brazil, yet the army which they were able to put into the field only numbered four hundred Europeans, with two field guns and six thousand negroes. It was commanded by Luiz Lopez de Sequeira, the captain-major, with whom were Manuel Rebello de Brito, Diogo Rodriguez de Sá, Simão de Matos and Antonio Araujo Cabreira, the serjeant-major. The hostile forces met on January 1st, 1666, at Ulanga, near the Pedras de Ambuilla.<sup>2</sup> Antonio,

---

<sup>1</sup> Paiva Manso, p. 244.

<sup>2</sup> I have no doubt that these "Pedras" are identical with the "Pedras de Nkoshi," or "lion rocks," now occupied by the Presidio of Encoge.

seeing the small force opposed to him, hoped to gain an easy victory ; but the Portuguese, formed in square, resisted the onslaught of his hosts for six hours. At last the King left the ranks, desirous of a personal encounter with Lopez de Sequeira ; but he was shot down, his head was cut off, and stuck upon a pike. His followers fled in dismay. The missionaries assert that the Virgin Mary, with her Child, was seen to stand by the side of the Portuguese leader, directing the battle, and that a fiery rain fell upon the idolaters.<sup>1</sup>

The Governor of Angola, in commemoration of this victory, built the chapel of N.S. da Nazareth at Luandu, whilst the King of Portugal amply rewarded the victors.

#### A TIME OF ANARCHY, AFTER 1666.

We are indebted to Pedro Mendes for an account of the history of Kongo from the death of D. Antonio in 1666 to the beginning of the eighteenth century.<sup>2</sup> During that time, according to this authority, there were fourteen Kings of Kongo, of whom four were beheaded (or killed) by the Musurongo, five by the Ezikongo, three died a natural death, and two were survivors when he wrote, namely, D. Pedro IV, at Salvador, and D. João at Mbula.<sup>3</sup> At one time there were actually three kings in the field.

ALVARO VII, a royal prince who had passed his early life in retirement, but who, on being raised to the throne, turned out a monster of iniquity, was killed by his own subjects, abetted by the Count of Sonyo (1666), under whose auspices took place the election of his successor,

---

<sup>1</sup> Cavazzi, p. 287.

<sup>2</sup> Published by Paiva Manso, pp. 350-355.

<sup>3</sup> Pedro Mendes, however, only gives the names of ten Kings. If we add to these Alvaro VII, D. Rafael, and Alvaro IX, mentioned by others, we make up the number to thirteen. See Appendix III for a list and classification of these Kings.

D. ALVARO VIII (1666-70), who was in turn removed by the Marquis of Mpemba. Alvaro VIII<sup>1</sup> had allowed the Portuguese to search for gold, but this search turned out as fruitless as the search for silver at Kambambe. Meanwhile D. AFFONSO III AFFONSO had been proclaimed at Kibangu, the new capital (1667), whilst D. PEDRO III *nsukia ntamba* was put up as an opposition King in Mbula. The latter defeated his rival, who fled beyond the Mbiriji (Ambriz), and died there (of poison?). His widow, D. Anna, a daughter of a former King, Garcia, retired to Nkondo (Mucondo), and survived her husband until 1680. The people proclaimed D. GARCIA III *nenganga mbemba*<sup>2</sup> his successor, whilst the opposition, at the old capital (S. Salvador), declared D. DANIEL DE GUZMAN, descendant of Mpanzu (Alvaro I), to be the rightful King. D. Daniel took the field against D. Garcia III, but, before he reached the residence of that King, he was overtaken by D. Pedro of Mbula; his army was dispersed, and himself beheaded. His children sought refuge with the Count of Sonyo, and by treachery they succeeded in getting D. Pedro into their power, and killed him. The people of Mbula thereupon raised his brother, D. JOÃO, to the throne, who survived until after 1710. S. Salvador, after D. Daniel had deserted it, became the haunt of wild beasts.

Meanwhile D. RAFAEL, Marquis of Mpemba, who had been proclaimed King some time anterior to this, had been obliged to seek refuge among the Portuguese, and his reinstatement was one of the objects of the disastrous expedition of 1670,<sup>3</sup> by which it was sought to punish Count Estevão da Silva of Sonyo for his desecration of Christian churches and the ill-treatment of Portuguese traders: or, rather, his dealings with heretic competitors.

<sup>1</sup> Cadornega says Affonso III.

<sup>2</sup> He had some correspondence with the Pope in 1673 and 1677.

<sup>3</sup> Paiva Manso, p. 254.

João Soares de Almeida, the commander of this expedition, had with him five hundred Portuguese, supported by a strong force of native allies, among whom was a Jaga Kalandula. He won a battle, in which Estevão was killed ; but Pedro, the brother of the unfortunate Count, rallied the forces of Sonyo, unexpectedly fell upon the Portuguese near the Mbiriji (Ambriz), and scarcely a man among them escaped. Count Pedro then expelled the Italian Capuchins, who were supposed to be friendly to Portugal, and invited in their stead Belgian members of the same Order, who arrived in September, 1673, under the lead of P. Wouters. But, having been accused of stopping the rain, and having in reply excommunicated the Count, they were speedily expelled.<sup>1</sup> Peace between Sonyo and Portugal was only restored in 1690, when the former promised to abolish idolatry and to sell no slaves to heretics.

It was about this period (between 1669 and 1675) that Francisco do Murça, the captain-major of Dande, visited S. Salvador, and proceeded thence to Mbata and the Kwangu, where he was told that this river flowed through the kingdom of the Makoko, and entered the sea at Mpinda, a fact long before known to the missionaries. These latter had not quite abandoned the Kongo, notwithstanding these troubles, and in 1668 the Capuchins still occupied their monasteries at the capital of Mbamba and at Mpembu ;<sup>2</sup> whilst Girolamo Merolla (1682-88) and Antonio Zucchelli steadily laboured (1700-02) in Sonyo and Luangu.<sup>3</sup>

D. ANDRE succeeded D. Garcia, but died after a

<sup>1</sup> See Eucher, *Le Congo*, p. 176. Subsequently the Capuchins returned to Sonyo (Merollo in 1683, Zucchelli in 1703).

<sup>2</sup> Dionigi Carli paid a visit to these : see his *Viaggio*, Reggio, 1672.

<sup>3</sup> See Merolla's *Relatione del Regno di Congo*, Naples, 1692 ; and Zucchelli's *Viaggi*, Venice, 1712.

short reign. D. MANUEL *nzinga elenge*, a descendant of Mpanzu, was duly elected, but expelled by the sons of the late D. Garcia, who raised ALVARO IX to the throne in his stead. This prince was never recognised by the Count of Sonyo, who looked upon D. Manuel, who had sought refuge with him, as the legitimate King. He was reinstated by him for a time, but ultimately fell into the power of his enemies, and was beheaded.

Alvaro IX was succeeded in 1694 by his brother PEDRO IV *nsanu a mbemba*, also known as *agoa rosada*,<sup>1</sup> who once more returned to the ancient capital. He and D. João of Mbula were the only Kings alive in 1701, when the Capuchin Friar Francisco de Pavia, and his colleague Friar João Maria went throughout the kingdom of Kongo, preaching peace, and calling upon the leading men to recognise D. Pedro as their King; and thus put an end to quarrels which had distracted the country for an entire generation.

#### A RETROSPECT.

And if we ask to what extent, and in what manner, have the natives of Kongo been benefited by two centuries of contact with the civilisation of Europe, and of missionary effort, we feel bound to admit that they have not been benefited at all—either materially or morally. On the contrary. There were, no doubt, a few earnest men among the missionaries, and the Church of Rome deserves some credit for the zeal with which she addressed herself to the object of converting the natives. At the same time it cannot be denied that the instruments she employed, the methods she pursued, and the surrounding circumstances, were not favourable to success. And success there has

---

<sup>1</sup> His captain-general, D. Pedro Constantino, managed to get himself elected king, but was taken prisoner and beheaded at S. Salvador in 1709.

been none—at least, none of an enduring nature—notwithstanding the boastful, if not absolutely mendacious, reports of her missionaries. The assertion that there was a time when the whole of Kongo had become Roman Catholic must raise a smile on the face of those who have attentively studied the missionary reports. There were eleven churches and a crowd of priests at the capital; but the outlying provinces were but poorly attended to. The number of missionaries, even including the native helpers, was never large enough to administer, even to a tithe of the population, those rites and sacraments, which the Roman Catholic Church professes to be of essential importance.<sup>1</sup>

I quite agree with the Rev. J. Leighton Wilson, when he says that the “great spiritual edifice” [raised by the missionaries] has not only “crumbled into the dust, but it has left the unfortunate inhabitants of that country in as deep ignorance and superstition, and perhaps in greater poverty and degradation, than they would have been if Roman Catholicism had never been proclaimed among them.”<sup>2</sup> Father José Antonio de Souza, who resided at S. Salvador from 1881-87, and was subsequently created Bishop of Mozambique, virtually admits this, for he says: “Christianity did not penetrate deeply; it passed over the country like a heavy rain, which scarcely wetted the surface of the land, and left the subsoil absolutely dry and sterile.”<sup>3</sup> He adds significantly: “By the side of the missionary stood

---

<sup>1</sup> It was not unusual to make a charge for the administration of the sacraments. In 1653, the parochial priests complained that the Capuchin friars administered the sacraments without claiming an “acknowledgment;” and the authorities at Rome (1653) prohibited their doing so within five leagues of the capital (Paiva Manso, p. 233). At Mbamba, the priest had a regular scale of prices. A baptism cost 7,000 cowries, for a marriage a slave was expected, and so forth; and thus, adds the Bishop of Angola (1722): “little children go to limbo, and grown-up people to hell!”

<sup>2</sup> *Western Africa*, London, 1856, p. 329.

<sup>3</sup> *Boletim*, Lisbon Geogr. Society, March 1889.

the slave-trader." And surely it was the export slave trade, created by the cupidity of the Portuguese, but shared in by Dutch, French and English, which undermined the prosperity of the country, and decimated its population. And the missionaries never raised a protest against this traffic, although it was against the tenets of their Church,<sup>1</sup> for they profited by it. The only thing which they did for the wretched slaves was to endeavour to secure, as far as possible, that they should not fall into the hands of heretics; so that at least their souls might be saved, whatever became of their bodies.

---

<sup>1</sup> In 1709, the Holy Office declared the slave-trade in Africa illicit. Only those persons were to be looked upon as slaves who were born such; who had been captured in a just war; who had sold themselves for money (a usual practice in Africa); or who had been adjudged slaves by a just sentence.





### APPENDIX III.

---

#### A LIST OF THE KINGS OF KONGO.

(NTOTELA NTINU MAKONGO.)

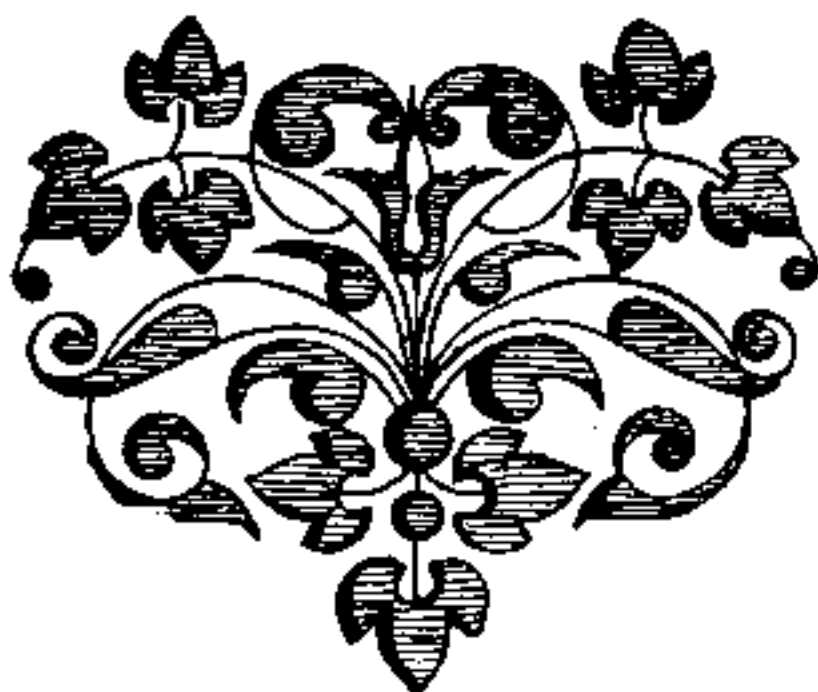
---

1. Ntinu mini a lukeni.
2. Nanga kia ntinu, his nephew or cousin.
3. — — —
4. Nkuwu a ntinu, son of No. 1.
5. João I Nzinga a nkuwu, son of No. 4, baptised May 3rd, 1491, died 1509.
6. Mpanzu a nzinga (Mpanzu a kitima?), second son of No. 5, 1509.
7. Affonso I Mbemba a nzinga (Mbemba nelumbu), eldest son of No. 5, 1509-40.
8. Pedro I Nkanga a mbemba, son of No. 7, 1540-44.
9. Francisco Mpudi a nzinga, 1544-46.
10. Diogo Nkumbi a mpudi, son of No. 9, 1546-61.
11. Affonso II Mpemba a nzinga, an illegitimate son of No. 10? 1561.
12. Bernardo I, (bastard) son of No. 10, 1561-67.
13. Henrique (Nerika) a mpudi, son of No. 9, 1567-68.
14. Alvaro I o Mpanzu, Mini a lukeni lua mbamba, stepson of No. 12, 1568-74.
15. Alvaro II Nempanzu a Mini, son of No. 14, 1574-1614.

16. Bernardo II Nenimi a mpanzu, son of No. 15, 1615.
17. Alvaro III Mbiki a mpanzu, Duke of Mbamba, son of No. 15, 1615 to May 26th, 1622.
18. Pedro II Affonso Nkanga a mbiki, son of Mbiki antumbo, Duke of Nsundi, grandson of a daughter of No. 7, 1622 to April 13th, 1624.
19. Garcia I Mbemba a nkanga, Duke of Mbamba, son of No. 18, April 1624, to June 26th, 1626.
20. Ambrosio I, October 10th, 1626, to March, 1631.
21. Alvaro IV, son of No. 17, 1631 to February 25th, 1636.
22. Alvaro V, son of No. 21, 1636-38.
23. Alvaro VI, Duke of Mbamba, August, 1638, to February 22nd, 1641.
24. Garcia II o kimbaku, (Nkanga a lukeni), Marquis of Kiwa, 1641-63.
25. Antonio I Nevita a nkanga, mwana mulaza, son of No. 24, 1663-66.
26. Alvaro VII Nepanzu a masundu, 1666-67.
27. Pedro III Nsukia ntamba of Mbula, 1667-79.
28. Alvaro VIII, 1667-78.
29. Affonso III Affonso, 1667-69.
30. Garcia III Nenganga mbemba, 1669-78.
31. Rafael I, marquis of Mpemba, 1669-75.
32. Daniel de Guzman Nemiala nia gimbuilla (?), a descendant of No. 14, 1678-80.
33. João of Mbula, brother of No. 27, 1679—(He was alive in 1710).
34. André mulaza, a descendant of No. 25, 1679.
35. Manuel Nzinga elenge, a descendant of No. 14, 1680-16—.
36. Alvaro IX Nenimi a mbemba, a descendant both of No. 14 and of No. 25.
37. Pedro IV, Nsanu a mbemba (Agoa rosada), brother of No. 36, acceded 1694, and was alive in 1710.

38. Pedro Constantino Kibangu. He was executed in 1709.

The dates given for Nos. 26-38, are for the most part very uncertain : Nos. 26, 28, 31, and 32 I believe to have resided at S. Salvador ; Nos. 29, 30, 34, 35, 36 and 37, at Kibangu ; Nos. 27 and 33, in Mbula.





## APPENDIX IV.

---

### A SKETCH OF THE HISTORY OF ANGOLA TO THE END OF THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY.

---

#### EARLY PORTUGUESE VISITORS.



THE inhabitants of S. Thomé were granted permission in 1500<sup>1</sup> to trade as far as the Kongo river ; but it is just possible that long before that time, and notwithstanding an interdict of 1504, they had felt their way southward along the coast, and had discovered that a profitable trade, not hampered by the presence of royal officials or "farmers," might be carried on at Luandu, and up a river which, after the King of the country, was called the river of Ngola (Angola):

Several years afterwards, a representative of this Ngola, whilst on a visit at S. Salvador, suggested that missionaries should be sent to convert his master. King Manuel was nothing loth to act upon this suggestion, and entrusted Manuel Pacheco and Balthasar de Castro, both of whom were old residents in Kongo, with an expedition, whose

---

<sup>1</sup> *Alguns Documentos*, p. 107.

main object was to report on the missionary and commercial prospects in Ngola's country, to inquire into the existence of reputed silver mines, and, eventually, to explore the coast as far as the Cape of Good Hope. On arriving at the bar of Ngola's river (the Kwanza), B. de Castro was to go to the King's court, where, if circumstances were favourable, he was to be joined by a priest. Pacheco himself was to return to Portugal, with a cargo of slaves, ivory, and silver.<sup>1</sup>

No report of this mission has hitherto seen the light ; but we know that B. de Castro actually reached Ngola's residence, and that he was retained there as a prisoner, until released in 1526, through the intervention of the King of Kongo. He reported that he never saw silver or precious stones anywhere in Angola.<sup>2</sup>

#### THE EARLY HISTORY OF NDONGO (ANGOLA).

Ndongo is the original name of the vast territory now known as Angola, from the name or title of its ruler (Ngola) when first the Portuguese became acquainted with it. The early history of this region is involved in obscurity, but it seems that its chiefs at one time owed allegiance to the King of Kongo, whose authority was finally shaken off about the middle of the sixteenth century, the King only keeping possession of Luandu island and its valuable *njimbu* fishery.

Cavazzi, Antonio Laudati of Gaeta, Cadornega, and others, have published long lists of Kings of "Angola ;" but nearly all the names they give are not those of the Kings, but the titles which they assumed,<sup>3</sup> and by which

<sup>1</sup> For the instructions given to Pacheco, see *Alguns Documentos*, p. 436.

<sup>2</sup> Paiva Manso, p. 55.

<sup>3</sup> Kiluanji, nzundu, and ndambi, which are given as names of kings, are in reality only titles assumed by them.—Capello and Ivens, *Benguella to the Iacca*, vol. ii, p. 53. Tumba-ndala (according to Héli Chatelain) was another of these ancient royal titles.

they were generally known. The full title of the King of Ndongo was *Ngola kiluanji kia Samba*,<sup>1</sup> and that title is still borne by the present ruler, who claims to be a descendant of the kings of old, and whose *Kabasa*<sup>2</sup> on the River Hamba (Va-umba or Uмба) still occupies the locality assigned by the missionaries to Queen Nzinga's *Kabasa*, where they built the church of S. Maria of Matamba.

Cavazzi's Matamba, however, included the whole of Queen Nzinga's kingdom, as it existed in his day, whilst the original Matamba, as also the country known by that name in the present day, had much narrower limits. It was originally tributary to Kongo, but one of its rulers assumed the title of *Kambulu*, that is, King, and renounced all vassalage to his former suzerain. It existed as an independent kingdom until 1627, when the famous Queen Nzinga took prisoner the dowager Queen, Muongo Matamba, and incorporated this ancient kingdom in her own dominions.<sup>3</sup>

It may have been a Ngola kiluanji, described by Cavazzi as the son of Tumba ria ngola and of a Ngola kiluanji kia Samba, who first invaded lower Ndongo, and assigned his conquest to one of his sons. But all is uncertainty, and there exists an inextricable confusion in the names of the Kings of upper and lower Ndongo as transmitted to us.

<sup>1</sup> Capello and Ivens, *ib.*, vol. ii, p. 59. His proper name is Kalunga (*i.e.*, Excellency) ndombo akambo.

<sup>2</sup> *Kabása*, according to Cordeiro da Matta's *Diccionario*, simply means "capital;" but J. V. Carneiro (*An. do cons. ultram.*, vol. ii, p. 172, 1861) would have us distinguish between a Mbanza ia Kabasa and a Mbanza ia Kakulu: the former meaning "second," the latter "first," capital. This "first" or original capital of the kings of Ndongo was undoubtedly in the locality of Queen Nzinga's kabasa; the second capital was at Pungu a ndongo.

<sup>3</sup> Cavazzi, pp. 9, 621. The Queen was branded as a slave (a practice learnt from the Portuguese; see Marcador in the Index), and died of grief; but her daughter was received into favour, and was baptized in 1667.

One thing, however, is certain, namely, that as early as 1520 the country down to the sea was held by a king bearing the name or title of Ngola.<sup>1</sup>

### THE FIRST EXPEDITION OF PAULO DIAS DE NOVAES, 1560.

In 1556 Ngola Ineve,<sup>2</sup> being threatened by Kongo, sent an ambassador to Portugal asking for the establishment of friendly relations. This ambassador arriving in the year

<sup>1</sup> Lopes de Lima (*Ensaio*, vol. iii, *parte segundo*), is very severe upon Cavazzi, whom he charges with having "falsified" history, but does nothing himself to throw light upon the vexed question of the names of the kings of Matamba and Ndongo. The following is a summary of Cavazzi's very copious information (where Antonio of Gaeta gives different names, these are added within brackets). *Ngola*, the smith, or *musuri* (*Ngola Bumbumbula*), was the founder of the kingdom of Ndongo. Having no sons, he was succeeded by his daughter, *Nzunda ria ngola*, and then by another daughter, *Tumba ria ngola*, who married a *Ngola kiluanji kia Samba*, a great warrior. Their son, *Ngola kiluanji*, was succeeded by *Ndambi ngola*. Then followed *Ngola kiluanji kia ndambi*, another great warrior, who advanced to within ten leagues of the sea, and planted a *nzanda* tree (*Insandeira*), on the northern bank of the Kwanza, a short distance above Tombo, to mark the furthest point reached by his conquering hosts. *Nzinga ngola kilombo kia kasende* (*Ngola kiluanji*) followed next; then came *Mbandi ngola kiluanji*, the father, and *Ngola mbandi*, the brother, of the famous Queen *Nzinga* (*Jinga*) *mbandi ngola* (born 1582, acceded 1627, died 1663), since whose day the upper part of Ndongo, including Matamba, has been known as Nzinga or Ginga. The great queen was succeeded by her sister, *D. Barbara da Silva*, who married *D. Antonio Carrasco nzinga a mina* (she died 1666). Then followed in succession *D. João Guterres Ngola kanini*, *D. Francisco Guterres Ngola kanini* (1680-81), and *D. Victoria*, whom Cadornega calls *Veronica*.

According to Lopez de Lima, it was a Jaga of Matamba, *Ngola a nzinga*, who conquered Ndongo, and gave it as an appanage to his son, *Ngola mbandi*. It was this *Ngola mbandi* who invited the Portuguese in 1556, and a son of his, bearing the same name or title, who received Dias in 1560.

Cadornega (Paiva Manso, p. 281) gives the following names as the "Kings of Angola" since the arrival of the Portuguese: *Ngola a kiluanji*, *Ngola mbandi*, *Ngola a kiluanji II*, Queen *Nzinga D. Anna de Sousa*, *D. Antonio Carrasco Nzinga a mina*, *D. Barbara da Silva*, his wife; *D. João Guterres Ngola kanini*, *D. Luis*, *D. Francisco Guterres Ngola kanini*, *D. Veronica*, the wife of *D. Francisco*.

<sup>2</sup> Called *Ngola mbandi* by Lopes de Lima.

of the death of King John III (1557), action was deferred until 1559, when three caravels were fitted out and placed under the command of Paulo Dias, a grandson of the discoverer of the Cape of Good Hope. Dias left Lisbon on December 22nd, 1559, and called at S. Thomé (where Bishop Gaspar Cão observed that the Jesuits, who accompanied Dias, would meet with no success as long as commercial intercourse was prohibited).<sup>1</sup> Dias arrived at the bar of the Kwanza on May 3rd, and there waited patiently for six months, when Musungu, a native chief, made his appearance at the head of a crew of painted warriors, armed with bows and arrows. In his company Dias, accompanied by the Jesuit fathers and twenty men, travelled up the country for sixty leagues, when he arrived at the royal residence.<sup>2</sup> The King, not any longer the Ngola who had asked for missionaries, but his successor,<sup>3</sup> received his visitors kindly, but would not allow them to depart until they had helped him against one of his revolted Sobas, called Kiluanji kia kwangu by Garcia Mendes.<sup>4</sup> Having rendered this service Dias was dismissed, but the Jesuits remained behind as hostages. Whilst Dias was absent in Europe, Ngola defeated an army sent against him, and thus compelled the

---

<sup>1</sup> Paiva Manso, p. 112.

<sup>2</sup> The Jesuit fathers (Francisco de Gouvea and Garcia Simões) date their letters from *Angoleme*, and call the King's capital Glo-amba Coamba, evidently a misprint. Sixty leagues would carry us far beyond the later capital, Pungu a ndongo, perhaps as far as the Anguolome aquitambo (Ngwalema a kitambu) of Garcia Mendes, in the district known as Ari. Another Angolome (Ngolome) lived less than twenty leagues from the coast, on the northern side of the Kwanza, and near him a soba, Ngola ngoleme a kundu. Neves (*Exped. de Cassange*) says the old name of Pungu a ndongo is Gongo a mboa. For the Jesuit letters of that time, see *Boletim*, 1883, pp. 300-344).

<sup>3</sup> He is referred to as Ngola Mbandi or Ngola ndambi.

<sup>4</sup> Lopes de Lima, *Ensaio*, p. ix, calls him Kiluanji kia samba, an ancestor of the chief residing near the presidio of Duque de Bragança. V. J. Duarte (*Annaes do cons. ultramar.*, vol. ii, p. 123), the commandant of that presidio in 1847, confirms that it occupies the site of a former chief of that name, who was, however, quite an insignificant personage.

recognition of the Dande river as his boundary, the island of Luandu alone, with its productive *njimbu* fishery, remaining with Kongo. Ngola ndambi died (in 1568?) before Dias returned.

#### THE SECOND EXPEDITION OF DIAS, 1574.

After a considerable delay, Dias was sent out as "Conquistador" of the territory recently visited by him. He left Lisbon on October 23rd, 1574, with seven vessels and three hundred and fifty men, most of them cobblers, tailors, and tradesmen.<sup>1</sup> Among his officers were Pedro da Fonseca, his son-in-law, Luis Serrão, André Ferreira Pereira, and Garcia Mendes Castellobranco, all of whom subsequently won distinction as "Conquistadores." Three Jesuit fathers (with P. Balthasar Barreira as superior), and three Dominicans accompanied him. These latter, however, not finding the country to their liking, soon sought more comfortable quarters in Kongo. Dias was authorised to grant estates (including full seignorial rights) to all such among his companions as were prepared to build a small fort at their own expense.

In February, 1575, the fleet sighted the coast near the Kwanza, and passing over the bar of Kurimba cast anchor in the fine bay of Luandu, and on February 20th Dias laid the foundations of a church.<sup>2</sup> The island, at that time, was inhabited by forty Portuguese who had come from Kongo, and a considerable number of native Christians. Its cowry fisheries yielded great profit to its owner, the

---

<sup>1</sup> Domingos d'Abreu de Brito, in a MS. of 1592, quoted by Lima, *Ensaio*, p. x. Garcia Mendes mentions seven hundred men, but these probably included the crews of the vessels.

<sup>2</sup> F. Garcia Simões, S.J., informs us that a few days before the arrival of Dias four men had been killed at a village only six leagues from Luandu, and eaten.—*Boletim*, 1883.

King of Kongo, who was represented by a governor.<sup>1</sup> Not finding the site originally chosen for his capital to be suitable, Dias, in 1576, removed to what is now known as the Morro de S. Miguel, and he named the new colony "Reino de Sebaste na conquista de Ethiopia," in honour of the King who fell gloriously at Al Kasr el Kebir, and its capital S. Paulo de Luandu.

Meanwhile the customary presents were exchanged with the King, whose name or title seems to have been Ngola a kiluanji. The King's gifts included slaves, cattle, copper and silver bracelets, and aromatic Kakongo wood. The Cardinal King D. Henrique (1578-80) converted the silver bracelets into a chalice, which he presented to the church of Belem.

Friendly relations continued for three years. The King had been duly helped against his rebellious sobas; Pedro da Fonseca lived at the King's residence as "ministro conservador" of the Portuguese, and a brisk trade seems to have sprung up with the new town of S. Paulo de Luandu, when it was insinuated to the King that the Portuguese ultimately intended to take possession of his country, and to sell his subjects abroad as slaves. The *Catalogo* traces these insinuations to the jealousy of a Portuguese trader "inspired by the Devil," and although neither Garcia Mendes nor Abreu de Brito alludes to this infamy, their not doing so does not disprove the positive statement of the *Catalogo*.<sup>2</sup> Moreover, whether the King's mind was influenced by envoys from Kongo, or by a traitorous Portuguese, it must be admitted that the intentions of the Portuguese were not altogether misrepresented.

---

<sup>1</sup> Domingos d'Abreu de Brito, quoted by Paiva Manso, p. 139, informs us that in 1592 it was governed by a Muene Mpofo, M. Luandu and M. Mbumbi.

<sup>2</sup> The King, after his defeat, is stated to have ordered the Makotas who had given him this evil counsel to be killed (Lopes de Lima, p. xiii).

At all events, the results were immediately disastrous, for twenty Portuguese traders, who were at the King's kabasa at the time, were murdered, together with one thousand slaves, and their merchandise was confiscated.

#### DIAS IN THE FIELD, 1578-89.

Dias, before this happened, had already (in 1577) built the fort of S. Cruz,<sup>1</sup> ten leagues up the Kwanza, and was at the time at a stockade on the Penedo de S. Pedro, still higher up on the river.<sup>2</sup> When there, he was warned not to advance any further, and, suspecting treachery, he retired with his one hundred and fifty men to Kanzele (Anzele),<sup>3</sup> where he entrenched himself (in 1578). Twenty days later he received news of the massacre. Dias at once hastened back to Luandu for reinforcements, the serjeant-major, Manuel João, meanwhile valiantly defending the stockade and raiding the neighbourhood.

In September, 1580, Dias again left Luandu with three hundred men. Slowly he proceeded along the Kwanza by land and in boats, punished the sobas Muchima, Kitan-gombe, and Kizua, in Kisama, and defeated the King's army at Makunde,<sup>4</sup> where he had his headquarters for two years, during which time his subordinates, João Serrão, Manuel João, and others, established his authority among the sobas of Kisama and Lamba (Ilamba).

In 1582 he removed to Masanganu, at the "meeting of the waters" of the Lukala and Kwanza. Determined to

<sup>1</sup> Lima, *Ensaio*, vol. xi, suggests that this S. Cruz became subsequently known as Kalumbu, and that its church was dedicated to S. José. To me it seems more likely that it occupied the site of Tombo, and was subsequently abandoned.

<sup>2</sup> This "Penedo" seems subsequently to have been named after Antonio Bruto, a captain-major.

<sup>3</sup> Garcia Mendes, p. 19, describes Kanzele as lying half-way between the rivers Kwanza and Mbengu.

<sup>4</sup> According to Antonio of Gaeta two leagues below Masanganu. Garcia Mendes calls this place Makumbe.

capture the reputed silver mines of Kambambe, he set out with Luiz Serrão, eighty Portuguese, and a "guerra preta" of thirty thousand men. During his forward march he defeated the soba Mbamba Tungu; and at an entrenched camp at Teka ndungu, on February 2nd, 1584, he inflicted a crushing defeat upon the King's forces; the Jesuit Father Balthasar Barreiro claiming no little credit for having contributed to this victory by his prayers.<sup>1</sup> As a result of this success, many of the sobas declared in favour of Portugal, but so inconsiderable were the forces at the command of Dias that he could do no more than maintain his position at Masanganu. An army under the Duke of Mbamba, which had been promised to him, was never sent.<sup>2</sup> Reinforcements, however, arrived in the course of 1584 and 1586,<sup>3</sup> and Dias fought a battle on the Lukala. But his subordinates did not always meet with a like success; and João Castanhosa Vellez, with one hundred Portuguese, was completely routed by the soba Ngola Kalungu.<sup>4</sup>

As an incident of the governorship of Paulo Dias may be mentioned the building of a fort at Benguella velho, by his nephew, Antonio Lopes Peixoto, in 1587. Unhappily, fifty men of the garrison ventured abroad, unarmed, and fell in an ambush; and of the twenty who had remained in the fort, and who offered a stout resistance, only two escaped. As a matter of fact, the losses of human life in these native wars were very considerable.

---

<sup>1</sup> See his account of this battle in *Boletim*, 1883, p. 378. The story in the *Catalogo*, that Dias sent loads of cut-off noses to S. Paulo, is hardly credible.

<sup>2</sup> So says Garcia Mendes, p. 25; whilst Duarte Lopez, p. 34, says they were sent, but being defeated on the river Mbengu, retired again to the north.

<sup>3</sup> Diogo Rodrigues dos Colos brought three hundred men in 1584; Jacome da Cunha, nine hundred in 1586. Two hundred Flemings, who arrived in 1587, nearly all died soon after they had been landed.

<sup>4</sup> Garcia Mendes, p. 24.

Paulo Dias died in the midst of preparations for a fresh expedition against Ngola, in October, 1589, and was buried in the church of N. S. da Victoria, which he himself had built at Masanganu.<sup>1</sup>

His soldiers elected Luiz Serrão, the captain-major, to succeed him.

#### LUIZ SERRÃO AND THE BATTLE OF 1590.

Luiz Serrão, having completed his preparations, started with an army numbering one hundred and twenty eight Portuguese musketeers (with three horses), and fifteen thousand native allies armed with bows. With this utterly insufficient force he crossed the Lukala, and then advanced to the east. On Friday, December 25th, 1590, when at Ngwalema a kitambú (Anguolome aquitambo) in Ari,<sup>2</sup> he found himself face to face with the King of Matamba, whose army had been reinforced by Ngola, the King of Kongo, the Jaga Kinda,<sup>3</sup> and others. Serrão desired to retire before this overwhelming host, but his subordinate officers, André Ferreira Pereira and Francisco de Sequeira, persuaded him to attack the enemy. He did so, on Monday, December 28th, 1590, and was defeated. The retreat was effected in good order. The vanguard of

<sup>1</sup> In 1809 his remains were transferred to the Jesuit Church at Luandu.

<sup>2</sup> This place is said to be eighty leagues from Masanganu, a gross exaggeration. Vicente José, who was the commander of Duque de Bragança in 1848, mentions a Ngolema Aquitamboa among the chiefs of Haire da cima (*An. do Conselho ultram.*, vol. ii, p. 123).

<sup>3</sup> Garcia Mendes mentions the Kindas as if they were a tribe. To me they seem to be the people of the Jaga Kinda (Chinda of the Italian Capuchins), one of the chiefs killed by the famous Queen Nzinga. See Cavazzi, p. 636, and Antonio de Gaeta's narrative in *La maravigliosa conversione delle Regina Singa scritta dal. P. F. Francesco Maria Gioia da Napoli*. Naples, 1669, p. 233. Emilio, a son of Count Laudati, was born in 1615; he lived a few years as a knight of Malta, and then entered a monastery of Capuchins, assuming the name of Antonio of Gaeta. He landed at Luandu in November, 1650, and died there, after an active life as a missionary, in July, 1662.

forty musketeers was led by João de Velloria, then came the "guerra preta," whilst Serrão himself commanded the rear, and fought almost daily with his pursuers. The camp at Lukanza, with its valuable contents, had to be abandoned. At length, on reaching Akimbolo,<sup>1</sup> many leagues to the rear, the fugitives met Luiz Mendez Rapozo, who had come up from Luandu with seventy-eight men. At last they reached the old presidio of Mbamba Tungu and Masanganu; Manuel Jorge d'Oliveira was at once sent down to Luandu for reinforcements, and on their arrival the siege was raised. L. Serrão survived this disaster only for a month; and when he died, his officers elected Luiz Ferreira Pereira, the captain-major, to take his place. The sobas all around, and in Lamba and Ngulungu, headed by one Muzi Zemba (Muge Asemba), were in the field, but they were held in check by Pereira, and the Portuguese name continued to be respected.

### THE JAGA.

Jaga or Jaka is a military title,<sup>2</sup> and by no means the name of a people. The predatory man-eating bands at whose head they invaded the agricultural districts towards the sea coast, included elements of all kinds, not unlike the bands of the "Zulu" of our own time; and hence, one of the names by which they became known in Angola was Bangala.<sup>3</sup> I have already stated that I do not think that these military leaders, or Jaga, have anything to do with the tribe of the Ayaka to the east of Kongo. Still less can we adopt the monstrous notion that the various inland tribes who, in the course of the sixteenth century,

---

<sup>1</sup> Called Kakalele in the *Catalogo*.

<sup>2</sup> Douville, *Voyage au Congo*, Paris, 1832, vol. ii, p. 375; Bowdich, *On the Bunda Language*, p. 138, note 2.

<sup>3</sup> See note, p. 84.

descended upon the coast of the most opposite parts of Africa, are to be identified with our Jaga. It was João Bermudes<sup>1</sup> who first identified the Galla of Abyssinia with the Sumba, who raided the coast of Guinea about 1570. Duarte Lopez (pp. 66, 67) would have us believe that the Jaga came out of Moenemuge (Mwene muji), and called themselves Agag.<sup>2</sup> But the people of Mwene muji, or the land of the Maravi, are in reality the Zimbabwas, who raided Kilwa and Mombasa in 1589, whilst "Agag" looks to me like a corruption of Agau, which is the name of an Abyssinian tribe.<sup>3</sup> And hence arises this absurd confusion of Father Guerreiro, who expects us to believe that the Jaga are known in Kongo as Iacas, in Angola as Gindes,<sup>4</sup> in "India" (that is, on the East coast of Africa) as Zimbabwas, in Prester John's country as Gallas, and in Sierra Leone as Sumbas! Battell, who reports facts and leaves hypotheses alone, confesses that in his day nothing was known about the origin of this dreaded people.<sup>5</sup>

We have already met with Jaga in Kongo, as allies of Ngola. In 1590 they were fighting Luiz Serrão as the allies of Matamba, and by 1600 they appear to have advanced as far as the coast of Benguella, where Battell joined them, and had an opportunity of gaining an intimate knowledge of their daily life, not enjoyed by any other traveller. H. D. de Carvalho<sup>6</sup> and A. R. Neves<sup>7</sup> have been

<sup>1</sup> *Breve Relação da embaixada*, etc., Lisbon, 1565. Reprint of 1875, p. 98.

<sup>2</sup> It will be remembered that Battell, p. 25, writes Gaga as an alternative form for Jaga. May Agau stand for Agaga, the Jagas collectively?

<sup>3</sup> *Relação anual*, 1602-3. Lisbon, 1605.

<sup>4</sup> Ginde (pronounced Jinde) may be derived from *njinda*, the meaning of which is fury, hostility.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 83.

<sup>6</sup> *Expedição Portuguesa: Ethnographia*, p. 56.

<sup>7</sup> *Expedição a Cassange*, Lisbon, 1854.

at the trouble of collecting such information on their origin as it is possible to gather after the lapse of three centuries. Entrusting ourselves to the guidance of the former of these authors, we learn that Kinguri, the son of the chief of the Bungo, in Lunda, was excluded by his father from the succession, in favour of his sister Lueji. Gathering around him his adherents, he left his native land to found a "state" elsewhere. He first settled in Kioko, then crossed the Upper Kwanza into Kimbundu (Binbundu of Bié), and reached Lubolo, where he made friends with the chief, Ngongo, whose daughter Kulachinga he married. He then crossed the Kwanza above Kambambe, entered into friendly relations with the Portuguese, visited the Governor, D. Manuel,<sup>1</sup> and offered to fight on the side of the Portuguese. He was granted land at Lukamba,<sup>2</sup> on the river Kamueji. Being dissatisfied with this land, on account of its sterility, he again turned to the eastward, and, crossing the Lui, finally settled in the country still occupied by his successors, who (according to Carvalho), were Kasanjé, Ngonga ka mbanda, Kalunga ka kilombo, Kasanje ka Kulachinga, etc.<sup>3</sup> Having settled down, Kinguri invited his father-in-law to join him, and his forces were subsequently increased by some discontented subjects of Queen Nzinga, led by Kalungu. His followers, being thus a mixture of many tribes, the Jagas were thenceforth chosen alternately among the three leading

---

<sup>1</sup> Perhaps Manuel Cerveira Pereira, who founded the Presidio of Kambambe in 1604. The first DON Manuel, however, is D. Manuel Pereira Forjaz (1607-11). But as the Jaga offered to fight Queen Nzinga, who only acceded in 1627, this Don Manuel may have been D. Manuel Pereira Coutinho (1630-34).

<sup>2</sup> A "feira" was established at Lukamba, near Mbaka, in 1623. The Kamueji is perhaps the Fumeji of Capello and Ivens.

<sup>3</sup> The list of Neves, p. 108, begins with Kinguri kia bangala, who was succeeded by Kasanje kaimba, Kasanje kakulachinga, Kaki-lombo, Ngonga-nbande, etc.

families of Kulachinga (Kinguri's wife), Ngongo and Kalunga.<sup>1</sup>

It is perfectly clear from this information, collected in Lunda and Kasanje, that it throws no light upon the original Jaga, although it may explain the origin of the Jaga still ruling at Kasanje.

The account given by Ladislaus Magyar<sup>2</sup> evidently refers to the same leader. According to him, a Jaga Kanguri settled in the country now occupied by the Sonyo three hundred years ago. His people were cannibals, but the more intelligent among them saw that this practice would ultimately lead to the destruction of the subject tribes upon whom they depended for support, and they founded the secret society of the Empacaceiros<sup>3</sup> for the suppression of cannibalism. Being worsted in a civil war, they crossed the upper Kwanza into Bié, whilst Kanguri turned to the north-west and settled in Kasanje.

Cavazzi seems to go further back, for he tells us that Zimbo, who was the first chief of the Jaga (Aiacca), invaded Kongo, whilst one of his chiefs, "Dongij" (Ndongo?), invaded Matamba, and that the bloody "kichile,"<sup>4</sup> or customs, were introduced by Musasa the wife, and Tembandumba the daughter, of this "Dongij." The daughter married Kulambo, whom she poisoned; he was succeeded by Kinguri, who was killed during an invasion of Angola, Kulachimbo a great warrior, Kassanje, and many

<sup>1</sup> Capello and Ivens, *Benguella to Iacca*, vol. i, p. 239, include Mahungo and Kambolo among the family of Ngongo, and Mbumba among that of Kulachinga.

<sup>2</sup> *Reisen in Süd-Afrika*, Pest, 1869, p. 264.

<sup>3</sup> From *Mpakasa*, a buffalo, and the meaning of the word is therefore originally "buffalo-hunter," but it was subsequently applied to natives employed by government, as soldiers, etc. Capello and Ivens, *From Benguella to the Yacca*, vol. ii, p. 215, deny that they ever formed a secret society for the suppression of cannibalism.

<sup>4</sup> *Kichile*, transgression.

others; the last of whom, Kassanje ka nkinguri, was baptised in 1657.<sup>1</sup>

I confess my inability to evolve the truth out of these conflicting statements, and can only suppose that the title of "Jaga" was assumed by the leaders of predatory hordes of very diverse origin, in order to inspire terror in the hearts of peaceful tribes; just, as in more recent times, certain tribes in East Africa pretend to be Zulu for a like reason.

D. FRANCISCO AND D. JERONYMO D'ALMEIDA,  
1592-1594.

The new Governor, D. Francisco d'Almeida, arrived at S. Paulo, on June 24th, 1592, accompanied by four hundred foot-soldiers and fifty African horse, all picked men. Among the volunteers attending him were his brother, D. Jeronymo, Luis Lopez de Sequeira and Balthasar Rebello de Aragôa;<sup>2</sup> and perhaps also Domingos d'Abreu de Brito, who, in a "Summario e descripção do Reino de Angola," presented to King Philip I, proposed an expedition across Africa, and the protection of the road to be opened by a chain of forts.<sup>3</sup>

The new Governor, immediately on his arrival, found himself face to face with a religious difficulty. The Jesuits, ever since the days of Dias, expected to be consulted in all government business. They desired to be appointed "preceptors" (amos) of the native chiefs, their aim being evidently to create a theocratic government, such as they established subsequently in Paraguay. They

---

<sup>1</sup> See Cavazzi, pp. 182-205.

<sup>2</sup> It is to him we owe several memoirs, referred to p. xviii. He did excellent service; but whilst João Velloria and others were made Knights of the Order of Christ, and received other more substantial rewards, his merits seem not to have been recognised.

<sup>3</sup> This important MS., dated 1592, still awaits publication.

"used their spiritual influence to induce the conquered sobas to refuse obedience to the civil powers;" and when d'Almeida made use of the authority conferred upon him at Madrid in order to crush this "nascent theocracy," he was excommunicated. He certainly was unequal to cope with these domineering priests. Disheartened, he threw up a charge to which he felt unequal, and took ship for Brazil (April 8th, 1593).<sup>2</sup>

D. Jeronymo, at the urgent request of the Camara, took up the reins of government, and being of a more conciliatory nature than his brother, made peace with the Jesuits, and was thus able to take the field. He started with four hundred men and twenty horses, and received the submission of the sobas of Kisama, excepting the most powerful among them. On reaching the salt mines of Ndemba<sup>3</sup> he founded a "presidio," and garrisoned it with one hundred men. On his way to the silver-mines of Kambambe he was struck down with fever, and returned to Luandu, leaving Balthasar d'Almeida de Sousa and Pedro Alvares Rebello in command of the troops. They were imprudent, and on April 22nd, 1594, fell into an ambush prepared for them by the powerful chief Kafuche kabara (Cafuxe cambara). Only the captain-major, thanks to the swiftness of his horse, and a few men, escaped this disaster.<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Lopes de Lima, *Ensaio*s, p. 147.

<sup>2</sup> However, there are two sides to this dispute, and it may well be doubted whether the natives would not have been better off under a Jesuit theocracy than they were under an utterly corrupt body of civil officials. See P. Guerreiro, *Relação anual de 1605*, p. 625, and Lopes de Lima, p. xviii.

<sup>3</sup> Erroneously called Adenda by most authors. Battell is the first to give the correct name.

<sup>4</sup> Garcia Mendes, p. 24.

## JOÃO FURTADO DE MENDONÇA, 1594-1602.

D. Jeronymo was on the point of hurrying up with reinforcements when João Furtado de Mendonça arrived at Luandu (August 1st, 1594). He brought with him, not only four hundred men with thirty horses, but also twelve European women,<sup>1</sup> the first ever seen in Luandu, in whose honour the town was decorated.

One of the most memorable events of his governorship was a campaign which he conducted up the river Mbengu. Starting at the worst time of the year (in March, 1496), he quickly lost two hundred men by fever. Having brought up fresh recruits from Luandu, he avenged himself for a disaster brought about by his own ignorance, by an exceptional severity in his treatment of the "rebels," many of whom were blown from guns. This expedition kept the field for several years, and proceeded as far as Ngazî (Ingasia), the chief of which district was called Ngombe—the bullock.<sup>2</sup>

Meanwhile, João de Velloria,<sup>3</sup> the captain-major, had severely punished the rebellious sobas of Lamba. Masanganu was once more blockaded by the King Ngola (1597), until relieved by Balthasar Rebello de Aragão. On again

---

<sup>1</sup> They were "converts" from the Casa Pia founded by D. Maria, the queen of D. Manuel—not reformed criminals, but converted Jewesses.

<sup>2</sup> Battell gives some account of this campaign. See also Garcia Mendes, p. 11. Ngombe a Mukiama, one of the Ndembu to the north of the Mbengu, may be a descendant of this Ngombe (see Luis Simplicio Fonseca's account of "Dembos" in *An. do conselho ultram.*, ii, p. 86).

<sup>3</sup> Upon this Spaniard was conferred the habit of the Order of Christ, he was granted a pension of 20,000 reis, and appointed "marcador dos escravos," an office supposed to yield 1,000 cruzados a year (Rebello de Aragão, p. 23).

descending the Kwanza, he built a presidio in the territory of the chief Muchima, in Kisama (1559).<sup>1</sup>

### THE CAMPAIGN OF 1602-3.<sup>2</sup>

A new Governor, João Rodrigues Coutinho, arrived early in 1602. He was acceptable to the Jesuits, and soon won the hearts of the people by his liberality. He had been authorised by the King to bestow five habits of the Order of Christ, dub five knights, and appoint thirty King's chamberlains (*moços da camara*). Seven years' receipts of the export duty on slaves were to be devoted to the building of forts at the salt mines (Ndemba), Kambambe, and in Benguela.

Six months after his arrival, the Governor took the field against the powerful chief Kafuche. His force was the most formidable that had ever been at the disposal of a Governor, numbering no less than eight hundred Portuguese. It was joined at Songo by a portion of the garrison of Masanganu. Unhappily, the Governor died before coming in contact with the enemy, and appointed Manuel Cerveira Pereira as his successor. Battell calls this man an "upstart," and he certainly had many enemies; but he is well spoken of by the Jesuits, and was an able soldier. On August 10th, 1603, he inflicted a crushing defeat upon Kafuche, at Agoakaiongo,<sup>3</sup> on the very spot where, seven years before, the Portuguese had met with a great disaster. Overcoming the stout resistance of the chiefs of the Museke,<sup>4</sup> he arrived at the head of the navigation of the Kwanza, and there, at Kambambe, he founded the Presidio da N.S. do Rozario (1604). Having punished

---

<sup>1</sup> Luciano Cordeiro (*Terras e Minas*, p. 7), says that, according to local tradition, the first presidio of that name was at Kasenga, a village which we are unable to discover on any map.

<sup>2</sup> See Battell's account of this campaign, p. 37.

<sup>3</sup> See note, p. 37.

<sup>4</sup> See Glossary, *Museke*.

several of the neighbouring chiefs, including Shila mbanza (Axilambanza), the father-in-law of King Ngola, and left João de Araujo e Azevedo<sup>1</sup> in command of the new presidio, Pereira returned to the coast.

S. Paulo de Luandu had by that time grown into a fine town, where commerce flourished. Unfortunately for the lasting prosperity of the colony, human beings constituted the most valuable article of export, and the profits yielded by this slave trade attracted Dutch and French interlopers, notwithstanding a royal decree of 1605, which excluded all foreign vessels from the vast territories claimed by Portugal. In 1607 there were four "Presidios" or forts in the interior, namely Muchima, Agoakaiongo, Masanganu, and Kambambe.<sup>2</sup>

D. MANUEL PEREIRA FORJAZ AND BENTO BANHA  
CARDOSO, 1607-15.

We have already stated that Manuel Cerveira Pereira had many enemies, and when D. Manuel Pereira Forjaz, the new Governor, arrived towards the end of 1607, very serious accusations must have been brought against the former, for he was at once sent back to Lisbon. There, however, we are bound to assume that he refuted these accusations, for otherwise it is not likely that he would have been re-appointed Governor eight years afterwards: unless, indeed, he had friends at court who profited by his delinquencies. Forjaz himself showed to little advantage. He superseded the commandant of Kambambe by one of his own creatures, and the fort would certainly have been taken by the sobas who blockaded it, had not Roque de S. Miguel and Rebello de Aragão hastened to its relief. Forjaz, moreover, is accused of having imposed an annual

---

<sup>1</sup> Others call him Paio d'Araujo.

<sup>2</sup> Estabelecimentos, 1607.

tax upon the sobas, yielding from twelve to thirteen thousand cruzados, which seem to have found their way into his own pockets, and those of his favourites.<sup>1</sup> When he suddenly died in his bed, on April 11th, 1611, the bishop and the leading men called upon the captain-major, Bento Banha Cardoso, to take charge of the government. Cardoso was a man of enterprise, and successful in his undertakings, but cruel. In 1611 he defeated King Ngola. The sobas Kilonga and Mbamba Tungu, who fell into his hands, were beheaded, as were also several of their makotas. To avenge these executions, fourteen sobas of Ngola and Matamba made an attack upon Kambambe in the following year; and although that place was valiantly defended until relieved, it took a year before order was restored in the surrounding district. To keep these sobas in check, a fort (Mbaka) was built on the river Lukala (1614), eight leagues from Masanganu.<sup>2</sup> In Kisama, the territory of Nambua ngongo (Nabo angungo) was raided in the same year.

#### AN ATTEMPT TO CROSS AFRICA.

Before proceeding with our account, there remains to be noticed a serious attempt to cross the whole of Africa from the west coast to "Manomotapa," on the Zambezi, which was made by Balthasar Rebello de Aragão, by order of D. Manuel Pereira Forjaz. Rebello de Aragão himself furnishes a very short account of this expedition,<sup>3</sup> from which we learn that he discovered copper and iron, and was told that there was also silver. The natives bred cattle and cultivated the land, and they told him of a lake,

<sup>1</sup> A. Beserra Fajardo, in *Produções commercio e governo do Congo e de Angola*, 1629, one of the documents published by Luciano Cordeiro in 1881.

<sup>2</sup> Near where the railway now crosses that river.

in lat.  $16^{\circ}$  S., giving rise to many rivers, including the Nile. Unfortunately, when he had advanced one hundred and forty leagues from the sea, and eighty beyond the place he started from (Kambambe?), he was summoned back, as the fort just named was threatened by King Ngola.<sup>1</sup>

### THE CONQUEST OF BENGUELLA.

In 1615, Manuel Cerveira Pereira<sup>2</sup> returned to the scene of his former labours, with special instructions to take possession of Benguella, which for a considerable time past had been visited by trading vessels. But before he started upon this enterprise, he ordered his old comrade, João (or Paio?) de Araujo e Azevedo, to deal with Kakulu Kabasa,<sup>3</sup> Mbumba (Bumba) a ndala, Kilomba kia tubia, and other revolted chiefs in Angola, whilst he himself penetrated into the country of the Kakulu Kahenda,<sup>4</sup> who had given offence by assisting fugitive slaves and interfering with traders.

Having entrusted Antonio Gonçalves Pitta with the

<sup>1</sup> It seems that the explorer considers Kambambe to lie eighty leagues inland (P. Guerreiro—*Rel. an.*, 1515, f. 126—estimated the distance from S. Paulo to Kafuchi's at sixty leagues). Accepting this gross over-estimate in calculating his further progress, and assuming him to have gone to the south-east, which was not only the shortest route to Chikovo and Mwanamtapa, but also avoided the country of the hostile Ngola, he cannot even have got as far as Bié. As to a "big lake," he heard no more than other travellers have heard since, only to be disappointed. The natives certainly never told him that one of the rivers flowing out of that lake was the Nile. This bit of information he got out of a map. His expedition *may* have taken place in 1607—he himself gives no date. Perhaps Forjaz had given the instructions, which were only carried out in 1612, when Kambambe was in reality threatened by the natives.

<sup>2</sup> Rebello de Aragão, p. 14, calls him Manuel da Silveira.

<sup>3</sup> A Kakulu Kabasa still lives to the north-east of Masanganu, in  $9^{\circ} 4'$  S.,  $14^{\circ} 9'$  E.

<sup>4</sup> The territory of a chief of that name is on the upper Mbengu, to the north of Mbaka. The *Catalogo* calls him Kakulu Kahango.

government of S. Paulo, he left that place for the South, on April 11th, 1617, with four vessels, a patacho, and one hundred soldiers.<sup>1</sup> Finding the site of the old fort near the Terra das duas Puntas unsuitable, he continued his voyage along the coast, until he came in sight of a "sombreiro," overlooking the Bahia das Vaccas;<sup>2</sup> and there he built the fort of S. Filippe de Benguella, which in course of time developed into a city of some importance. The sobas of Ndombe, of whose territory he had possessed himself, naturally objected to the presence of these uninvited strangers, but they were compelled to submit after five defeats. The Jaga on the river Murombo likewise gave in, after three months' fighting, but soon afterwards broke the peace, and was executed. The chief Kalunga, at the mouth of the Koporolo (Kuporol), and the cattle-keeping Mukimba in the neighbouring hills, also submitted. It scarcely admits of doubt that Pereira, in the course of his many military excursions, discovered copper, sulphur and salt,<sup>3</sup> but he was to benefit little by these discoveries. His harsh conduct and greed had estranged his people. Headed by a priest and by their officers, they mutinied, put their leader on board a patacho, and shipped him off to S. Paulo, where no notice was taken of his presence, the Governor being absent at that time, because of a native war (1618).

---

<sup>1</sup> See *Benguella e seu sertão*, 1617-22, by an anonymous writer, published by Luciano Cordeiro in 1881.

<sup>2</sup> This bay is known by many aliases, such as S. Maria, S. Antonio, do Sombreiro, and da Torre.

<sup>3</sup> The anonymous MS. already cited by us is, however, silent on this subject.

<sup>4</sup> Antonio Diniz, who wrote in 1622 (*Produções do Congo e de Angola*, Lisbon, 1881, p. 14), charges Pereira with having sent, without the King's knowledge, three shiploads of salt to Luandu, which he exchanged for "Farinha de guerra" (Commissariat flour), with which to feed his men.

Pereira once more returned to Madrid, and having explained matters to the satisfaction of the authorities, he was sent back, and again reached S. Felipe de Benguela on August 8th, 1620. He sailed north to Sumbela's country, at the mouth of the river Kuvu. A couple of days inland he discovered more copper, three quintals of which he took to S. Paulo. He died in the midst of his labours. The *Catalogo* credits him with having gone inland as far as Kakonda.<sup>1</sup>

### THE COLONIAL GOVERNMENT.

We have already learned that the native sobas were handed over to the mercy of individual "conquistadores," and Rebello de Aragão declares that these sobas were being "robbed and maltreated." They were required by their masters to pay a tax in slaves, to furnish carriers, and render all kinds of services,<sup>2</sup> without payment. In addition to this the Governor, D. M. P. Forjaz, imposed upon them a poll-tax, which produced from twelve to thirteen thousand cruzados (say £1,650<sup>3</sup>) a year. Rebello de Aragão maintains that the native wars were largely due to this pernicious system, which enriched the Governor and his officials, whilst traders were made to suffer, and ceased to visit the "feiras" because of the extortionate demands made upon them. At Mpinda nearly all the "honest" trade had passed into the hands of the Dutch, because of the monopoly conferred upon Portuguese slave-dealers. He declares that a tax of 20 per cent. on the salt mined at

<sup>1</sup> That is a *district* called Kakonda, for the old fort of that name (Caconda velha), sixty miles from the coast, was only built in 1682. Letters from Pereira, dated September 9th, 1620, and January 23rd, 1621, in *Egerton MS.* 1133 (British Museum), ff. 357-361.

<sup>2</sup> I do not know whether oxen were employed as beasts of burthen (*bois cavallos*) in these early days.

<sup>3</sup> Reckoning the cruzado at 2s. 8d.

Ndemba would pay all the legitimate expenses of government ; but that, although the export duty on slaves yielded from five to six thousand cruzados, there had not yet been built a decent house for the government offices.

Garcia Mendes Castellobranco, in a memoir<sup>1</sup> addressed to the King in 1620, is equally outspoken with regard to the treatment of the native chiefs, who, he maintains, ought not to be taxed more heavily than at the time when they were still subjects of a native king. He, too, refers to the salt mines as a source of revenue, recommends the levying of a toll at river crossings, and the expropriation of the uncultivated territory around S. Paulo.<sup>2</sup>

Many of these abuses may, no doubt, be traced to the demoralising influence of the slave-trade and the insufficient pay of the officials. A slave costing £3 7s. in the interior (or nothing, if taken in the course of one of the frequent slave raids) was sold for more than double that sum on the coast ; and whilst money could be made thus easily the great natural resources of the country were neglected and the population—which, on the arrival of the Portuguese, is said to have been very considerable—shrank from year to year.<sup>3</sup>

The export duties on slaves and ivory were farmed out in 1607 to one Duarte Dias Enriques for twenty million reis annually (about £6,600).<sup>4</sup>

S. Paulo and Masanganu enjoyed municipal institutions at that time, but all outside these cities was ruled by military adventurers. The Governor (in 1607) was paid a

<sup>1</sup> Published by Luciano Cordeiro.

<sup>2</sup> Dapper, p. 592, regrets that these exactions ceased on the occupation of the country by the Dutch (not from love of the native, we may be sure), and that, as a consequence, his countrymen were little respected.

<sup>3</sup> Antonio Diniz, *Produções, commercio e governo do Congo e de Angola*, 1516-19, published by Luciano Cordeiro in 1881.

<sup>4</sup> Luiz de Figuerido Falcão, *Livro em que se contem toda a Fazenda*, etc. Lisbon, 1855, p. 26. I reckon 400 reis to a cruzado worth 2s. 8d.

salary of £267, but the other officials were decidedly underpaid; and thus, almost of necessity, were driven to increase their incomes by illegitimate means.<sup>1</sup>

#### THE WAR WITH NGOLA NZINGA MBANDI.

Luiz Mendes de Vasconcellos, the new Governor, arrived in November, 1617, and almost immediately found himself involved in a war with the King of Ndongo. Nzinga mbandi ngola kiluanji,<sup>2</sup> a great tyrant, had been "removed" by his indignant subjects shortly before the arrival of the new Governor. He left behind him three daughters, one of whom, born in 1582, became famous as Queen D. Anna de Souza Nzinga, and two sons, one by a legitimate wife, the other by a slave woman. It was the latter, Ngola nzinga mbandi,<sup>3</sup> whom his partisans raised to the throne, which he reached through rivers of blood, among his victims being his own brother, a son of his sister, and many of the trusted councillors of his father. In 1618 the usurper took the field, intending to expel the Portuguese, who seem to have given provocation by shifting the old presidio of Mbaka (Ambaca) to a site much higher up the Lukala.<sup>4</sup> The Governor, ably supported by his captain-major, Pedro de Souza Coelho, not only defeated the King,

<sup>1</sup> The Capitão-mor do Campo, who was the chief officer next to the Governor, was paid £67; the ouvidor (or judge), £34; the sergeant-major, £34; the principal financial officer (provedor da Fazenda), £27; a captain of infantry, £40; a private, £18. There was a "marcador dos escravos," who branded the slaves. He received no pay but levied fees which brought him in £140 a year (see *Estabelecimentos*, p. 21).

In 1721 the Governor's salary was raised to 15,000 cruzados (£2,000), but he was forbidden to engage any longer in trade.

<sup>2</sup> Called Nzinga mbandi ngola, or Mbandi Ngola kiluanji, by Cavazzi, pp. 28, 601; Ngola akiluanji by Cadornega; and Nzinga mbandi, King of Ndongo and Matamba, in the *Catalogo*.

<sup>3</sup> Called Ngola mbandi by Cavazzi, Cadornega, and in the *Catalogo*; Ngola-nzinga mbandi by Lopes de Lima, *Ensaio*, p. 95.

<sup>4</sup> This removal seems to have taken place immediately after the Governor's arrival. The site chosen was that of the Praça velha of modern maps, to the south of the present Ambaca.

but also captured his queen and many other persons of consideration. The King sued for peace, but as he failed to surrender the Portuguese whom he had taken prisoner, the war was renewed in 1619. His allies fared no better than the King himself. His vice-king of lower Ndongo, Ngola ari,<sup>1</sup> was compelled to pay a tribute of one hundred slaves annually (in 1620); and while the Governor raided the territories of Kahibalongo, Ndonga, and Kasa, his lieutenant, Lopo Soares Laço, destroyed the kilombos of the sobas Ngunza a ngombe and Bangu.

It had been recognised by this time that many of these punitive expeditions were provoked by the lawless conduct of white traders, mulattoes and negros calçados (that is, shoe-wearing negroes), who went inland on slaving expeditions; and only Pumbeiros descalços, that is, native agents or traders not yet sufficiently civilised to wear shoes, should be permitted to do so in future.<sup>2</sup>

When King Ngola nzinga mbandi heard of the arrival of João Corrêa de Souza, the new Governor, in September, 1621,<sup>3</sup> he at once sent his sister to Luandu to arrange terms of peace. This woman, then about forty years of age, proved an excellent diplomatist. When the Governor alluded to the payment of tribute, she declared that tribute could only be demanded from a conquered people, and the treaty ultimately signed was one of reciprocity: fugitive slaves were to be surrendered, and assistance to be given against common enemies.

---

<sup>1</sup> D. João de Souza Ngola ari was the first King of Angola (Ndongo) recognised by the Portuguese. He only survived a few days, and was succeeded by D. Felipe de Souza, who died in 1660; and by D. João II, the last of the line, who was executed as a traitor in 1671.

<sup>2</sup> Livingstone, *Missionary Travels*, 1857, p. 371, calls this a law dictated by motives of humanity.

<sup>3</sup> He was appointed April 7th, 1621, took possession in September 1621, and left in 1623 (see *Add. MS.* 15183, f. 5).

Before this able ambassadress left Luandu, she was received into the bosom of Holy Mother Church, being baptised as D. Anna de Souza (1622); and on her return home she persuaded her brother to apply for the services of a priest, or *Mamaganga*.<sup>1</sup> A priest was sent, but he was a native, who had been ordained at Luandu, and one of the King's own subjects. The King looked upon this as an insult; he treated the priest with great indignity, and once more invaded the Portuguese territory. Thrice beaten, and deserted by his vassals, he fled to the island of Ndangi,<sup>2</sup> in the Kwanza river, where he died of poison administered by his own sister Nzinga, who thus avenged the murder of her son (1623).

#### QUEEN NZINGA, 1623-1636.

Nzinga at once renounced Christianity, and the bloody rites of the Jaga were celebrated when she ascended her throne. She inaugurated her reign by the murder of her brother's son, of his adherents, and her supposed enemies. Having reduced her own people to subjection, with the aid of the Jaga, she declared war upon Portugal. D. Felipe de Souza Ngola ari, the King of Ndongo recognised by the Portuguese, was at once ordered to defend the frontier, and, if possible, to invade the territories of his kinswoman. On consideration, however, it was thought best, in the interest of trade, to avoid a serious conflict. An officer was sent to the court of the Queen, offering to restore the lost provinces (and thus sacrificing their vassal D. Felipe), on condition of her acknowledging herself a vassal, and paying tribute. These

---

<sup>1</sup> Literally "mother priest." It is thus the natives of Angola call the Roman Catholic priests, because of their long habits, to distinguish them from their own *Nganga*.

<sup>2</sup> Ndangi (Dangi), with the royal sepultures (*Mbila*), was two leagues from Pungu a ndongo (according to Cavazzi, p. 20).

conditions were haughtily rejected, and the war began in earnest.

João de Araujo e Azevedo was placed at the head of the Portuguese invading force.<sup>1</sup> He raided the country along the Lukala, and then turned back upon the Kwanza, occupied the islands of Ukole and Kitaka, and came up with the Queen's camp at Ndangi Island. The Queen, having consulted the spirit of her brother Ngola mbandi,<sup>2</sup> declined to risk a battle, and fled into Hako (Oacco). The Portuguese followed in pursuit, passing through Bemba, Malemba and Kipupa, and Little Ngangela (Ganguella); came up with the Queen's forces in the territory of soba Matima (Mathemo), and inflicted a serious defeat upon them. Among the prisoners taken were the Queen's sisters, Kambe and Funji, and many Makotas. The pursuit was continued as far as Kina grande in Ngangela, a deep and difficult gorge, into which some of the soldiers and the *guerra preta* descended by means of ropes. When the Queen fled to the kingdom of Songo, the Portuguese forces retired to the west (1627).<sup>3</sup>

The two princesses were taken to Luandu, where the Governor, Fernão de Souza, lodged them in his own

<sup>1</sup> Bento de Benha Cardozo was originally given the command, but died before operations were begun.

<sup>2</sup> The Queen was in the habit of consulting the spirits of the Jagas Kasa, Kasanji, Kinda, Kalandu and Ngola mbandi, each of whose *Mbila* (pl. *Jimbila*), or sepulture, was in charge of a soothsayer or *Shingiri* (Cavazzi, p. 656).

<sup>3</sup> The *Catalogo* is provokingly obscure with respect to the pursuit of the Queen. Malemba (Lemba) is known to be above Hako, to the west of the Kwanza, whilst Ngangela (Ganguella) is a nickname applied by the Binbundo to the tribes to the east of them. "Little Ngangela," according to Cavazzi, is identical with the country of the Bangala, or Kasanji, of modern maps. Kina (quina) simply means "sepulture" or "cavern," and A. R. Neves (p. 103) tells us that Kasanji, on first arriving in the country where subsequently he settled permanently, took up his quarters at Kina kia kilamba ("Sepulture of the exorcist"). The mountain mentioned by Cavazzi (p. 770), as abounding in caverns full of the skulls of Kasanji's victims, may be identical with this Kina.

house. In baptism (1628), they received the names of D. Barbara and D. Engracia.

The Portuguese had no sooner retired than Queen Nzinga returned to Ndangi Island, and having been reinforced by several Jaga, she undertook the conquest of Matamba. At Makaria ka matamba she took prisoner the dowager-queen<sup>1</sup> Muongo Matamba, and her daughter. The mother was branded as a slave, and died of grief; but the daughter was taken into favour, and was baptised in 1667.

Having thus destroyed the ancient kingdom of Matamba, the Queen once more invaded Portuguese territory, but she turned back when she heard that the Jaga Kasanji was raiding her recent conquest, upon which he claimed to have prior rights.

At the same time she interfered continually with the commerce of the Portuguese with the interior; and it was only in 1636, when the Governor, Francisco de Vasconcellos da Cunha, sent D. Gaspar Borgia and Father Antonio Coelho on a mission to the Jaga in Little Ngangela, and to the Queen at her Kabasa, in Umba, that peaceable relations were established. The Queen, however, persistently refused to surrender her claims to the provinces of Ndongo which had been occupied by the Portuguese.

#### MINOR EVENTS, 1624-1641.

Punitive expeditions were frequent. In 1624 the Jaga Kasanji, who had taken advantage of the conflicts between the Portuguese and Queen Nzinga to rob Pumbeiros, was severely punished, and Captain Roque de Miguel returned from this expedition with a large number of captives, who

---

<sup>1</sup> Cavazzi, pp. 9, 622. In one place he calls her the dowager-queen, in the other the daughter of Matamba Kalombo, the last King of Matamba. J. V. Carneiro (*An. do cons. ultram.* 1861), asserts that Matamba was the honorary title of the great huntsman of Ngola.

as a matter of course, were sold into slavery. During the provisional governorship of the bishop D. Simão de Mascarenhas<sup>1</sup> (1623-4), Lopo Soares Laço meted out punishment to the Jagas Nzenza a ngombe and Bangu-Bangu, and to the irrepressible Kafuche.<sup>2</sup> A few years later, in 1631, the captain-major António Bruto waged a successful war against rebellious sobas, and more especially impressed the natives by his victory over the dreaded Mbuila anduwa (Ambuila Dua), who held out for six months in a rocky stronghold deemed impregnable. The invasion of Kongo, in 1622, by order of Governor João Corrêa de Souza, who claimed the surrender of Luandu Island and of all the copper mines, has already been referred to (see p. 123).

Among the very few measures calculated to promote the material or moral interests of the colony may be mentioned the establishment of the three *feiras*, of Ndondo, Beja, and Lukamba, in 1625; the foundation of a *Santa casa da misericórdia* (Poor-house and hospital) at S. Paulo de Luandu, by the bishop D. Simão de Mascarenhas; the compulsory cultivation of the banks of Mbengu (Bengo), when Luandu was threatened with famine owing to the non-arrival of provision ships from Brazil, in 1629;<sup>3</sup> the

---

<sup>1</sup> D. Simão de Mascarenhas had been appointed bishop of Kongo on November 15th, 1621, and provisionally assumed the office of Governor at the urgent request of the captain-major Pedro de Souza Coelho. He was a native of Lisbon and a Franciscan. On the arrival of his successor, Fernão de Souza, in 1624, he proceeded to his See at S. Salvador, and died there in the following year under mysterious circumstances. Under his successor, D. Francisco Soveral (1628, d. 1642) the See was transferred to S. Paulo de Luandu. (*Add. MS.* 15,183). The dates given by Lopes de Lima (*Ensaio*, iii, p. 166a) are evidently corrupt.

<sup>2</sup> This Kafuche appears to have been a descendant of the warlike soba of that name. Another Kafuche, likewise in Kisama, asked to be baptised in 1694 (see Paiva Manso, p. 332).

<sup>3</sup> Dapper, p. 579. This first attempt to cultivate the soil was undertaken very reluctantly, but the profits derived therefrom soon con-

reform of the administration of the Royal revenue, by Fernão de Souza, in the same year ; and the creation of a board of revenue (*Junta da fazenda*), charged with the collection of the tithes and of the tribute payable by the native chiefs, by Francisco de Vasconcellos da Cunha, in 1638.

The affairs of the missions will be dealt with subsequently, in a comprehensive manner, but a difficulty which arose in 1623 between the Governor, João Corrêa de Souza, and the Jesuits, may be dealt mentioned at once. In 1619, Gaspar Alvares,<sup>1</sup> a wealthy merchant of Luandu, placed 20,000 cruzados at the service of the Fathers, in order that they might found a seminary<sup>2</sup> for the education of twelve natives. Subsequently he himself became a member of the Society of Loyola, and devoted the whole of his fortune, amounting to 400,000 cruzados, to its purposes. The Governor not unnaturally objected to this sudden enrichment of a Society which had always been a thorn in the side of the government. Alvares himself escaped to S. Salvador, but the Prefect of the Jesuits and three Fathers were sent as prisoners to Lisbon, where they were at once liberated ; whilst the Governor himself, who arrived soon afterwards, perhaps with the intention of justifying his hasty proceedings, was thrown into prison, and died in the *limoeiro* in 1626.

### THE DUTCH IN ANGOLA.

When Philip of Spain seized upon the crown of Portugal in 1580, that unfortunate country became at once involved in the troubles between Spain and the United

---

<sup>1</sup> The *Catalogo*, p. 366, calls him Alvares, but Paiva Manso, p. 182, Gaspar Gonçalves (see also Eucher, p. 83).

<sup>2</sup> This seminary was never founded, notwithstanding repeated Royal reminders of 1684, 1686, 1688, and 1691 (Lopez de Lima, *Ensaio*, iii, p. 149).

Netherlands. No sooner had the destruction of the *Armada*, in 1588, enabled the Dutch to take the offensive on sea, than they began to compete for a share in the trade of the Portuguese possessions. The Dutch at first kept on the defensive, but in 1598 they and the Portuguese came into hostile collision near the Ilha do Principe ; and all efforts to exclude these noxious heretics from sharing in the trade of the Kongo proved futile, more especially as the natives themselves preferred their Dutch visitors to the masterful Portuguese.<sup>1</sup>

An armistice concluded in 1609 expired in 1621. The Dutch West-India Company was founded in that very year, and thenceforth the Dutch proceeded aggressively. In 1623 they burnt several *patachos* off the mouth of the Kwanza ; in 1629 a Dutch squadron cruised during three months off the coast of Benguella and captured four Portuguese merchantmen, but failed to force their way into the harbour of Luandu. In 1633 two Dutch vessels menaced S. Felipe de Benguella, but were driven off by Lopo Soares Laço, after a stout fight, on November 15th. In 1637, Bartholomeu de Vasconcellos da Cunha, the Governor's brother, captured a Dutch man-of-war of 24 guns. At that time the coast was being regularly patrolled by Portuguese men-of-war,<sup>2</sup> and in 1638 the foundations of the Fort S. Miguel were laid on the Morro de S. Paulo, the original site of the city of S. Paulo.

When Portugal recovered her independence, in December, 1640, D. João IV of Bragança at once sent Tristão de Mendoza Furtado to the Hague, with instructions to demand a suspension of hostilities. The West-India Company, which profited largely from a state of war,

---

<sup>1</sup> S. Braun, *Schiff-farten*, Basel, 1624 ; and P. van der Broeck, *Journalen*, Amst., 1624.

<sup>2</sup> Jacome Ferreira, in command of these patrol ships, was killed in action in 1639, when the command devolved upon Bartholomeu de Vasconcellos.

declared in favour of a definite treaty of peace, but objected to the conclusion of an armistice. The Portuguese envoy had no authority to sign such a treaty; but after protracted negotiations an armistice for ten years was signed on June 23rd, 1641, which was to take force outside Europe as soon as it became known there.

Meantime, the directors of the West-Indian Company had instructed Count John Moritz of Nassau to take advantage of the momentary weakness of Portugal, after her war of liberation, to seize all he could before the terms of the treaty became known.<sup>1</sup> Count Moritz, being desirous to increase the supply of slaves for the plantations in Brazil, determined to seize upon Luandu. A fleet of twenty-one vessels was at once fitted out at Pernambuco, and placed under the command of Cornelis Cornelissen Jol, surnamed Houtebeen, or "Wooden leg." It was manned by nine hundred sailors, and had on board two thousand troops, commanded by Jeems Hindersen. This formidable armament left Pernambuco in June 30th, 1641, sighted Cabo Negro on August 5th, and having captured the *Jesus Maria*, on a voyage from Madeira, was by her piloted into the harbour of Luandu. On August 24th the Dutch fleet unexpectedly appeared off S. Paulo, surprising its inhabitants in the midst of their rejoicings at the accession of the "liberator king." S. Paulo, at that time, was a city of twenty thousand inhabitants, including three thousand Portuguese; but the Governor, Pedro Cezar de Menezes, though he was at the head of nine hundred white troops, offered only a feeble resistance; and, accompanied by many of the citizens, he withdrew to the river Mbengu, and subsequently to Masanganu. The booty

---

<sup>1</sup> N. G. van Kampen, *Geschiedenes der Nederlanders buiten Europa*, Haarlem, 1831, vol. i, p. 436, asks his readers to decide upon the morality of this proceeding, when negotiations were actually in progress, and in the case of Portugal, which had only recently thrown off the yoke of Spain, the common enemy.

which fell into the hands of the Dutch included thirty ships and ninety-eight cannon.

They lost no time in gaining the goodwill of the neighbouring sobas, sent an embassy to the King of Kongo (see p. 125), and entertained offers of alliance from Queen Nzinga. Aki musanu (Aca mochana) and Nambu a ngongo (Nabo a ngongo), who had risen upon the Portuguese, were joined by one hundred and fifty Dutchmen, and thus enabled to overcome their enemies, whose leaders, André da Costa and João Vieira, they killed (1642).

In the following year (1643) information was received that the truce had been signed, but the Dutch director very naturally declined to surrender the town. He agreed, however, to suspend hostilities. Pedro Cezar had been instructed by his government to avail himself of the first opportunity to recover the city,<sup>1</sup> and it was evidently with a view to this eventuality that he established a camp on the river Mbengu. The Dutch suspected his treacherous design, and at dawn on May 26th, 1643, they surprised his force. Many Portuguese were killed (including Antonio Bruto), while Pedro Cezar himself, Bartholomeu de Vasconcellos da Cunha, and one hundred and eighty seven soldiers were taken prisoner. The remainder escaped to Masanganu. The forces assembled there under the captain-major, Antonio de Miranda, were unable to retrieve this disaster, but the Governor, aided by friends, managed soon afterwards to escape.

But though unequal to meeting the Dutch in the field, the Portuguese were still able to enforce their authority upon the natives; and in 1645 Diogo Gomes de Moraes led an expedition into Lubolo and Mbalundu (Bailundo), and reduced the *kolombos* of thirty "Jagas" to obedience.

<sup>1</sup> *Catalogo*, p. 375.

In 1645, the Portuguese of Brazil, under the leadership of João Fernandez Vieira, rose upon their Dutch oppressors, and in the same year the Dutch occupied S. Felippe de Benguella. The garrison under Antonio Teixeira de Mendonça, the captain-major, and Antonio Gomez de Gouvea, an experienced *sertanejo*, or backwoodsman, retired northward along the coast. On reaching Kikombo Bay, on July 27th, 1645, they met there Francisco de Sotto-maior, just arrived from Rio de Janeiro with reinforcements. By advice of Gomez, the troops and stores were landed in Suto Bay, near Cabo ledó, and conducted by him in three detachments to Masanganu, without the Dutch becoming aware of their arrival. The Governor, Pedro Cezar de Menezes, returned by the same route to Rio, taking with him a cargo of slaves.

These reinforcements arrived just in time to be employed against Queen Nzinga. That lady had set a black and a white cock to fight each other, and the defeat of the white cock was looked upon by her as a favourable augury for venturing an attack upon Masanganu. But Gaspar Borges de Madureira fell upon her before her forces had been concentrated (January, 1646). She suffered a severe defeat, notwithstanding the presence of Dutch auxiliaries. Her sisters once more fell into the hands of the Portuguese. D. Engracia was strangled soon afterwards for an act of treachery, whilst D. Barbara was kept in honourable captivity until 1657.<sup>1</sup>

Meanwhile the Dutch had made preparations for an advance up the Kwanza. They had built Fort Mols at the mouth of the river, and another fort higher up. The Governor, Francisco de Sotto-maior, having died of fever in May, 1646, measures for a spirited defence were taken by the three captains-major, Bartholomeu de

<sup>1</sup> Cavazzi, p. 626.

Vasconcellos da Cunha, Antonio Teixeira de Mendonça, and João Juzarte de Andrada. Muchima, which had been furiously assaulted by the Dutch, was relieved by Diogo Gomes de Morales. But in the following year the Portuguese suffered a reverse at Kawala (Caoalla), and Masanganu itself was threatened by the combined forces of Queen Nzinga, Kongo, and the Dutch.

However a saviour was at hand in this extremity. On August 12th, 1648, Salvador Corrêa de Sá Benevides,<sup>1</sup> with nineteen vessels, having on board nine hundred soldiers, cast anchor in the harbour of Luandu, and summoned the Dutch to surrender within forty-eight hours. On their refusal he landed his troops, and after a short bombardment of Fort S. Miguel, to which the Dutch had withdrawn, early on August 15th he delivered an assault, which cost him one hundred and sixty three men, but led to the surrender of a garrison numbering one thousand one hundred men, including French and German mercenaries. When these prisoners had been joined by the three hundred Dutchmen who were with Queen Nzinga, and the garrison of Benguella, which surrendered without a blow, they were shipped off to Europe. The city, in memory of the event, assumed the name of "S. Paulo da Assumpção de Loanda," for it was on the Day of Ascension of the Virgin Mary that a seven years' captivity ended. The anniversary of that event is celebrated to the present day by a religious procession.

#### RESTORATION OF PORTUGUESE AUTHORITY.

No time was lost in restoring the authority of Portugal throughout the colony. The King of Kongo was compelled to accept a treaty by which Luandu Island and the

---

<sup>1</sup> He was a son of the valiant Martim de Sá, the Governor of Rio de Janeiro. Previously to sailing up to Luandu, he erected a factory on Kikombo Bay.

whole of the country to the south of the Dande river were unconditionally surrendered, and other advantages held out (p. 128). Queen Nzinga, although she declined the overtures of Captain Ruy Pegado<sup>1</sup> for a formal treaty, retired inland, and gave no trouble for a number of years. As to the sobas of Lamba, Kisama, Lubolo, and the Modiku islands, they were visited by punitive expeditions commanded by Antonio Teixeira de Moraes, Diogo Mendes de Morales, Vicente Pegado de Pontes, and Francisco de Aguiar.

Order having been restored, the Governor, Salvador Corrêa de Sá, caused the ruined buildings to be repaired, and granted crownland to the inhabitants for houses and gardens. In a very short time prosperity returned, and the trade of Luandu was as flourishing as ever it had been.<sup>2</sup>

But although the Portuguese were masters on shore, the Dutch, and occasionally also French or English "pirates" frequented the coast. In 1650 Alvaro d'Aguiar defeated five of these interlopers, who had made prizes of two ships on a voyage from Brazil; in 1651 João Duque was killed in an action with Dutch men-of-war; in 1652 João de Araujo drove away the Dutch from Mpinda and Luangu; in 1658 the same officer made a prize of a English slaver off Benguella. A second English slaver was captured in 1659 by João Cardoso, who also captured a Dutch vessel off the Kongo in 1661. In 1662 the definite treaty of peace between Portugal and Holland was signed, and "pirates" are no longer heard of; although Dutch vessels provided

---

<sup>1</sup> This envoy likewise visited the Jagas Kasanji, Kalungu and Kalumbu for the purpose of persuading them to abolish infanticide; and they promised to shut an eye if the old practice was not followed.

<sup>2</sup> In 1652 two years' grace for the payment of all debts incurred anterior to the invasion of the Dutch was granted to all inhabitants

with passes, or favoured by the Governors, seem to have been admitted to Portuguese ports.

### QUEEN NZINGA AND HER SUCCESSORS.

Queen Nzinga, after the return of her General from a raid on the territory of Mbula (Imbuille), in 1655, whence he brought a miraculous crucifix, felt troubled in her conscience ; and on consulting the spirits of five of her ancestors (see p. 166), she learned, to her no small terror, that they were suffering eternal torments, which she could only escape by once more embracing the Christian faith, and seeking the friendship of the Portuguese.<sup>1</sup> Upon this advice she acted. The negotiations for a treaty were conducted by Captain Manuel Freis Peixoto and the Capuchin friar Antonio of Gaeta, who came to her Court for that purpose in 1657. Her sister, D. Barbara, was restored to her on payment of a ransom of two hundred slaves,<sup>2</sup> and the river Lukala was thenceforth to form the boundary between the Queen's dominions and those of the Portuguese. No tribute was to be paid by her. Friar Antonio had the honour of once more baptising this ancient lady, then seventy-five years of age, and also of marrying her, legitimately, to a slave-youth, Don Salvatore ; while her sister, D. Barbara, allied herself unto D. Antonio Carrasco Nzinga a mona, a foster-brother of the Queen, and the General-in-Chief of her armies. A church, S. Maria de Matamba, was specially built for these interesting ceremonies. This remarkable woman died on December 17th, 1663, after Father Cavazzi had administered to her the last consolations of religion, and was buried in the church of St. Anna, which had been built within the precincts of the Royal palace.

---

<sup>1</sup> Cavazzi vouches for this (p. 637).

<sup>2</sup> She was conducted back by José Carrasco.

When D. Barbara died, on March 24th, 1666, her husband, D. Antonio Carrasco Nzinga a mona, killed the legitimate heir, D. João Guterres Ngola kanini, and usurped the throne, but was himself slain in a battle against D. Francisco Guterres Ngola kanini, in 1680. The conqueror then attacked the allies of the Portuguese, robbed the pumbeiros, and beheaded the Jaga Kasanji (1682).<sup>1</sup> Luiz Lopez de Sequeira at once took the field against him with five hundred and thirty infantry, thirty-seven horse, and ten thousand *empacaceiros*, and defeated him at Katole, a place within three days of the Royal *kabasa*. The King himself lost his life, but so did the leader of the Portuguese<sup>2</sup> and Vasco de Mello da Cunha. João Antonio de Brito, who took the command after his leader's death, remained encamped for thirty days on the site of the battle; and finding that the enemies did not return, retired to Mbaka; from which we may judge that the Portuguese, too, suffered heavy losses. D. Veronica (or Victoria) Guterres, the sister of the late King, sued for peace, which was readily granted. Fresh complications threatened in 1689, when the Queen was charged—falsely, it appears—with having stirred up the soba Kahenda to rebel against his Portuguese masters; but matters were arranged through the intervention of bishop D. João Franco de Oliveira. No further trouble seems to have occurred with the successors of Queen Nzinga until 1744, when the Queen<sup>3</sup> provoked a war by killing a white trader and robbing pumbeiros: the result of which was the capture of her capital by

<sup>1</sup> This may have been Kasanji ka kinjuri, born in 1608, and baptised by Antonio of Serraveza in 1655, and named D. Pasquale (Cavazzi, p. 784).

<sup>2</sup> Lopes de Lima, *Ensaio*, iii, p. xxxii, says he was assassinated by a Portuguese soldier.

<sup>3</sup> All the successors of the famous Queen, as also her people and country, are called Nzinga (Ginga) by Portuguese authors.

Bartholomeu Duarte de Sequeira, and the cession of the Kinalunga Islands to Portugal.<sup>1</sup>

### THE LAST OF THE KINGS OF NDONGO, 1671.

We have seen that D. João de Souza Ngola ari had been installed as the first King of Ndongo, recognised by the Portuguese (see p. 164), about 1627, and had been succeeded by D. Filippe de Souza, who died in 1660, and by João II. The hope that this tributary would prove a staunch ally of the Portuguese was not to be realised, for immediately after the disastrous campaign against Sonyo (see p. 131), in 1670, D. João Ngola ari raised the standard of rebellion, and invaded the district of Mbaka. The Governor, Francisco de Tavora,<sup>2</sup> a future Viceroy of India, who on account of his youth (he was only 23 years of age) and supposed prudence had been nick-named *o menino prudente*, despatched his captain-major, Luiz Lopes de Sequeira, to reduce the rebel to obedience. Ngola ari met with a defeat on the river Luchilu, close to the Pedras of Pungu a ndongo, which were considered impregnable. Yet, on a dark night, on November 18th, 1671, Manuel Cortes, the leader of the *guerra preta*, surprised this rocky stronghold. The King himself was taken, and beheaded as a traitor. Thenceforth there was no further need for punitive expeditions on a large scale.

---

<sup>1</sup> Lopes de Lima, *Ensaio*, iii, p. 117, and parte segunda, p. 18, calls them Quinalonga, and there can be no doubt of their identity with the Quihindonga (Kindonga) islands of Cavazzi. The *Catalogo* does not mention this cession.

<sup>2</sup> He had arrived on August 26th, 1669, and spite of his prudence must be held responsible for this disastrous Sonyo campaign.

<sup>3</sup> See Paivo Manso, p. 255, who quotes an anonymous *Relação*, published at Lisbon in 1671; also Cadornega.

## RELATIONS WITH KONGO.

No sooner had the Portuguese regained possession of S. Paulo than the King of Kongo was called to account for having sided with the Dutch and favoured the operations of "foreign" Capuchins. A threatened invasion of his kingdom (1649) speedily led to the conclusion of a treaty of peace (see p. 126). But as the supposed gold and silver mines were not ceded, as promised, the Portuguese once more invaded the country, and in the bloody battle of Ulanga, in 1666, the King lost his life and crown (p. 129). From that time to the close of the century anarchy reigned in Kongo. The disastrous expedition against Sonyo in 1670 (see p. 131) was partly undertaken in order to support one of the many rival kings of that period.

## MINOR PUNITIVE EXPEDITIONS, 1658-95.

João Fernandes Vieira, who had gained fame as the leader of the Portuguese patriots in Brazil, where the capture of Pernambuco had won him the surname of *o hero de nossa idade*, arrived as Governor on April 18th, 1658, and before the close of the year, a serious rebellion broke out in Upper Ngulungu. The captain-major, Bartholomeu de Vasconcellos, took the field, and compelled Ngolome a kayitu (Golome Acaita), to surrender his rocky stronghold after a siege of four months; Tanga a ngongo submitted quietly, but Kiluanji kia kanga (Quiloange Acango), faced the Portuguese four times, and then retired inland without yielding submission.

A second expedition, in the same year, traversed the districts to the south of the Kwanza.<sup>1</sup> It started from

---

<sup>1</sup> Cavazzi, who accompanied this expedition as chaplain, gives a full account of it, without naming the Portuguese commander. His geographical data, as usual, are exceedingly vague: a circumstance all the

Masanganu, and having crossed the Kwanza into Hako was joined by Ngunza mbambe;<sup>1</sup> it entered the district of Kabeza, where the Jaga of Rimba brought further reinforcements. Jaga Ngonga ka anga, the chief of Nsela (Shella), on the river Kuvu, surrendered his capital, Kangunza, by the advice of his diviners, without striking a blow, and submitted to be baptised. The expedition then returned to Mbaka by way of the river Gango and Tamba; whilst Cavazzi, who accompanied it as chaplain, took a more direct road through Kabeza.

After the great victory over the King of Kongo in 1666 (see p. 130), a detachment under Antonio da Silva was sent into the territory of the Ndembu Mutemu Kingengo, whilst another, under Diogo Gomes Morales, raided the villages of Nambua nongo, these chiefs having aided the defeated King.

Kisama, at all times an unruly district, and even now virtually independent, though situated on the sea and within easy reach of Luandu, has repeatedly given trouble to the Portuguese. In 1672, the sobas of the district unsuccessfully assaulted the fort at Muchima. In 1686 they blockaded that fort, until relieved by João de Figueiredo e Souza. In 1689, the sobas Kimone kia sanga and Muchima interfered with the free navigation of the Kwanza, and were punished by the Portuguese leader just named; and in 1695, the rebellion of the soba Katala brought into the field the captain-major, Manuel de Magalhães Leitão.

A rebellion in Lubolo, in 1677, was suppressed by Luiz Lopez de Sequeira. The soba Ngunga mbambe was killed, and his allies, Sakeda, Ngola kitumba, and Ngola Kabuku, were severely punished.

---

<sup>1</sup> This soba had been baptised. In 1684, a brother of his expelled him, but he was reinstated by João de Figueireda e Souza.

Far more serious was an expedition which the Governor, Gonçalo da Costa de Alcaçova Carneiro de Menezes, despatched against the ndembu Mbuilu (Ambuilla), who had expelled the Portuguese residents, robbed the Pumbeiros, and burnt the church. João de Figueireda e Souza, a trusted officer, was given the command; and notwithstanding that the garrison of Masanganu mutinied and refused to join him, he mustered, on May 25th, 1682, a formidable force of six hundred musketeers, forty-two horse, and a *guerra preta* of forty thousand men, with two field guns. Unfortunately, he lost precious time by lingering two months at Kamolembe, where many of his people died; and when at last ready to start, he heard that Mbuila had been reinforced by two "armies" sent to his aid by King Manuel of Kongo<sup>1</sup> and Queen Nzinga, and lost his head. Fortunately for the Portuguese a stroke of paralysis carried off this pusillanimous leader, and his place was taken by Pascoal Rodrigues, a man of much energy, who marched straight upon the mbanza of Mbuilu, and there achieved a great victory. Mbuilu fled to his neighbour and ally Ndamba (Dambe). The number of prisoners taken was so great that it was feared they might endanger the safety of their captors, and they were mercilessly beheaded, a nephew of Mbuilu alone being sent a prisoner to Luandu.<sup>2</sup>

When Pascaol Rodrigues fell ill, the Governor appointed João Baptista de Maia to succeed him. The troops passed the rainy season in barracks. On the return of fine weather, Mbuilu was pursued into the territory of Ndamba and killed. The mbanzas and over one hundred and fifty libatas were burnt. The Ndembu Kabanda, a partisan of

---

<sup>1</sup> From a letter published by Paiva Manso (p. 316), we learn that Mbuilu had begged the King of Kongo to receive him as a vassal.

<sup>2</sup> For King Pedro's letter of thanks for this victory, see *Catalogo*, p. 401. In 1693, massacres of prisoners were strictly prohibited.

Mbuilu, was pursued by the sergeant-major, Lourenço de Barros Morim, and the leader of the *guerra preta*, Gonçalo Borges de Barros, and killed with many of his people. Another ndembu having been installed, and sworn allegiance to the King of Portugal, the army returned to Mbaka, and thence to Lembo near Masanganu. The victorious troops were refused admission into the latter, the garrison of which had mutinied. It was only after the Governor had promised a pardon to the offenders, with the exception of the leaders, that order was restored (1693).

#### BENGUELLA.

S. Filippe de Benguella was founded in 1617 by Manuel Cerveira Pereira, and in 1661 its fortifications were rebuilt by Gaspar de Almeida Silva, whilst Manuel de Tovar Froes fought the neighbouring sobas. A further step in advance was taken in 1682, when the sergeant-major, Pedro da Silva, founded the presidio of Kakonda a velha, in the territory of the soba Bongo. Two years later, in 1684, this presidio was surprised by Bongo, and Manuel da Rocha Soares, its commandant, was killed. Carlos de Lacerda, who was despatched to avenge this outrage, being compelled to fall back before superior forces, João Bráz de Goes, the captain-major of Benguella, himself took the field. The Jaga, deserted by his people, sought refuge with Ngola njimbu (Golla Gimbo), but was pursued and captured,<sup>1</sup> and the present presidio was built eighty miles further inland (1685), in the territory of the soba Kitata. An attempt made by the soba of Huambo (Hiamba), in 1698, to expel the Portuguese was frustrated by Antonio de Faria, its commandant. A more formidable attack by the neighbouring sobas, in 1718, proved equally ineffectual. The Portuguese had thus gained an advanced post nearly one

hundred and fifty miles from the coast, the possession of which opened up to them fresh sources for the supply of slaves, and contributed not a little to the growing prosperity of S. Filippe de Benguella.

### ECCLESIASTICAL AFFAIRS.

The Jesuits were the earliest missionaries in Angola; but it would be in vain to look to them for any precise geographical or historical information, such as is furnished by members of the Society established in other parts of the world. They confined their activity to the seat of Government and its immediate vicinity, and Portuguese authors are severe upon their love of power and covetousness. Their relations with the Governors were on many occasions strained, but it cannot be asserted that the Jesuit Fathers were in every instance in the wrong.<sup>1</sup> As an illustration of their masterfulness, the following incident may serve. In 1661, the Governor, João Fernandez Vieira, very properly ordered that pigs should no longer be allowed to run about the streets of the capital. The Jesuits did not deign to take the slightest notice of this order; and when several of their slaves were arrested for disregarding it, they protested against this exercise of authority, and actually excommunicated the Governor. But the Governor was not to be frightened. He reported the case to his King, D. Affonso VI, and the King in a Royal rescript of December 9th, 1666, severely reproved the Jesuits for their insolence; and threatened, in case of similar conduct, to deprive them of the crown lands, and to take other legal measures against them.

Franciscans (Tertiaries of the Order of St. Joseph) followed the Jesuits in 1604. Then came the Capuchins,

---

<sup>1</sup> The author of a Report referred to below admits that they had

for the most part Italians and Castilians, in 1651; and lastly barefooted Carmelites (*Religiosos de S. Thereza*). Of all these friars the Italian Capuchins alone appear to have done good work; and to members of their Order, and especially to Giovanni Antonio Cavazzi, of Montecuccoli, Antonio Laudati, of Gaeta, and Antonio Zucchelli, of Gradisco, we are indebted for much useful information regarding the people among whom they laboured. Many of the other friars seem to have been men whom their superiors in Europe were glad to part with; and the same may be said with reference to the secular clergy.

A report of the ecclesiastical affairs of Angola and Kongo, drawn up in 1694 by Gonçalo de Alcaçova Carneiro Carvalho da Costa de Menezes, by order of the Governor, presents us with a deplorable picture of the state of affairs in that year. Throughout the country there were only thirty-six friars<sup>1</sup> and twenty-nine secular clergy; and of these as many as twenty-nine had taken up their quarters in the capital. Of fifty churches and chapels, many were without priests, and had fallen into ruins. The village missions (*missões das Sanzalas*) had long been given up, and many baptised negroes had returned to the ancient superstitions. The author proposes the institution of a court of clerics, in order that all lapses of this kind might be punished in accordance with the "sacred canons." A board of missions (*Junta das missões*), which had been created in 1693, and richly endowed,<sup>2</sup> allowed things to drift. Lopes de Lima<sup>3</sup> ascribes the failure of the Christian missions, first, to the small number of missionaries and priests; secondly, to the corruption of the clergy; and thirdly, to the slave-trade.

---

<sup>1</sup> Seventeen Capuchins, eight Jesuits, seven Franciscans, and four Carmelites.

<sup>2</sup> In 1709 there were seven million reis in its treasury.

## MEASURES OF ADMINISTRATION.

João Fernandez Vieira must be credited with the first serious attempt to organise the military forces of the country (1660), by raising a regiment, or *terço*, of infantry, for Luandu, and a company for each presidio. These "regulars" were to be supported by the *guerra preta*, or *empacaceiros*. A company of cavalry was added to the regular troops in 1672; and the exemption from every kind of military service conferred upon the inhabitants of Luandu since 1660 was partly abolished in 1695, and orders given for the organisation of a *terço* of *ordenanças* (militia) for Luandu, and of seventeen companies for the districts and presidios. The fortifications of Luandu had been much improved since the expulsion of the Dutch. The fort of S. Miguel, at Luandu, which was begun in 1638, had been completed by D. João de Lencastre in 1689; and at the close of the century there existed forts, sufficiently strong to resist native attack, at Muchima, Masanganu, Kambambe, Pungu a ndonga, Mbaka, S. Filippe de Benguella, and Kakonda.

The only measure bearing upon the civil administration of the country seems to have been the publication of a *Regimento* for the guidance of officers of revenue and of justice, in 1675. At the same time, an extra export-duty of ten testões<sup>1</sup> was ordered to be paid on every slave, the proceeds to go towards the dowry of Queen Catherine, the consort of Charles II of England.

The introduction of copper coins (*makutas*) into Luandu, in 1624, caused much dissatisfaction, and actually led to a mutiny of the troops, who not unnaturally felt aggrieved at being expected to accept 200 reis in copper as an equivalent of a native cloth, up to that time valued at 700.

reis.<sup>1</sup> The mutiny was suppressed, and the five ringleaders were executed. In the interior of the country, the ancient currency remained in force, larger amounts being paid in merchandise (*fazenda de lei*), whilst smaller sums were paid in *zimpos* (njimbu) or cowries, *libongos* (mbongo, plural jimbongo), or square pieces of native cloth, or blocks of rock-salt.

The only attempt at geographical exploration was that of José de Roza, who left Masanganu in 1678, for the lower Zambezi, but turned back after only a few days' journey, owing to the hostility of the natives.

At the end of the seventeenth century, Portugal held sway over a territory of over fifty thousand square miles; she maintained fortified posts far inland; her traders had penetrated as far as the upper Kwanza; and on the coast she held the prosperous cities of S. Paulo de Luandu and S. Filippe de Benguella. But this prosperity depended almost exclusively upon the slave trade. Scarcely any attempt had been made to develop the great natural resources of the country, and even the food of the inhabitants was still largely supplied by the Brazils. The colonists introduced included too large a criminal element; the Government officials were more intent upon realising large fortunes<sup>2</sup> than permanently benefiting the country they had been sent to rule; and even among the preachers of the gospel were men quite unfit to hold the office which they filled. And this deplorable state of affairs continued long beyond the period with which we have dealt. Lopes de

---

<sup>1</sup> The assumed value of the *makuta* was 50 reis; its actual value, in silver, only 30 reis. There were pieces of half *makutas* and of quarter *makutas*, popularly called *paka*.

<sup>2</sup> Zucchelli (p. xvii, § 11), tells us that when Luiz Cezar de Menezes returned to Rio, in 1701, he carried away with him 1,500,000 crusados (£200,000), realised in the slave trade.

Lima<sup>1</sup> calls D. Francisco Innocencio de Sousa Coutinho, who was appointed in 1764, the "first Governor who undertook to civilise this semi-barbarous colony; and who during his rule of eight years and a-half, did more in that sense than all his predecessors had ever thought of." Up to his time, "Governors, captains, magistrates, men of the church and the cloister" were only intent upon dividing the spoils of office, and acted in the most scandalous manner.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Ensaio*, iii, p. xxxiv.





## APPENDIX V.

---

### A LIST OF THE GOVERNORS OF ANGOLA, 1575-1702.

*The date of arrival and departure are given, unless stated otherwise.*

---

1. Paulo Dias de Novaes, February, 1575 ; October, 1589.
- 2.<sup>1</sup> Luiz Serrão, captain-major, 1589-91.
- 3.<sup>1</sup> André Ferreira Pereira, 1591, to June, 1592.
4. D. Francisco d'Almeida, June 24th, 1592, to April 8th, 1593.
- 5.<sup>1</sup> D. Jeronymo d'Almeida, 1593-4.
6. João Furtado de Mendonça, August 1st, 1594, to 1602.
7. João Rodrigues Coutinho, appointed January 23rd, 1601 ; arrived in 1602.
- 8.<sup>1</sup> Manuel Cerveira Pereira, 1603-7.
9. D. Manuel Pereira Forjaz, end of 1607 ; died April 11th, 1611.
- 10.<sup>1</sup> Bento Banha Cardoso, captain-major, elected April 15th, 1611 to 1615.
11. Manuel Cerveira Pereira, second term of office, 1615 to 1617.
12. Luiz Mendes de Vasconcellos, November, 1617, to 1621.

---

<sup>1</sup> Provincial Governors not appointed by the King, but elected by the local authorities or the troops.

13. João Corrêa de Souza, September, 1621; departed 1623.

14<sup>1</sup>. Pedro de Souza Coelho, captain-major, during five months, 1623.

15.<sup>1</sup> D. Simão de Mascarenhas, Bishop of Kongo and Angola, 1623 to 1624.

16. Fernão de Souza, appointed October 21st, 1623; in possession February, 1624, to 1630.

17. D. Manuel Pereira Coutinho, 1630 to 1634.

18. Francisco de Vasconcellos da Cunha, 1634 to 1639.

19. Pedro Cezar de Menezes, 1639 to 1645.

20. Francisco de Sotto-maior, September, 1645, to May, 1646.

21<sup>1</sup>. Bartholomeu de Vasconcellos da Cunha, Antonio Texeira de Mendonça, and João Juzarte de Andrada, the captains-major, 1646 to 1648.

22. Salvador Corrêa de Sá Benevides, August, 1648 to 1651.

23. Rodrigo de Miranda Henriques, October, 1651; died 1653.

24.<sup>1</sup> Bartholomeu de Vasconcellos da Cunha, captain-major, 1653 to 1655.

25. Luiz Martins de Souza Chichorro, October, 1655 to 1658.

He was killed in an engagement with a Dutch corsair, on the voyage to Brazil.

26. João Fernandez Vieira, 1658 to 1661.

27. André Vidal de Negreiros, May 10th, 1661, to August, 1666.

28. Tristão da Cunha, August, 1666, to January, 1667; when the people compelled him to depart in the vessel in which he had come.

---

<sup>1</sup> Provincial Governors not appointed by the King, but elected by the local authorities or the troops.

29.<sup>1</sup> Antonio de Araujo e Azevedo, president of the Camara of Luandu, 1667 to 1669.

30. Francisco de Tavora, August 26th, 1669, to 1676.

31. Ayres de Saldanha de Menezes e Souza, August 25th, 1676, to 1680.

32. João da Silva e Souza, September 11th, 1680, to 1684.

33. Luiz Lobo da Silva, September 12th, 1684, to 1688.

34. D. João de Lencastre, September 8th, 1688, to 1691.

35. Gonçalo da Costa de Alcaçova Carneiro de Menezes, November 1st, 1691, to 1694.

36. Henrique Jaques de Magalhães, November 3rd, 1694, to 1697.

37. Luiz Cezar de Menezes, November 9th, 1697, to 1700.

38. Bernardo de Tavora Souza Tavares, September 5th, 1700, to 1702.

---

<sup>1</sup> Provincial Governors not appointed by the King, but elected by the local authorities or the troops.



## INDEX AND GLOSSARY.

For information additional to that given in the body of this volume, consult *Bramas*, *Margarita*, *Ostrich Eggs*.

Included in this Index are all the geographical names mentioned by Duarte Lopes (*Pigafetta's Report of the Kingdom of Congo*), as also many names referred to by Cavazzi, Paiva Manso, and others.

The approximate geographical position is given in degrees and tenths of degrees.

For names beginning with *C*, *Ch*, or *Qu*, see also *K*.

- Abundu**, pl. of *mbundu*, a slave. In Angola the natives generally are called *Ambundu*.
- Aca mochana**. See *Aki musanu*.
- Acca**, a corruption of *Aki*, followers.
- Achelunda**. See *Aquilunda*.
- Adenda**. See *Ndemba*.
- Administration** of natives, 161
- Affonso VI**, King of Portugal, 183
- Affonso I**, King of Kongo, 110, 136
- Affonso II**, King of Kongo, 119, 136
- Affonso III**, King of Kongo, 131, 137
- Agag**, are not Jaga, 150
- Aghirimba**, according to D. Lopez, the ancient name for *Mbata*, but called *Agisymba* on his map, and evidently Ptolemy's region of that name, 112
- Agua Kaiongo** (Augoy cayango), 9.8 S., 14.2 E., 37; battle of 1603, 156
- Agua rozada**, King of Kongo (Pedro IV), 133, 137
- Aguiar**, Alvaro, 175
- Aguiar**, Francisco de, 175
- Aguiar**, Ruy d', 113
- Aiacca**. See *Ayaka*.
- Aki**, followers,
- Akimbolo** (Aquibolo), about 9.3 S., 14.9 E., 149
- Aki musanu** (Acamochana), a soba, 8.9 S., 13.8 E., 172
- Albinos**, 48, 81
- Alemquer**, Pero d', pilot, 108
- Alguns documentos**, quoted, 112, 139, 140
- Almadias**, Golfo das, undoubtedly Kabinda Bay (5.5 S.), but Battell's *B. da Almadias*, 43, is identical with Black Point Bay, 4.8 S., 43
- Almeida**, D. Francisco, 153, 188
- Almeida**, D. Jeronymo, 153, 154, 188
- Almeida**, João Soares de, 132
- Alvares**, Gaspar (or Gonçalves), 169
- Alvaro I**, King of Kongo, 119, 136
- Alvaro II**, King of Kongo, 121, 136
- Alvaro III**, King of Kongo, 122, 137
- Alvaro IV**, King of Kongo, 124, 137
- Alvaro V**, King of Kongo, 124, 137
- Alvaro VI**, King of Kongo, 125, 137
- Alvaro VII**, King of Kongo, 130, 137
- Alvaro VIII**, King of Kongo, 131, 137
- Alvaro IX**, King of Kongo, 130, 133, 137
- Alvaro**, Frei, the assassin, 115
- Alvaro Gonçalves Bay**, called *Alvaro Martins' Bay* on map (D. Lopez); identical with Yumba Bay, 3.3 S., 10.5 E.
- Ambaca**. See *Mbaka*.
- Ambasse**, or Ambresa, a corruption of *mbazi* or *mbaji*. See *S. Salvador*.
- Ambriz** (Mbidihi or Mbirihi) river, 7.3 S., 12.9 E., 131, 132
- Amboella**. See *Mbwela*.
- Ambrosio I**, King of Kongo, 124, 137
- Ambuilla**. See *Mbuila*.
- Ambuila dua**. See *Mbuila anduwa*.
- Ambandu**, i.e., negroes (in Kongo *abundu*=slaves), 103, 112
- Ambus** (D. Lopez), tribe between coast and Anzica; perhaps the *Balumbu*. Mbu=ocean.
- Ampango**. See *Mpangu*.
- Amulaza**, Congo de, 6.0 S., 16.3 E.
- Andala mbandos** (Ndala mbandu), or Endalla nbondos, 17
- Andrada**, João-Juzarte, 174, 189

**André mulaza**, King of Kongo, 132, 137  
**Angazi**, or Engazi (D. Lopez), Ingasia (Battell). *See* Ngazi.  
**Angeka**, or Engeco (nsiku, Chimpanzee), 54  
**Angelo** of Valenza, capuchin, 126  
**Angica** of Knivet, are the Anzica.  
**Angoi**. *See* Ngoya.  
**Angola**, history, 139; Knivet's account, 93  
**Angola**. *See* Ngola.  
**Angoleme** (Ngolome) of Jesuits was Ngola's capital in 1565, 143  
**Anguolome aquitambo** (Ngwalema a kitambu), 9. S., 15.8 E.; battle 143, 148  
**Angoy kayonga**, a chief. *See* Agoa Kaiongo.  
**Antelopes**, 40  
**Antonio I**, King of Kongo, 129, 137  
**Antonio**, Friar, a Franciscan, 110  
**Antonio**, de Denis, or Diogo de Vilhégas, 114  
**Antonio** of Serravezza, Capuchin, 177  
**Antonio Laudati**, of Gaeta, 148 n., 140, 146, 176, 184  
**Anville**, B. d', his maps, xv  
**Anzele** (D. Lopez) (Kanzele), fort, in Lower Ngulungu, 9. S., 13.8 E., 147  
**Anzicana**, Anzichi, Anziques, Mundiqueti, etc., the people of the Makoko (*Anseke*, "distant," "remote"), are undoubtedly the Bateke about Stanley Pool. Knivet's account, 10, 91; war with them, 112  
**Aquilunda**, or Achelunda (D. Lopez), a supposed lake, 74; Douville (*Voyage au Congo*, ii, 173), suggests that the name meant "heré (Aqui) is Lunda."  
**Aquibolo**. *See* Akimbolo.  
**Aquisyma** (D. Lopez), misprint for Agisymba.  
**Aragão**, Balth. Rebello de, xviii, 27, 153, 157, 158; attempt to cross Africa, 161; on Ouando, 206  
**Araujo**, João, 175  
**Araujo e Azevedo**, Antonio de, 190  
**Araujo e Azevedo**, João, 157, 166  
**Argento**, Monti dell (D. Lopez), supposed "Silver Mountains" (Serra da Prata) near Kambambe.  
**Ari**, or Hary, a district, 9.0 S., 15.5 E. *See* Ngola Ari.  
**Armada**, its destruction in 1588, xiv, 169  
**Armistice** of 1609-21, 170; or 1641, 171

**Augoykayango**. *See* Agoa Kaiongo.  
**Austin Friars** in Kongo, 114  
**Axila mbanza**. *See* Shilambanza.  
**Ayaka** (Aiacca), 7.5 S., 18.0 E., their invasion of Kongo, 120; are not identical with Jaga, 149  
**Bagamidri**. D. Lopez calls it a river, separating Mataman and Monomotapa, but it is clearly *Bege meder* of Abyssinia gone astray.  
**Bahia das Vaccas**, 12.9 S., 13.4 E., 16, 29, 160  
**Bailundo** (Mbalundu), 12.2 S., 19.7 E., 172  
**Bakkebakke** (Mbakambaka), diminutive of Mbaka, dwarf, and according to Dennett, also the name of a fetish *Shibingo* which prevents growth. *See* Matimba.  
**Bamba**. *See* Mbamba.  
**Bamba ampungo**. *See* Mbamba a mpungu.  
**Bambala** (Mbala, Mbambela), a district, 10.6 S., 14.5 E., 22  
**Bamba-tunga** (Mbamba-tungu), soba, 9.6 S., 14.4 E., 147, 158  
**Bananas**, 68  
**Bancare** (D. Lopez), a tributary of the Kongo, east of Nsundi.  
**Bangala**, the people of the Jaga, 9.5 S., 13.0 E., 84, 149  
**Bango aquitambo** (Bangu a Kitambu), missionary station, 9.1 S., 14.9 E.  
**Bango-bango**. *See* Bangu-bangu.  
**Bangono**, mani, in hills north of Dande River, 8.5 S., 13.6 E., 12  
**Bangu**, kingdom, "trunk" of Kongo, 24; perhaps *Bangu* on the river Mbengu. Bangu signifies an acclivity, and the name occurs frequently.  
**Bangu**, a soba in Angola, 164  
**Bangu-bangu**, soba near Nzenza a ngombe, 168  
**Banna** (Banya), river, 3.5 S., 11.0 E., 53  
**Banyan-tree**, 18, 76, 77  
**Baobab**, 24, 68, 71  
**Baptista**, João, bishop, 118  
**Baptista**, Manuel, bishop, 118, 121, 122  
**Barama**. *See* Bramas.  
**Barbara**, Kambe, sister of Queen Nzinga, 166, 173, 176  
**Barbela** (Berbela), river, a tributary of the Kongo, which flows through Mpangu. According to L. Magyar

- (*Peterm. Mitt.* 1857, p. 187); the south arm of the Kongo opposite Mboma, is known as Barbela.
- Barkcloth**, 18, 28, 77
- Barros**, Gonzalo Borges de, 181
- Barros**, João de, quoted, 108
- Barreira**, F. Balthasar, Jesuit, 144, 147
- Barreiras**, "cliffs." *Barreiras vermelhas*, north of Zaire, 5.3 S.; *Ponta das barreiras*, 3.2 S.
- Bastian**, Dr. A., quoted, 51, 52, 72, 73, 78, 104, 204
- Bateke**, tribe are identical with the Mundequetes, Anziquetes, Anzicanas, etc., 109
- Batta** (Mbata), province, Mbanza, 5.8 S., 15.4 E., 39, 104, 120
- Battell**, Andrew, character of his narrative, x; chronology of his voyages, xiii; account of "adventures," 1-70; notes on the religion and customs, 71-87
- Batumba**, in Kongoese, a dwarf. See Matimba.
- Bavagul**. See Bravagul (D. Lopez).
- Beads**, as ornaments, 9, 17, 32
- Beehives**, 68, 77
- Beja**, Feira de, 9.8 S., 15.3 E., 168
- Bembe** (Mbembe), according to Cavazzi, p. 13, etc., a vast district extending from the Kwanza to the Kunene (which separates it from Benguella), traversed by the river Kutato, and inhabited by the Binbundo. It included all Lubolo, and Kuengo (Kemgo), the residence of Ngola Kakanje (according to Cadornega, a chief of Hako) was its capital. I believe it to be the same as Chimbebe (*q.v.*), 166
- Bembem** (Mbembe), a village between Luanda and R. Mbengu, 8.8 S., 13.4 E.
- Benevides**. See Sá de Benevides.
- Bengledi** (D. Lopez), a river, almost certainly a misprint for Benguella.
- Bengo**, district of Angola, at mouth of R. Mbengu, or Nzenza, 8.7 S., 13.3 E.
- Bengo**, river (Mbengu), 39, 155, 168
- Benguella** (Mbangela), Battell's visit, 16; conquest, 159; events since 1617, 182
- Benguella a velha**, 10.8 S., 13.8 E., 147
- Benomotapa**. See Mwana mtapa.
- Bentley**, Rev. W. H., quoted, xx, 7, 25, 33, 34, 42, 43, 45, 57, 59, 60, 66, 73, 95, 104, 111
- Berbela**, or Verbela (D. Lopez), is evidently identical with the Barbela river, *q.v.*
- Bermudez**, João, Abyssinian missionary, 150
- Bernardo I**, King of Kongo, 119, 136
- Bernardo II**, King of Kongo, 122, 137
- Bié** (Bihe), 12.3 S., 16.8 E., 151, 152
- Binbundo**, or Va-nano, the hill tribes of Benguella, 13.0 S., 15.5 E., 151
- Binger**, Captain, xvii
- Binguelle** (Cavazzi, ii), a misprint for Benguella.
- Bock** (Mbuku), mani, 4.9 S., 12.3 E. There are many other Mbukus.
- Boehr**, Dr. M., quoted, 34, 73
- Boenza**, or Benza (Mbensa), about 4.6 S., 15.0 E.
- Boma** (Mboma) 5.8 S., 13.1 E.
- Bonaventura**, of Alessano, Capuchin, 126
- Bonaventura**, of Correglia, Capuchin, 126 n.
- Bonaventura Sardo** (the Sardinian), Capuchin, 127
- Bonaventura**, of Sorrento, a Capuchin, 128
- Bondo**, province, or rather a tribe, 10.0 S., 17.0 E.
- Bongo**, 32, the country of the Babongo dwarfs
- Bongo soba**, on site of Kakonda a velha, 182
- Boreras rosas** (D. Lopez), should be Barreiras vermelhas, 5.4 S., 12.2 E.
- Borgia**, D. Gaspar, 167
- Bosso**, a rock, perhaps Mpozo hills, opposite Vivi.
- Bowdich**, T. E., quoted, 149
- Bozanga**, kingdom in Kongo (Garcia Mendes, 8), identical either with Nsanga or Nsongo? (*q.v.*).
- Bramas**, 677 n. According to D. Lopez, the original inhabitants of all Luangu. According to A. Forêt (*Compte rendu* of Paris Geog. Soc., 1894, p. 431), a trading tribe called Barama, or Ivarrama, still lives to N.E. of Nyange, 2.7 S., 10.5 E. See note, p. 77
- Braun**, Samuel, quoted, x, 122, 170
- Bravaghul**, or Bavagul (D. Lopez), a river; rises in Mountains of Moon, and flows to Magnice, *i.e.*, to Delagoa Bay.

- Brito**, Domingos d'Abreu de, quoted, 121, 144, 145, 147, 153  
**Brito**, João Antonio de, 179  
**Brito**, Manuel Rebello de, 129  
**Broeck**, Pieter van der, his journals, x  
**Brusciotto**, P. Giacinto, of Vetralla, a Capuchin, 128  
**Bruto**, Antonio, 168; his death, 172  
**Bruto**, a "penedo" named after him, 9.1 S., 13.7 E., 146  
**Bula**. See Mbula.  
**Bulhão**, Fernão Rodrigues, 115  
**Bumbe** (Mbumbi), mani S. of River Loje, 7.8 S., 13.6 E., 123  
**Bumbelungu** (Mbumbu a lungu), a village near mouth of Kwanza, where Dias' vessels awaited his return, 9.3 S., 13.2 E.  
**Bumba andalla**, (Mbumbu a ndala), a soba in Lamba, 159  
**Bunda** means family, kin; hence Binbundo (*sing.* Kibundo), kinsfolk (Nogueira, *A raça negra*, 255). See also Abundu.  
**Burial**, 34, 73  
**Burton**, Sir R. F., 24, 29, 54, 68
- Cabech**, (Kabeka), soba on the Kwanza, 9.5 S., 14.1 E., 10, 11  
**Cabango** (Kabangu, or Chibanga), mani, in Luangu, 50  
**Cabazo**, should be Kabasa, capital.  
**Cabenda** (Kabinda), port, 5.5 S., 12.2 E., 42  
**Cabreira**, Antonio Araujo, 129  
**Cachoeira** (D. Lopez), is the Portuguese for cataract, and refers to the Falls of the lower Zaire.  
**Cacinga** (Kasinga), river, a tributary of the Barbela, in Mbata (D. Lopez).  
**Cacongo** river, or Chilungu, 5.1 S., 12.1 E., 42  
**Cacongo**, (Chikongo), aromatic wood, 16  
**Caçuto** (Nsaku), Cão's hostage, 106, 107, 108  
**Cadornega**, quoted, 38, 72, 131, 140, 142, 163  
**Cafuche**. See Kafuche.  
**Calabes Island** (Ilha des Calabaças), 8. See Cavalli.  
**Calando** (Kalandu), a Jaga, 31, should be *Calandula*. Cavazzi, however, (p. 656) mentions a Jaga *Calenda*.  
**Calicansamba** (Katikasamba, or Kachisamba), a chief, 10.7 S., 14.5 E., 22, 24, 25  
**Calango** (Kalungu), town in Lubolu, 10.30 S., 14.5 E., 26
- Calongo** (Chilunga), district north of river Kuilu, 4.1 S., 11.4 E., 52  
**Camara**, Portuguese, a municipal council.  
**Camissa**, flows out of Lake Gale (*q.v.*), and enters the sea as *Rio doce* at the Cape of Good Hope (D. Lopez).  
**Cango** (Nkanga, Chinkanga), a district of Luengu, 3.9 S., 12.3 E., 52  
**Cannibalism**, 31, 144, 162  
**Cão**, Diogo, discovery of Kongo, 105; second voyage, 107  
**Cão**, Gaspar, Bishop of S. Thomé, 118, 121, 145  
**Caoalla** (Kawala), between Luandu and Masanganu; fight 1648, 174  
**Capello** and Ivens, quoted, 17, 27, 28, 32, 34, 67, 73, 140, 141, 151  
**Capuchins** in Kongo, 123, 126, 127, 128, 183; in Angola, 183  
**Cardoso**, Bento de Banha, 158, 166, 188  
**Cardoso**, João, 175  
**Cardoso**, Domingos, Jesuit, 127  
**Carli**, Dionigi, Capuchin, 132  
**Carmelites** in Angola, 189  
**Carneiro**, J. V., quoted, 14, 141, 167, 206
- Carrasco**, José, 176  
**Carvalho**, H. B. de, quoted, 20, 32, 72, 84, 103, 150, 151, 202  
**Casama** of Battell, 27, is *Kisama*.  
**Casanza** (Kasanza), a chief, 8.9 S., 13.7 E., 11, 40, 41  
**Cashil** (Kati, Kachi, or Kasila), chief, 10.8 S., 14.3 E., 23-25  
**Cashindcabar** (Kashinda kabare), mountains, 10.6 S., 14.6 E., 26  
**Castellobranco**. See Mendes.  
**Castello d'Alter pedroso**, cliff, 13.3 S., 12.7 E., 106  
**Castro**, Balthasar de, 116, 139, 152  
*Catalogo*, quoted, xx, 145, 147, 159, 163, 166, 169, 172, 178, 181  
**Catharina**, Cabo de S., 1.8 S., 9.3 E.  
**Catherine**, Queen of England, 185  
**Catherine**, Queen of Portugal, 119  
**Cauo**, Cavao of Cadornega, 9. S., 14.2 E., 37  
**Cavalli**, isola (D. Lopez). See Hippopotamus Island.  
**Cavangongo**, Motemo, 8.4 S., 13.4 E.; a second *Cavangongo*, 8.2 S., 15.3 E.  
**Cavazzi**, quoted, xix, 15, 29, 32, 38, 110, 111, 119, 123, 124, 126, 130, 140, 141, 148, 152, 153, 163, 165, 166, 167, 176, 179, 184, 193

**Cavendish**, Thomas, his voyage, 89  
**Cay**, or **Caye** (Kaia), river and town, 4.8 S., 12.0 E., 42, 50  
**Cedars**, 24  
**Chabonda** (D. Lopez). *See* Kabanda.  
**Chatelein**, Héli, quoted, 140  
**Chekoke**, a fetish, 82  
**Chichorro**. *See* Souza Chichorro.  
**Chiluangu**, 5.2 S., 12.1 E., 42  
**Chilunga** (Calongo), 4.1 S., 11.4 E., 52  
**Chimbebe**. *See* Kimbebe.  
**Chimpanzee**, 54  
**Chinchengo** (Ki-nkenge) in Mbamba, on border of Angola (D. Lopez), 8.0 E., 15.0 E.  
**Church**, Col. G. Earl, on Knivet's adventures, 90  
**Circumcision**, 57  
**Civet Cats**, 32, 111  
**Climbebe** (D. Lopez), a misprint for Qui mbebe.  
**Coandres**, perhaps the *Mukwanda*, a tribe to S. of Benguella, 13.5 S., 13.0 E.  
**Coanga** (Cavazzi, 440), a territory near Masanganu.  
**Coango**. *See* Kwangu.  
**Coanza**. *See* Kwanza.  
**Coari river** (D. Lopez), perhaps Kùari, a river flowing towards Ari.  
**Coat-of-arms** of Kongo, 112  
**Cocke**, Abraham, his voyages, 1, 5; his identity, 6, 8, 9  
**Coelho**, F. A., quoted, 10  
**Coelho**, Pedro de Souza, 163, 168, 189  
**Coelho**, F. Antonio, 167  
**Colos**, Diogo Rodrigo das, 147  
**Combrecailanga** (Kumba ria kailanga), village, about 8.9 S., 14.1 E., 14  
**Concobella** (Konko a bele), on N. bank of the Zaire, below Stanley Pool.  
**Congere amulaza** (Kongo dia mulaza), 6.0 S., 16.3 E.  
**Congre a molal** (Kongo dia mulai?) name by which the Anzichi (Anzica), are known in Luangu (D. Lopez).  
**Consa**, a misprint for Coanza (Kwanza).  
**Copper mines**, 17, 18, 31, 43, 111, 115, 119, 123, 160  
**Copper coins**, introduction of, 185  
**Cordeiro**, Luciano, quoted, xvi, 37, 155  
**Corimba**. *See* Kurimba.

**Cortes**, Manuel, 178  
**Costa**, André da, 172  
**Coste**, Sebastien da, 122  
**Costa de Alcaçova Carneiro de Menezes**, Gonçalo da, 190  
**Coua** (Kuvu) river, 10.9 S., 13.9 E., 19, 20, 161  
**Coutinho**, D. Francisco Innocencia de Souza, 187  
**Coutinho**, João Rodrigues, 36, 136, 188  
**Coutinho**, D. Manuel Pereira, 189  
**Cowrie fishery** at Luandu, 96  
**Crocodiles**, 11, 69, 75  
**Cross**, Cape, 21.8 S., 107  
**Crystal mountain** (D. Lopez) in Nsundi.  
**Cuigij** (Cavazzi), perhaps = Muija or Muguije, "river," 9.7 S., 16.0 E.  
**Cunha**, Jacome da, companion of Dias, 147  
**Cunha**, Tristão da, 189  
**Cunha**, Vasconcellos da. *See* Vasconcellos.  
**Dambe** (Ndambe), a territory near Mbaila, 7.8 S., 19.6 E., 181  
**Dande** (Dandi), river, 8.5 S., 13.3 E., 11, 39, 117, 120, 123, 128, 144  
**Dangi** (Ndangi), island in Kwanza, 9.8 S., 15.9 E. (?), 165, 166, 167  
**Daniel de Guzman**, King of Kongo, 131, 137  
**Dapper**, quoted, xix, 9, 19, 32, 45, 48, 105, 125, 168  
**Degrandpré**, quoted, 72, 104  
**Demba** (Ndemba), salt-mine, 9.9 S., 13.8 E., 36, 37, 154, 162  
**Dembo**. *See* Ndembu.  
**Dennett**, R. E., quoted, xvii, 17, 21, 31, 40, 44-51, 56, 60, 61, 66, 79, 80, 104, 192  
**Dias de Novaes**, Bartholomeu, 107, 108  
**Dias de Novaes**, Paulo, 120, 121, 142, 144, 148, 180  
**Dias**, Jacome, priest, 118  
**Dickens**, Charles, quoted, 25  
**Diniz**, Antonio, quoted, 162  
**Diogo**, King of Kongo, 117, 136  
**Diogo de Vilhégas**, or Antonio de Denis, Franciscan friar, 114  
**Divination**, 33, 86, 129, 176  
**Dogs**, 33, 86  
**Dolphins**, 4  
**Dombe** (Ndombe), in Benguella, 13.8 S., 13.3 E., 17, 160  
**Dominicans**, 108, 114, 144  
**Dondo** (Ndundu) of Battell are

- Dondo** (Ndondo), feira, 9.7 S., 14.5 E., 168  
**Dongo**, 20, 26, is *Pungu a ndongo*.  
**Dongy** (Ndongazi?), a Jaga (Cavazzi, 86, 200), 152  
**Douville**, quoted, 149, 192  
**Drinking** customs, 32, 45  
**Drums**, 33, 34  
**Duarte**, V. J., quoted, 143, 205  
**Du Chaillu**, quoted, 52, 54  
**Dumbe a Pepo**, 8.63 S., 15.1 E.  
**Dumbe a Zocche** (D. Lopez), a lake fed by streams rising in the Monti nevosi; most likely the Dembea lake of Abyssinia.  
**Dunda**, or Dondo (Ndundu) are Albinos, 48, 81  
**Duque**, João, 175  
**Dutch**, embassy to Kongo, 125; traders in Kongo, 121, 123, 131, 161, 170; occupation of Angola, 169-174; piracies, 170  
**Ecclesiastical** state of Angola, 183  
**Egyptians**, or gypsies, 10 n.  
**Elambe**. See Lamba.  
**Electric Fish**, 40  
**Elembe**, a Jaga, 185  
**Elephants**, how trapped, 97; value of tails, 9, 58  
**Eleusine**, 67  
**Elizabeth**, Queen, 38  
**Embacca**. See Mbaka.  
**Embo**, or Huembo, a marquisate of Kongo (Paiva Manso, 175). See Wembo.  
**Emcus** of Zucchelli = *Nkusu*.  
**Empacaceiros**, from *Pakasa*, buffalo, originally buffalo-hunters, then native militia-men. Supposed secret society, 152, 185.  
**Encoge**, should be Nkoshi, lion.  
**Endalla nbondo**, or Andala mbundos, 17  
**Engase**, or Angaze (D. Lopez), is Battell's Ingasia. See Ngazi.  
**Engeriay**, a tree, 15  
**English** pirates, 175  
**Engombe**, or Ingombe. See Ngombe.  
**Engombia**. See Ngombe.  
**Engoy** (Ngoyo), 42, 104  
**Engracia Funji**, sister of Queen Nzinga, a prisoner, 166; strangled, 173  
**Enriques**, Duarte Dias, 162  
**Ensala**. See Nsala.  
**Esiquilo** (Esikilu), birthplace of D. Alvaro I., on the road from S. Salvador to Nsundi (Cavazzi, 105), 15.5 S., 15.5 E. (2)  
**Escovar**, Pero d', pilot, 108  
**Espiritu Santo**, Serra do, 2.8 S., 10.2 E.  
**Eucher**, F., quoted, 108, 111, 119, 127  
**Ezikongos**, the people of Kongo, 130  
**Fajardo**, A. Beserra, quoted, 158  
**Falcão**, Luiz de Figueirido, quoted, 162  
**Falkenstein**, quoted, 26, 52, 77, 104  
**Famine** in Luandu, 168  
**Faria**, Antonio de, 182  
**Feira** (Portuguese), fair, market.  
**Ferreira**, F. de Salles, quoted, 203  
**Ferreira**, Jacome, 170 n.  
**Ferro**, serra do (iron mountains) to S. of Kwanza, 10.6 S., 15.2 E.  
**Fetishes**, 24, 41; underground, 49, 81; Maramba fetish, 56, 82; possessed of a fetish, 182; destruction by missionaries, 114  
**Ficalho**, quoted, 7, 15, 16, 21, 24, 43, 67  
**Figueirido e Souza**, João de, 180, 181  
**Finda**. See Mfinda.  
**Fishing**, 166  
**Flemish** immigrants in Angola, 147  
**Flores**, Fr. Antonio, quoted, 198  
**Fonseca**, Luis Simplicio, quoted, 155  
**Fonseca**, Pedro da, 144, 145  
**Forét**, A., quoted, 193  
**Forjaz**, D. Manuel Pereira, 157, 161, 188  
**Foster**, Mr. W., xvii  
**Fragio**, Francisco, capuchin, 126  
**Franciscans** in Angola, 108, 114, 183  
**Francisco**, King of Kongo, 117, 136  
**Francisco** of Pavia, capuchin, 133  
**Francisco** of Veas, 126 n.  
**Freddi**, monti. See Fria.  
**French** pirates, 175  
**Fria**, serra ("Cold Mountains"), on Pigafetta's map, in 17.5 S.; the *Monti Freddi* ("cold mountains") of the text, stated to be known to the Portuguese as *Monti nevosi* ("snowy mountains"). Modern maps show a *Serra da neve* in 14.0 S.; but as I am not aware that snow ever fell in these mountains, *neve* may be an ancient misprint for *nevoas* (mists). The *Serra Fria* may possibly be connected with the *Cabo Frio*, thus named because of the cold current which washes it.

- Froes**, Manuel de Tovar, 182  
**Fumacongo**, (mfumu ekongo), a village (Cavazzi, 416).  
**Funerals**, 78  
**Funji**. See Engracia.  
**Furtado**, Tristão de Mendonça, 170
- Gaga**, 13, are the Jaga.  
**Gale**, according to Pigafetta a lake giving rise to the river *Camissa*, rashly supposed to represent Lake Ngami, but copied from more ancient maps, upon which are to be read the names *Gale* (Galla), *Adia*, *Vaby* (Webi), etc. Hence a lake in the Galla country, south of Abyssinia.  
**Galla**, are not Jaga, 150  
**Gangella**. See Ngangela.  
**Gango**, river, 9.8 S., 75.5 E., 180  
**Gangue** (Gange), village near Masanganu, with church S. Antonio.  
**Garcia I.**, King of Kongo, 124, 137  
**Garcia II.**, King of Kongo, 125, 137  
**Garcia III.**, King of Kongo, 131, 137  
**Geographical** explorers. See Aragão, Brito, Castro, Girolamo of Montesarchio, Herder, Murça, Pacheco, Quadra and Roza: also pp. 119, 129  
**Germanus**, Henricus Martellus, his map, 107  
**Giaghi**, an Italian mode of spelling Jagas.  
**Giannuario** of Nola, capuchin, 127  
**Gimbo Amburi**. See Njimbu a mbuji.  
**Gindarlach**, a German miner, 115  
**Gindes** (Njinda), a name by which the Jaga are known, 19, 150  
**Giovanni Francisco** of Valença, a capuchin, 126  
**Gipsies** in Angola, 2, 10  
**Giribuma**, or Giringbomba, inland tribe. Perhaps the Buma, 3.0 S., 16.5 E.  
**Girolamo** of Montesarchio, a capuchin, 125, 126  
**Glo-Amb Coambu**, supposed name of the capital of Angola, 142 n. Rev. Tho. Lewis suggests Kwambu, or Kiambu.  
**Goats**, 63  
**Goes**, Damian de, quoted, 112, 113, 116  
**Goes**, João Braz de, 182  
**Goiva**, D. Antonio de, bishop, 122  
**Gola**. See Ngola.  
**Gold**, 20, 198, 131  
**Golungo**. See Ngulungu.  
**Gomba**. See Ngombe  
**Gomez**, Luiz, 123
- Gonçalves**. See Alvares, 169  
**Gonga caanga** (Ngonga kaanga), chief of Nsela, 180  
**Gongha** (Ngonga), original name of Kasanje Kakinguri (Cavazzi, 773).  
**Gongo a mboa** (Ngongo a mbwa), supposed old name of Pungu-a-Ndongo, 143 n.  
**Gongo** (Ngongo), a double bell, 20  
**Gongon**, 38, on road from S. Salvador to Mbata. Perhaps *Gongo* (Ngongo), on the Kongo railway, 5.3 S., 14.8 E. Rev. Tho. Lewis suggests *Kongo dia Mbata*, 38  
**Gonsa**, or Gunza, river, of Battell, 26, is the Kwanza.  
**Gorilla**, 54, 57  
**Gouvea**, Francisco de, 120, 143  
**Gouvea**, Antonio Gomez de, 173  
**Groundnuts**, 67  
**Guerra preta**, "black warriors," i.e., the native militia.  
**Guerreira**, a Jesuit, 150, 154, 159  
**Gulta**, Ngulta, (D. Lopez), town: S.W. of Masanganu.  
**Gumbiri**, fetish. See Ngumbiri.  
**Gunga bamba** (Ngunga mbamba), chief in Lubulo, 180  
**Gunza** (Ngunza), on Pigafetta's map a town S. of the river Longa, is undoubtedly Kangunze of Nsela.  
**Gunza a gombe**, (Ngunza a ngombe), a soba in Ndongo, 164  
**Güssfeld**, quoted, 58, 104  
**Guzambamba** (Ngunza a mbamba), soba in Hako, 10.3 S., 15.3 E., 180
- Hako** (Oacca), country, 10.4 S., 15.5 E., 166, 180  
**Hamba** (Va-umba, or Umba) river, 8.0 S., 17.0 E., 141  
**Hambo**. See Huambo.  
**Hary**, a district. See Ari.  
**Henrique**, the Cardinal-King of Portugal, 111, 114, 145  
**Henrique**, King of Kongo, 119, 136  
**Henriques**, Rodrigo de Miranda, 189  
**Herder**, Johan, 126  
**Hiambo**. See Huambo.  
**Hindersen**, Jeems, 171  
**Hippopotami**, 64  
**Hippopotamus Island**, 120, the Ilha dos cavalhos marinhos of the Portuguese, wrongly translated Isola Cavalli, or "Horse Island," by Pigafetta. Perhaps identical with Battell's Calabes Island. A "Hippopotamus Island" figures in the charts, 12.9 E.  
**Hobley**, quoted, 202, 206

**Holy Ghost**, a village on Luandu Island, 94 (called Espiritu Santo by D. Lopez), 8.8 S., 13.2 E.

**Hombia ngymbe** (Hombia ngombe, equivalent to Wembo a ngombe in the S. Salvador dialect), a "prince" in Benguella, on the river Kuvu, 21

**Horse Island** (D. Lopez). See Hippopotamus Island.

**Horses'** (zebras') tails, 75

**Huambo** (Hambo, Hiambo), district or soba in Benguella, 13.1 S., 15.6 E.; gold found there, 29

**Huembo**, a province of Kongo (Paiva Manso, 50), perhaps Wembo.

**Human sacrifices**, 28, 33, 85, 86, 105

**Iakonda**, a tributary of the Kwanza (Cavazzi), probably to be looked for in the Kondo cataract, 9.9 S., 16.1 E.

**Ibari** (Ybari), a kingdom whither the Portuguese traded (Garcia Mendes, 8). Rev. Tho. Lewis suggests that it refers to a place where *mbadi* cloth is made (the letters *r* and *d* being interchangeable, and *m* coming naturally before *b*). Sir H. Stanley (*Through the Dark Continent*, ii, 283, 320, 323) heard Kongo called *Ibari*, and subsequently was told of an Ibari Nkubu, or river of Nkutu. A. Sims (*Kiteke Vocabulary*) knows of a tribe Bakutu towards the Kasai. We believe the Ybari of G. Mendes to refer to the country about the Kwangu, whither Portuguese traders actually did go for cloth.

**Icau** (Ikau), 8.5 S., 13.9 E., 123

**Icolo** (Ikolo), district on lower Mbengu, 8.8 S., 13.6 E.

**Ilha grande**, Brazil, 4

**Ilamba** (Lamba), Battell's campaign in it, 13

**Imbangola**, identical with Bangala, 84 *n.*

**Imbondos** of Battell, 30 are the Mbundu of Angola.

**Imbuella**. See Mbula.

**Imbuilla**, *recta*, Mbila, sepulture.

**Incorimba**. See Kurimba.

**Incussu**. See Nkusu.

**Infanticide**, 32, 84

**Ingasia**, 14, 155. See Ngazi.

**Ingombe**. See Ngombe.

**Initiation** of native priests, 56, 57, 82

**Innocent X**, Pope, 127

**Insandeira** (Nzanda), the tree planted by Ngola Kiluanji on Kwanza, 9.1 S., 13.4 E., 142

**Insandie**. See Nsande.

**Iron**, 52

**Ivory**, 7, 9, 42, 52, 58

**Jagas**, Battell's account, 19, 83; origin, 83; infanticide among them, 32, 89; allies of the Portuguese, 123; history of the Jaga of Kasangi, 149; their invasion of Kongo in 1558, 117

**Jesuits**, in Angola, 143; in Kongo, 118; Jesuit college, 123; political intrigues, 153, 183; a legacy, 169

**Jinga**. See Nzinge.

**João II**, of Portugal, 106, 108

**João IV**, of Portugal, 127, 170

**João I**, King of Kongo, 109, 136

**João II**, King of Kongo, 136

**João** of Mbula, King of Kongo, 130, 131, 137

**João**, Manuel, 146

**João de S. Maria**, Franciscan, 109

**João Maria**, capuchin, 133

**John**. See João.

**John Moritz** of Nassau. See Nassau.

**Jol**, Cornelis Cornelisson, 171

**José**, Duarte, 147, 150

**José**, Vicente, 148

**Kabanda**, district in Motolo, on road to Mpemba mines (Garcia Mendes, 11, 12); the Chabonda of D. Lopez, 8.7 S., 14.6 E., 124, 181

**Kabangu**, (Cabengo), mani in Luangu, 50

**Kabasa**, capital, chief town, group of villages, 141 *n.*

**Kabasa**, Kakulu, 9.3 S., 14.9 E., 159; another chief Kakulu Kabasa, in 8.3 S., 15.3 E., in Banga mountains (map of Fr. Antonio Flores, 1867).

**Kabeka**. (Cabech), soba on the Kwanza, 9.5 S., 14.1 E., 10, 11.

**Kabeza** (Cabezzo) district, 10.2 S., 15.0 E., 180

**Kabinda**, seaport, 5.5 S., 12.2 E., 42

**Kabuku** (kia mbula), soba, 9.5 S., 15.0 E.

**Kafuche** (Kafuche Kabara), 10.0 S., 14.4 E., 27, 37, 156, 168

**Kahenda**, Kakulu, 8.9 S., 15.5 E., 159, 177

**Kakonda a velha**, 13.2 S., 14.0 E., 161, 182

**Kakonda**, 13.7 S., 15.1 E., 182  
**Kakongo**, kingdom, N. of Zaire, 104, 112  
**Kakongo**, (Kikongo), an aromatic wood, 16 n., 145  
**Kakulu**, the first-born of twins, a title in Angola. *See* Kimone.  
**Kakulu kia Nkangu** (Caculo quen-acango), a soba in whose territory Kanzele was built (Garcia Mendes), 9.1 S., 13.8.  
**Kalandu**, ancestor of Queen Nzinga, 166  
**Kalandula**, name or title among the Jaga, 28, 33, 83, 86, 132  
**Kale**, Jesuit farm in Kisama, 9.1 S., 13.4 E.  
**Kalemba**. *See* Namba Calemba.  
**Kalumbu**, presidio, on Kwanza, 9.1 S., 13.5 E., 146; Jaga in Little Ngangele, 175  
**Kalungu**, soba at mouth of Koporolo, 12.9 S., 13.0 E., 160  
**Kalungu** (Calongo), Jaga, near Kasanji, 9.8 S., 18.1 E., 151, 152, 175  
**Kalungu** (Calango), 10.3 S., 14.6 E., 26  
**Kambambe**, presidio, 9.7 S., 14.6 E., 17, 27, 36, 38, 147, 156, 158  
**Kambe**. *See* Barbara.  
**Kambo**, river in Matamba, enters the Kwangu, 7.6 S., 17.3 E.  
**Kambulu**, a royal title in Matamba, 141  
**Kamolemba**, village on road from Masanganu to Mbulla; perhaps Lembo, *q.v.*  
**Kamuegi**, perhaps the Fumeji river of Capello and Ivens, 9.5 S., 15.5 E., 151  
**Kamundai**, village of Bangala (Neves); perhaps named from "mundai," a tree which is supposed to protect against lightning.  
**Kangunze**, capital of Nsela, 11.2 S., 15.0 E., 180  
**Kanguri**, or Kinguri, Jaga, 152  
**Kanguana**. *See* Kinguana.  
**Kanzele** (Anzela), stockade, 9.0 S., 13.8 E., 147  
**Kasa**, Jaga, one of Queen Nzinga's relations, 164, 166  
**Kasandama**, battery at S. Paulo de Loanda, 8.7 S., 13.2 E.  
**Kasanji**, Jagas, 151, 152, 166, 167, 175 n. Residence of the principal among them, about 9.6 S., 18.0 E.  
**Kasanji ka kinjuri**, Jaga, 177

**Kasanza** (Cazzanza), mani, 8.9 S., 13.7 E., 11, 40, 41  
**Kasinga**, river, tributary of the Barbela (D. Lopez).  
**Kasoko**, Kilombo of Kasanji ka Kinjuri, 9.7 S., 18.0 E.  
**Kaswea**, mani, 8.8 S., 13.6 E., 40  
**Katala**, soba in Kisama, 9.6 E., 14.1 S., 180  
**Katole**, three days from Mbanza oi Matamba, 177. A village, Katala ka nzinga, on the river Kambo, 8.8 S., 16.6 E., was visited by Mechow (*Zeitsch. f. Erdk.*, 1882).  
**Kawala** (Caoalla), is Kisama, 74  
**Kayá**, 4.8 S., 12.0 E., 42, 50  
**Kazanga**, island, 8.9 S., 13.0 E.  
**Kenga** (Kinga), the port of Luangu, 4.6 S., 11.8 E., 48, 50  
**Kesock**, mani, 2.8 S., 11.0 E., 58  
**Kibangu**, temporary capital of Kongo, perhaps identical with an old "priests' town (Kinganga), 6.9 S., 14.6 E., 131  
**Kifangondo**, village on lower Mbengu, 8.6 S., 13.3 E.  
**Kijila** (Quixille), the laws or customs of the Jaga, 152  
**Kikombo**, bay, 11.3 S., 13.9 E.  
**Kilolo**, a warrior.  
**Kilombo**, "dwelling-place." Cavazzi, p. 893, applies it to the residence of the Jaga.  
**Kilomba kia tubia**, chief in upper Ngulungu, 159  
**Kilonga**, a soba, 158. A Kilonga kia Bango still live close to Kambambe, 9.6 S., 14.5 E.  
**Kiluanji kia Kanga** (Quiloange Acango), soba of upper Ngulungu, 179  
**Kiluanji kia Kwangu**, according to Garcia Mendes, the chief whom Dias defeated, 143. *See* Kwangu.  
**Kiluanji kia Samba**, title of kings of Ndongo. A small chief of that title still resides near Duque de Bragança, 141 n.  
**Kimbadi** (Quimbazi), a small piece of cloth.  
**Kimbaka**, fort, stockade.  
**Kimbebe**. *See* Quimbebe.  
**Kimundu**. *See* Binbundo.  
**Kimone kia Sanga**, principal chief of Kisama, 180  
**Kina grande**, the "great sepulture," 9.5 S., 17.7 E. (?), 166  
**Kinalunga**, or Kindonge (Quihindonga), islands in Kwanza river, 9.7 S., 15.8 E., 166, 177

- Kinda**, Jaga, 148 *n.*, 166  
**Kindonga**. *See* Kinalunga.  
**Kinganga**, "priests' town," applied to old stations of the Roman Catholic missionaries.  
**Kinga** (Kenga), port of Luengu, 4.6 S., 11.8 E., 48, 50  
**Kingengo** (Chingengo or Quingengo). *See* Mutemu.  
**Kinguri** (Kanguri), a Jaga, 151, 152  
**Kinzambe**, ndembu at Koporolo mouth (Dapper), 12.9 S., 12.9 E.  
**Kioko**, tribe, 12.0 S., 18.0 E., 151  
**Kiowa** (Quiôa) duchy in Sonyo, 6.1 S., 13.0 E., 125  
**Kipaka**, a kraal, entrenchment.  
**Kipupa**, soba, 10.2 S., 18.7 E., 166  
**Kisala**, a steep mountain in Lit. Ngangela (Cavazzi, 771), 9.8 S., 17.9 E.  
**Kisama**, country S. of Kwanza, 9.3 S., 13.5 E., 27, 74, 146, 180. Another Kisama (Chizzema, Quessama on Pigafetta's map) is said by D. Lopez to lie E. of Mpemba and Mbamba.  
**Kisamu** (Quisomo), village with chapel two leagues above Masanganu.  
**Kisembo**, 7.7 S., 13.1 E.  
**Kisembula** (Kuzambulo), a soothsayer, 87  
**Kisengula**, a war hatchet, 34, 81  
**Kisengengele** (Quicequelle), soba in Masanganu district with church of S. Anna.  
**Kisutu** (Quixoto) village with church (N.S. do Desterro), in Masanganu district.  
**Kitaka**, island in the Kwanza, 9.8 S., 15.7 E., 166  
**Kitangombe**, "cattle dealer," soba in Kisama, 146  
**Kitata**, soba near Kakonda, 13.4 S., 15.1 E., 182  
**Kizua**, a soba in Kisama, 9.5 S., 14.1 E., 146  
**Knivet**, Anthony, his credibility, x, travels, 6, 89-101  
**Kole** (Cola, Icole), tributary of Lukala, 9.1 S., 16.1 E.  
**Kongo**, kingdom, history, 102-135; list of kings, 136; Battell's visit to Kongo, 38; Kongo, river, 7; Knivet's visits, 89, 94  
**Kongo dia Mulaza**, 6.0 S., 16.0 E.  
**Konko a bele** (Concobella), town. The confused account given of Girolamo of Montesarchio's visit to that town, merely enables us to locate it on the northern bank of the Zaire. The place was likewise visited by Luca of Caltanissetta (Zucchelli, xviii, 3).  
**Konzo**, one of the four days of the week, and hence applied to places where a market is held on that day.  
**Koporolo**, river, 12.9 S., 12.9 E., 160  
**Kuari**. *See* Coary.  
**Kuilu** (Quelle), river, 4.5 S., 11.7 E., 52  
**Kulachimba**, a warrior, 152  
**Kulachinga**, a woman, 151, 152  
**Kulambo**, a Jaga, 152  
**Kumbu ria Kaianga**. *See* Combre.  
**Kumba ria Kina**, 9.8 S., 14.7 E.  
**Kundi**. *See* Nkundi.  
**Kurimba**, or, Kwimba? (Corimba, Incorimba), a district on the Kwanza, 6.0 S., 17.0 E., 102; another Kwimba, 6.1 S., 14.8 E.  
**Kurimba**, bar of, 8.9 S., 13.1 E., 144  
**Kuvu** (Covo), river, 10.9 S., 13.9 E., 19, 20, 161  
**Kwangu**, river, formerly looked upon as the principal source stream of the Zaire (Zari anene, the "big river"). It joins the Kasai 3.2 S., 17.3 E.  
**Kwangu** (Ocango, Coango), kingdom, after which the river is named, 4.5 S., 17.0 E., 102  
**Kwangu**, a minor district (Coanga) near Masanganu (Cavazzi, 440), 124. *See* Kiluanji kia Kwangu.  
**Kwanza** (Coanza), the "river of Ngola," 9.3 S., 13.2 E., 7, 10, 92, 106, 146, 149, 173  
**Lacerda**, Carlos de, 182  
**Lacerda**, Dr. J. M. de, 29, 69  
**Laço**, Lopo Soares, 168, 169, 170  
**Laguos**, Estêvão de, 119  
**Lake**, reported in Central Africa, 159  
**Lamba** (Ilamba), district, 9.3 S., 14.3 E., 13, 146, 149  
**Longere**, a chief in Kisama, 9.9 S., 14.4 E., 27  
**Lead**, discovered, 115  
**Ledo**, cabo, 9.8 S., 13.3 E.  
**Lefumi**, river. *See* Lufune.  
**Leigh** in Essex, xi  
**Leitão**, Manuel de Magalhães, 180  
**Lelunda**, river (D. Lopez), enters the sea 6.9 S., 12.8 E.  
**Lemba**. *See* Malemba.

**Lemba**, name of several villages or chiefs in Kongo (Kongo di Lemba, 6.2 S., 14.2 E.; Lemba, on coast, 8.3 S.; Lemba Mbamba, 7.5 S., 17.1 E.)

**Lembo**, village near Masanganu, 9.5 S., 14.4 E., 181

**Lencastre**, D. João de, 185, 190

**Lendi**, province of Kongo. A village *Lendi*, S.S.E. of S. Salvador, in 6.6 S., 14.5 E.

**Lewis**, Rev. Tho., quoted, xvii, 104, 197, 198, 210

**Libations**, 58, 73

**Libolo**. See *Lubolo*.

**Light-horse man**, 2, 3, 5

**Lima**, Lopez de, quoted, xx, 74, 117, 119, 140, 142, 143, 145, 146, 154, 163, 168, 169, 177, 178, 184, 187

**Limoeiro**, a prison at Lisbon, 169

**Linschoten**, quoted, x, 94

**Livingstone**, quoted, 164

**Loanda**. See *Luandu*.

**Loango**. See *Luangu*.

**Lobo**, Cabo do, with Cão's pillar, now C. St. Maria, 13.4 S., 106

**Logwood**, 43, 53

**Loje**, river, 7.8 S., 13.2 E., 28

**Longa**, river, 10.3 S., 13.6 E., 26

**Longeri** (Loangele, or Luanjili), the royal tombs of Luangu, 4.6 S., 11.9 E., 51, 86

**Longo Leuys**, river. See *Luiza Luangu*.

**Lopez**, Alvaro, 112

**Lopez**, Duarte, quoted, x, xix, 8, 9, 26, 47, 64, 68, 75, 97, 110, 111, 117, 119, 121, 122

**Lopo Gonçalves**, Cape, 0.6 S., 3

**Loze**, river. See *Loje*.

**Luandu** (Loanda), 8.7 S., 13.2 E., 115, 116, 121, 123, 140, 146; Dutch occupation, 171-4; fortifications, 185

**Luangu** (Loango) kingdom, 4.6 S., 11.8 E., 9, 43, 44, 49, 50, 86, 104; Battell in Luangu, 9

**Luanjili**. See *Longeri*.

**Lubolo** (Libolo), district, formerly of much wider extent, 10.0 S., 15.0 E., 151, 172, 180

**Luca** of Caltanissetta, visited Concobella (Zucchelli, xvii, 3)

**Luchilu** (Luxilu), river W. of Pungu a ndongo, 9.7 S., 15.5 E., 178

**Ludolfus**, his proposed map of Africa, xv

**Lueji**, princess of Lunda, 151

**Lufune** (Lefumi), river, entering sea in 8.3 S.

**Lui**, river, enters Kwangu in 8.3 S., 17.6 E., is the Luinene ("big Lui"), called Lunino by Cavazzi.

**Luiza Luangu**, river (Lovanga Luise, Longo Luys), the Masabi, 5.0 S., 12.0 E.

**Lukala**, river, tributary of Kwanza, 9.6 S., 14.2 E., 146, 166

**Lukamba**, district and feira, 9.4 S., 15.5 E., 151, 168

**Lukanza**, camp, W. of Ngwalema, 149

**Lula**, province of Kongo (Paiva Manso, 244); the mbanza, 5.3 S., 15.7 E.

**Lumbo**, or upper Ngulungu.

**Lumbu**. See *Panzalunbu*.

**Lusum**, river, crossed on road from Mpinda to S. Salvador. Perhaps the *Luzi*, a tributary of the Mpozo, 6.2 S., 14.0 E.

**Lutatu**, river of Bembe (Cavazzi, 13), probably misprint for Cutato.

**Luxilu**. See *Luchilu*.

**Mabumbula** (Mbumbula), mwana of Mpangala, 6.1 S., 14.6 E., 103

**Machimba**, 37, is probably identical with Muchima village.

**Madureira**, Gaspar Borges de, 173

**Magalhães**, Henrique Jaques, 190

**Magyar**, Ladislas, quoted, 22, 26, 29, 152, 192

**Maia**, Baptista de, 181

**Maize**, 67

**Majinga**, Mwixi, a "man of Majinga," a term of contempt for "Bushman" (Bentley, *Dictionary*, 364).

**Makaria** ~~king~~ *matamba*, village, 167

**Makella colonge**, chief, 9.8 S., 15.4 E., 26

**Makoko**, title of the King of the Bateke (Anzicana), perhaps more correctly given as Nkaka, a title of respect, lit. "grandfather," 52, 124 n., 127, 132

**Makota** (plur. rikota), counsellor of a chief.

**Makunde** (Makumbe), 9.6 S., 14.2 E., 146

**Makuta**, perhaps 6.3 S., 13.0 E.; surrendered to Sonyo, 125. There are other localities of the same name.

**Malemba** (Lemba), a kingdom, 11.4 S., 17.0 E., 166

**Malomba** (D. Lopez), seems to be a misprint for Malumba.

**Malombe**, a "great lord" in Kisama, 9.8 S., 14.2 E., 37

**Mamboma**, an official in Luangu, 59 *n.*

**Mambumba** (D. Lopez), between river Loje and Onzo, the same as Mani Mbumbi.

**Manuel**, King of Portugal, 110, 111, 113, 133, 137, 139

**Manuel**, King of Kongo, 137, 181

**Manuel**, brother of Affonso I, of Kongo, 111, 113

**Mangroves**, 76

**Manso**, Paiva, quoted, xviii, 27, 72, 102, 108, 110, 111, 119, 121, 124, 125, 130, 169, 178, 181

**Maopongo** (Cavazzi), a corrupt spelling of Mpungu a ndongo.

**Maps**, illustrating this volume, xv.

**Maramara**, river, between S. Salvador and Kibangu (P. Manso), 351

**Maramba**, fetish in Yumba, 56, 82

**Maravi**, they are Zimbabwes and not Jagas, 150

**Marcador dos esclaves**, an officer charged with "branding" the slaves.

**Margarita** stone, 15. Garcia Simoes, the Jesuit, in 1575, says that "provisions are bought for cloth and margaridit." Rev. Tho. Lewis suggests *Ngameta*, a special kind of beads. It is just possible that these "stones" may be perforated quartz-pebbles, worn as beads, such as were recently discovered by Mr. Hobley in Kavirondo, where they are highly valued. They are found after thunder-storms, and of unknown antiquity.

**Masanganu**, presidio, 9.6 S., 14.3 E., 7, 10, 13, 91, 92, 99, 146, 155, 171, 173, 181

**Mascarenhas**, bishop. Simão de, 124, 167, 189

**Masicongo** (Muizi Kongo), a Kongo man, 12

**Masongo**, a "kingdom," the country of the Songó, 11.0 S., 13.0 E.

**Masinga**, a "kingdom;" perhaps Majinga (*q.v.*), hardly to be identified with the Chinge, beyond the Kwangu.

**Matama**, King of Quimbebe (D. Lopez). Perhaps identical with Matimu. See Quimbebe.

**Matamba**, kingdom, 7.5 S., 16.5 E., 113, 116, 121, 127, 141, 142, 167

**Matamba Kalombo**, King of Matamba, 167

**Matambulas**, the spirits of the King of Kongo's ancestors, 116 *n.*

**Matapa** (D. Lopez), stands for Monomatapa, *q.v.*

**Matari** (Matadi). There are many villages of that name. Cavazzi's Matari, on road to Nsundi, 5.8 S., 14.6 E.

**Matimu**, soba, in Ngangela, battle, 166

**Matimbas** (Batumba), or pygmies, 59

**Matinga**, a town 60 miles N.-E. of Cabo do Palmar (D. Lopez).

**Matos**, Simão de, 129

**Matta**, Cordeira da, quoted, xx, 103, 141

**Mattos**, R. J. da Costa, quoted, 114

**Maxilongos**, the people of Sonyo (Paiva Manso, 350), should be Osolongos, or Musurongo.

**Mayombe** (Yumba), country, 3.3 S., 10.7 E., 53, 82

**Mbaji**, a "palaver place," corrupted into Ambassi. See S. Salvador.

**Mbaka** (Ambaca), first fort, 9.4 S., 14.7 E., 158; new fort, 9.3 S., 15.4 E., 163

**Mbakambaka**. See Bakkebakke.

**Mbale** (Mombales), 6.5 S., 12.7 E., 42

**Mbalundu** (Bailundo), 12.2 S., 15.7 E., 172

**Mbamba**, province of Kongo, 12, 123. The chief Mbanza is probably identical with Kiballa, 7.5 S., 14.0 E.

**Mbamba** (Dapper, 577), district of Lamba, 9.1 S., 14.0 E.

**Mbamba a mpungu**, village on river Mbengu (Garcia Mendes, ii), 8.9 S., 14.1 E.

**Mbamba Tunga**, soba, 147, 158

**Mbanza**, residence of a chief or king.

**Mbata**, province of Kongo, capital, 5.8 S., 15.4 E., 39, 104, 120

**Mbemba**, same as Mpemba, or Mbamba, 42

**Mbembe**. See Bembe.

**Mbengu** (Bengo), river, 5.7 S., 13.3 E., 39, 155, 168

**Mbila**, sepulture, 165

**Mbiriji** (Ambriz), river, 7.3 S., 12.9 E., 131, 132

**Mbuila** (Ambuila), 8.0 S., 15.7 E., 120, 176, 181

**Mbuila amduwa** (Ambuila dua, 168  
**Mbuku** (Buck), 4.9 S., 12.3 E.; and many others of the same name.

- Mbula**, one of royal residences of Kongo, perhaps 5.2 S., 15.0 E., 134
- Mbula matadi**, D. Francisco, carried off by the Devil, 121. There are several villages named Matadi or Matari ("stones"), and a mbula matari lies beyond the Zaire in 5.5 S., 13.4 E.
- Mbumba a ndala**, soba in Angola, 159
- Mbumbi**, soba in Mbamba, 7.9 S., 13.6 E., 123
- Mbundu**, root of a species of strychnos, 59 n.
- Mbwela** (Amboelle), 7.8 S., 15.0 (F. de Salles Ferreira, *An. do Cons. ultr.*, ii, 1859, p. 59), 126
- Mechow**, Major, quoted, 199, 210
- Mello da Cunha**, Vasco de, 177
- Mello**, Fernão de, 115
- Mendes Castello Branco**, Garcia, quoted xvii, 14, 63, 64, 65, 120, 143-147, 145, 146, 154, 155, 162
- Mendes**, Pedro, quoted, 130
- Mendes**, Ruy, 115
- Mendonça**, João Furtado de, 17, 93, 155, 188
- Mendonça**, Antonio Texeira de, 173, 174, 189
- Menezes**, Gonçalo de Alcaçova Carneiro Carvalho da Costa de, 181
- Menezes**, Luis Cesar de, 190
- Menezes**, Gonçalo da Costa de Alcaçova Carneiro de, 184, 190
- Menezes**, Pedro Cezar de, 171-173, 186, 189
- Menezes e Souza**, Ayres de Saldanha de, 190
- Merolla**, Girolamo, of Sorrento, 132
- Messa** (D. Lopez) is a town in Morocco.
- Mfinda a ngulu**, forest between Sonyo and S. Salvador, 6.2 S., 13.2 E., 125
- Mfinda a nkongo** (P. Manso, 355), perhaps E. of Lukunga, 5.2 S., 14.2 E.
- Mfuma ngongo**, 6.3 S., 13.5 E.
- Miguel**, Roque de, 167
- Military organisation**, 185
- Millet**, 17
- Mimos**, synonym of Bakkebakke (Dapper).
- Miracles**, 111, 121, 124 n., 124, 127, 129, 130
- Miranda**, Antonio de, 172
- Missions** in Kongo, 108, 110, 111, 114; destruction of fetishes, 114, 117; scandalous conduct, 122; small results, 123, 126; heretic Dutchmen, 126; troubles in Sonyo, 132; failure in Kongo, 133; mission in Angola, 139, 183, 187
- Mo-**. See **Mu-**.
- Moanda**, 5.9 S., 12.3 E., 49
- Mocata**. See **Makuta**.
- Mocicongo** (D. Lopez), should be mwizi-Kongo, \*a native of Kongo (plur. Ezikongo).
- Mococke**, 52, a corrupt spelling of Makoko.
- Modiku**, islands in upper Kwanza, 9.7 S., 15.9 E.
- Moenemugi** (Mwene muji), "Lord of villages" in the country of the Maravi, 150
- Mofarigosat**, a "lord" in Benguela, 10.9 S., 14.1 E., 22, 23
- Moko a nguba**, mani, in Kongo (Paiva Manso), 109
- Mols**, Fort, 9.3 S., 13.2 E., 173
- Molua**, frequently used as a synonym for Lunda, means "carrier of information" (Carvalho, *Ethnographia*), 66
- Mombales** (Mbale), 6.5 S., 12.7 E., 72
- Monomatapa** (Mwanamtapa), the famous empire to the E. of the Zambesi.
- Monsobos** (D. Lopez), elsewhere called Muzombi. They are the Zombo of Mbata.
- Monsul**, capital of the Makoko, a corruption of Monjol, "scratch-faces" (?)
- Monte di Ferro**. See **Ferro**.
- Monteiro**, quoted, 15, 17, 21, 24, 31, 47, 66, 68
- Monte negro**, with Gae's pillar, 15.7 S., 10.7 E.
- Montes queimados**, "burnt mountains" (D. Lopez), 6.9 S., 15.1 E.
- Monti freddi**, and Nevosi (D. Lopez). See **Fria**.
- Moon**, Mountains of the, these fabulous mountains, 108 Pigafetta's map, rise in 25.0 S.
- Moraes**, Antonio Texeira de, 175
- Morales**, Diogo Gomez de, 124, 172, 174, 180
- Morales**, Diogo Mendez de, 175
- Morim**, Lourenço de Barros, 181
- Moriscoes**, or Moormen, 10
- Morombes**, 55, 59, a misprint for Mayumbas (?)
- Morro de Benguela**, 10.8 S., 13.7 E., 19

- Morumba**, 82, a town 30 leagues N. of Luangu; should be Mayumba (?).
- Moseche.** See Museke.
- Mosombi.** See Zombo.
- Mosul.** See Musulu.
- Motemmo.** See Mutemu.
- Motolo**, an inland district in Mbamba, N. of the Mbengu or Dande (D. Lopez); Kabanda is in Motolo (Garcia Mendes), 8.7 S., 14.6 E.
- Mpangala**, district in Kongo, 6.0 S., 14.6 E., 103, 104
- Mpangu**, or **Ulolo**, on road from Nsundi to Mbata, 5.4 S., 14.9 E. (?)
- Mpangu** (Panga), a lordship bestowed upon the bishop D. Henrique, in 1625 (Paiva Manso, 51), seems to be identical with Mpangu-lungu.
- Mpangu-lungu**, the Pango or Pangalungo of Cavazzi, S. 454, and D. Lopez, variously spelt Pangelungu or Pamzelungua in King Affonso's letters (Paiva Manso, 29, 36, 41), is undoubtedly a district on the lower Kongo, bordering upon the country of the Musurongo. There are numerous villages called Mpangu, several of which are indicated upon our map, but the Mbanza of Mpangu, according to Lopez, was near the river Barbela, which is another name for the Kongo. See also Mpanzu alumbu, 115, 116.
- Mpanzu-alumbu** (Panzu or Pazoalumbu) a village or district on the lower Kongo, either in Mpangu-lungu or that district itself. King Affonso (Paiva Manso, 50) calls himself "Lord of the Conquest of Pazoallumbo," and does not mention Pangalungu, which certainly was a district incorporated with Kongo in his day. Bastian (*Exped. an der Loangküste*, i, 289), mentions a village Mpanzo, and another Mpanzo mfinda ("Mpanzo in the Wood") as being near Sonyo. Mpangu and Mpanzu may possibly be interchangeable, just as Lopez gives the name of Mpango to the fourth king of Kongo, whom others call Mpanzu, 112, 113
- Mpanzu anzinga**, King of Kongo, 130, 131, 137
- Mpemba**, province of Kongo, capital, 7.1 S., 14.8 E.
- Mpemba-kasi**, district around S. Salvador, 103, 131
- Mpinda**, 6.1 S., 12.4 E., 42, 110, 115, 121, 161
- Mpozo**, river, enters Kongo at Matadi, 5.8 S., 13.5 E.
- Mpunga**, an ivory trumpet. See Ponge.
- Mubela**, village with chapel, in Bengo (Mbengu.)
- Muchima**, presidio and soba, 9.4 S., 13.9 E., 146, 155, 174, 186
- Mucondo.** See Nkondo.
- Muene**, in Angole, a title, lord, owner. Ngana (Nga-) is a synonym.
- Mugi.** See Muzi.
- Mukimba**, cattle-breeders in hills of Benguella, 14.0 S., 13.0 E., 160
- Mulato** children, born white, 49
- Mulaza** (Kongo dia Mulaza) 6.0 S., 16.3 E.
- Mundequetes**, derived from Nteke, plur. Manteke or Anazinteke, our Bateke.
- Muongo Matamba**, queen, 167
- Murça**, Francisco de, 132
- Murumba**, river N. of Felipe de Benguella, perhaps the Balombo, 11.0 S., 13.8 E., 160
- Musasa**, the wife of Dongy, a Jaga, 152
- Museke**, "farm," or country-house, and hence used to denote the vicinity of a town. There is thus a Museke of Luandu, a Museke of Masanganu, etc., 156
- Muswalu**, province of Kongo, 112
- Musuku**, province of Kongo, 112. The Maungu, a tribe extending eastward across the Kwangu (8.0 S.), are also known as Musuku; a village Musuku lies on the lower Zaire.
- Musulu** (Mosul), 8.5 S., 13.3 E., 120
- Musurongo**, or Asolongo, the people of Sonyo, 130
- Mutemu**, Ndembu, at head of navigation of the Lufune, 8.2 S., 14.3 E.
- Mutemu Kavongonge**, 8.2 S., 15.3 E.
- Mutemukungengo**, ndembu, about 7.9 S., 15.0 E., 180
- Mutiny** at Luandu, 186; at Masanganu, 181
- Muyilu**, province of Kongo, 112
- Muzombi** (D. Lopez), are the Zombo in Mbatu, 5.8 S., 15.5 E.
- Muzi zemba** (Muge azemba), soba in Lamba, 149
- Mwana**, in Kongo, a title, son; mwana, a ntinu, prince; *synonyms* are Muene, Muata, Ngana. Mani is a corruption.

- Mwana mtapa**, famous empire on lower Zambezi, described as Benemotapa, 61
- Nabo angungo**. See Nambu a ngongo.
- Nambu Calamba** (Nambua kalam-bu), village, 14. Dapper, 397, mentions Namboa and Kalumba as two separate but contiguous districts east of Ikolo, about 8.9 S., 13.7 E.
- Nambu a ngongo** (Uambo ngongo?) 8.1 S., 14.3 E.; invaded by Portuguese, 123; rebellion, 172, 180. Another soba of that name lives in Kisama, 158
- Nassau**, John Moritz of, 171
- Ndala**. See Andala.
- Native** policy of the Portuguese, 65
- Ndamba** (Damba), district in Kongo, 6.7 S., 15.2 E.
- Ndamba** (Dambe) a ndembu, 7.8 S., 14.7 E., 181
- Ndamba**, a musical instrument, 47
- Ndangi** (Danji), island in Kwanza, 9.8 S., 15.5 E. ? 165, 166, 167
- Ndemba** (Demba of Battell, erroneously called Adenda), salt mines in Kisama, 9.9 S., 13.8 E., 36, 37, 154, 162
- Ndembu** (plur. jindembu), potentate. The commonwealth of these homerulers lies to the N. of the Dande, 8.2 S., 15.0 E.
- Ndombe** (Dombe), country around S. Felipe de Benguella, 13.0 S., 13.3 E., 17, 160
- Ndondo**, feira, 9.7 S., 14.5 E., 168
- Ndonga**, a soba in Ndongo, 164
- Ndongo** (the native name of Angola), early history, 140, list of kings, 142
- Ndundu**, or Albinos, 48, 81
- Negreiros**, André Vidal de, 189
- Negro**, Cabo, 15.7 S., 171
- Negro**, Cabo, 3.2 S., 10.5 E., 53
- Neves**, Capt. A. R., quoted, 28, 150, 151, 199
- Nevosi**, monti. See Fria, monti.
- Nganga**, a wise man, medicine-man, priest.
- Ngangela** (Ganguella), a nickname for the inland tribes. Little Ngangela is identical with the Bangala country, 9.5 S., 17.7 E., 166, 167
- Ngazi** (Ingasia of Battell), 8.8 S. 14.2 E., 14, 153
- Nginga**. See Nzinga.
- Ngola**, title or name of kings of Ndongo.
- Ngola ari**, king, 164, 165, 178
- Ngola Bumbumbula**, founder of kingdom of Ndongo, 142 n.
- Ngola a nzinga**, jaga of Matamba, 142 n.
- Ngola ineve**, 142
- Ngola kabuku**, soba in Kisama, 180. Another Kabuku now lives on the Lukala, 9.4 S., 15.0 E.
- Ngola kalungu**, a soba near Kambambe, 9.8 S., 14.6 E., 147
- Ngola kanini**, 177
- Ngola kiluanji**, 142 n. 145
- Ngola kiluanji kia Samba**, full title of kings. A chief of that title occupied site of Duque de Bragança, 8.9 S., 16. E., 41, 141 n.
- Ngola kitumba**, soba in Lubolo, 180
- Ngola mbandi**, 117, 142, 165, 169
- Ngola ndambi**, 140
- Ngola njimbu** (Golla gimbo), near Kakonda, in Benguella, 182
- Ngola njinga mbandi**, king, 163, 164
- Ngola's river** (the Kwanza), 139
- Ngola Ngolome a kundu**, a soba on the Kwanza, 9.5 S., 14.2 E., 143
- Ngolome**, a soba on the Kwanza, 9.4 S., 14.2 E., 143
- Ngolome aquitamboa**. See Ngwalema.
- Ngolome a kayiti**. See Ngwalema.
- Ngombe** (Ingombe), chief town of Ngazi, 8.8 S., 14.3 E., 14, 15, 124, 155
- Ngombe a muchana**, 8.4 S., 13.5 E.
- Ngombe kabonde**, 8.7 S., 13.7 E.
- Ngongo**. See Gongon, 38
- Ngongo**, a chief in Lubolo, 151, 152
- Ngongo ka anga** (Kanga) of Nsela (Shella), 180
- Ngoya** (Angoy), kingdom, 5.6 S., 12.3 E., 42, 104
- Ngulungu** (Golungo), a region between the Lukala and Mbengu, 9.0 S., 14.5 E., 149, 179
- Ngumbiri**, fetish, 49, 81
- Ngunga mbamba**, soba in Lubolo, 180
- Ngunza a ngombe**, chief in Ndongo, 164
- Ngunza a mbamba**, in Hako, 10.3 S., 15.3 E., 180
- Ngwalema** (Ngolome) a **Kayitu**, soba in Ngulungu, 179
- Ngwalema a kitambu**, the Ngolome akitambwa of V. J. Duarte (*Ann. de cons. ultram.*, ii, p. 123), and the

- Anguolome aquitambo of Garcia Mendes, 9.1 S., 15.8 E., 143, 148  
**Njimbu**, native name for cowries.  
**Njimbu a mbuji** (Gimbo Amburi) a fetish place, about 5.9 S., 14.5 E.  
**Nkanda Kongo**, of Girolamo of Montesarchio, is perhaps identical with a modern village, Nkandu, 4.8 S., 14.9 E.  
**Nkandu**, one of the four days of the Kongo week, and hence applied to a place where a market is held on that day.  
**Nkishi**. See Fetish.  
**Nkondo** (Mucondo), district between Sonyo and Kibango, 16.7 S., 14.1 E., 131  
**Nkanga**. See Cango.  
**Nkundi** (Kundi), female chief in Kwangu, 4.7 S., 16.8 E., 126  
**Nkusu** (Incussu), 26, district in Kongo, 6.7 S., 15.0 E., 126  
**Nogueira**, A. F., quoted, 103, 194, 207  
**Nombo** (Numbu), river, enters Xilungu Bay, 4.3 S., 11.4 E., 53  
**Nsaku** (Caçuto) Cão's hostage, 106, 108  
**Nsata**, a district in Kongo, 7.8 S., 16.0 E., 125  
**Nsanda**. See Banyan tree.  
**Nsanga**, of Girolamo Montesarchio, is perhaps identical with a modern village, Nsanga, 4.7 S., 15.2 E.  
**Nsela** (Shella), district, 11.3 S., 15.0 E., 180  
**Nsongo**, a province of Mbata (Cavazzi, 6), 4.4 S., 16.5 E. ?  
**Nsonso** (Zucchelli, xvii, 3), a district above Nsundi, the capital of which is Incombella (Konko a bela).  
**Nsoso** (Nsusu), a province of Mbata, 6.7 S., 15.5 E.  
**Nsundi** (Sundi), province of Kongo, capital perhaps, 5.2 S., 14.3 E., 109  
**Ntinu**, King of Kongo, 102  
**Ntotela**, title of King of Kongo, 102, 136  
**Nua Nukole** (Nuvla nukole), river, (*nua*, mouth), 10.2 S., 15.4 E.  
**Numbi**. See Nombo.  
**Nzari**, or Nzadi, "great river," applied to the river Kongo (Zaire) and its tributaries.  
**Nzenza**, said to be the proper name of the river Mbengu, and is also the name of several districts, as Nzenza of Ngulungu, the chief 9.2 S., 14.2 E. *Nzenza* means river-margin; *Nzanza*, table-land.  
**Nzenza a ngombe**, a Jaga in Ndonggo, 168  
**Nzinga a mona** (D. Antonio Carrasco), king, 176, 177  
**Nzinga mbandi ngola** (D. Anna de Souza), the famous queen, 141, 142, 163, 164, 165, 173, 176, 181  
**Nzinga mbandi ngolo**, kiluanji, 163  
**Oacco**. See Hako.  
**Oarij**. See Ari.  
**Ocango**. See Kwangu.  
**Offerings**, 77  
**Oliveira**, Manuel Jorge d', 149  
**Oliveira**, bishop João Franco de, 177  
**Oloe**, a river, which on the map of D. Lopez, flows past S. Salvador, and enters the Lilunda (Lunda)—an impossibility. The river flowing past S. Salvador is the Luezi.  
**Onzo**, or Ozoni (D. Lopez), 8.2 S., 13.3 E.  
**Orta**, Garcia d', quoted, 119  
**Ostrich eggs**, beads, 31. Mr. Hobley suggests to me that these may merely be discs cut out of the shell of ostrich eggs and then perforated, such as he saw used as ornaments in Kavirondo.  
**Ouuando**, seems to be a region to the N. of Encoge and the river Loje. Rebello de Aragão, p. 20, calls it *Oombo* (Wumbo) and says the copper mines of Mpemba are situated within it. J. C. Carneiro (*An. do cons. ultr.*, ii, 1861, p. 172) says that the proper name is *Uhamba* (pronounced Wamba) or *Ubamba*. Dapper calls it *Oando* (pronounced Wando). Rev. Thos. Lewis tells me that the natives pronounce d, b, and v quite indistinctly, and suggests *Wembo*. He rejects *Ubamba* as a synonym. From all this we may accept Wembo, Wandu, or Wanbo as synonymous. See Wembo.  
**Oulainga**. See Wanga.  
**Outeiro**, the "Hill," a vulgar designation of S. Salvador.  
**Ozoni**. See Onzo.  
**Pacheco**, Manuel, 116, 139  
**Padrão**, Cabo do, at Kongo mouth, 6.1 S., 12.4 E., 105, 107, 125  
**Palm cloth**, 9, 31, 43, 50, 52  
**Palm oil**, 7

**Palm trees**, 69  
**Palmar**, Cabo or Punta do, 5.6 S., 12.1 E.  
**Palmas**, Cabo das, on Guinea coast, 2  
**Palongola**, a village one mile outside S. Salvador (Cavazzi.) No such village exists now.  
**Palongola**, kilombo of Kasanji ka Kinjuri in Little Ngangela (Cavazzi, 42, 781, 793).  
**Pampus Bay**, Dutch name given to S. Antonio Bay at Kongo mouth, 126  
**Pangu**. See Mpangu.  
**Panzu**. See Mpanzu.  
**Parrots**, 54  
**Partridges**, 63  
**Paul III**, Pope, 113  
**Peacocks**, sacred birds, 26  
**Peas**, 67  
**Pechuel-Loesche**, quoted, 18, 40, 43, 54, 55, 60, 66, 76, 104  
**Pedras da Ambuila**, are the Pedras de Nkoski, or the "Roca" S. of the Presidio de Encoge, 7.7 S., 15.4 E., 129  
**Pedro**, King of Portugal, 181  
**Pedro I**, King of Kongo, 117, 136  
**Pedro II**, King of Kongo, 123, 137  
**Pedro III**, King of Kongo, 131, 137  
**Pedro IV**, King of Kongo, 130, 133, 137  
**Pedro Constantino**, King of Kongo, 133, 138  
**Pedro**, Dom, negro ambassador to Portugal, 110  
**Pegado**, Captain Ruy, 175  
**Peixoto**, Antonio Lopez, 19, 147  
**Peixoto**, Manuel Freis, 176  
**Pelicans**, 63  
**Pemba**. See Mpemba.  
**Penedo de Bruto**, 9.1 S., 13.7 E., 146  
**Pereira**, Andre Ferreira, 144, 148  
**Pereira**, Luiz Ferreira, 149  
**Pereira**, Manuel Cerveira, 37, 38, 39, 72, 156, 159, 161, 182, 188  
**Pete** (puita), a musical instrument, 15, 21, 33  
**Pheasants**, 63  
**Philip of Spain**, King of Portugal, 121, 153, 169  
**Philip II**, King of Portugal, 122  
**Phillips**, R. C., quoted, xvii, 15, 17, 45  
**Pigafetta**, quoted, x, 14, 42, 74, 122. See also Lopez.  
**Pimental**, quoted, 16

**Pina**, Ruy de, quoted, 104, 108  
**Pinda**. See Mpinda.  
**Pinto**, Serpo, quoted, 17  
**Pirates**, 170, 175  
**Piri**, the lowland of Luangu, inhabited by the Bavili.  
**Pitta**, Antonio Goncalves, 121, 159  
**Plata**, Rio de la, 4  
**Plymouth**, departure, 2  
**Poison ordeals**, 59, 61, 73, 80  
**Pongo** (Mpunga), an ivory trumpet, 15, 21, 33, 47, 86  
**Pontes**, Vicente Pegado de, 175  
**Portuguese** knowledge of inner Africa, xv; massacre of Portuguese in Angola, 145; in Kongo, 105  
**Poultry**, 63  
**Prata**, Serra da, the supposed "silver mountain" near Kambambe, 27  
**Prazo**, Porto do, the bay of the Kongo.  
**Prohibitions**. See Tabu.  
**Proyart**, quoted, 64  
**Pumbeiros** (from *Pumbeiru*, hawker), in Kongo, the country of the Avumbu, the trading district about Stanley Pool is known as Mpumbu (Bentley). See p. 164 for "Shoeless Pumbeiros."  
**Punga**, an ivory trumpet. See Pongo.  
**Purchas**, as editor, xi  
**Pungu a ndongo**, 9.7 S., 15.5 E., 143, 178  
**Pygmies**, 59  
**Quadra**, Gregorio de, 116  
**Quelle** (Kuilu), river, 4.5 S., 11.7 E., 52  
**Quesama**. See Kisama.  
**Queimados**, serras, "burnt mountains" (D. Lopez), about 6.9 S., 15.3 E.  
**Quesanga**, a fetish, 24  
**Qui**. See Ki.  
**Quigoango**. See Kinkwango.  
**Quina** (Kina), sepulture, 166  
**Quiôa**. See Kiowa.  
**Quisama**. See Kisama.  
**Quimbêbe** of D. Lopez, I believe ought to have been spelt Quimbêbe (pron. Kimbembe), and to be identical with Cavazzi's wide district of Bembe (Mbembe). Its king, Matama, may have been the Matima (Mathemo) near whose Kilombo Queen Nzinga was defeated, p. 166. The Beshimba, or Basimba (Nogueira, *A raça negra*, 1881, p. 98) have nothing to do with this Kimbembe, but may have given origin

- to the Cimbebasia of the missionaries. *See* Bembe.
- Quingi.** *See* Kinti.
- Quinguego** (D. Lopez). *See* Kingengo.
- Rafael**, king of Kongo, 130, 131, 137
- Raft**, built by Battell, 41
- Rain-making** in Luangu, 46
- Rangel**, D. Miguel Baptista, bishop, 122
- Rapozo**, Luiz Mendes, 147
- Rebello**, Pedro Alvares, 154
- Resende**, Garcia de, quoted, 104, 108
- Revenue**, administrative reforms, 169
- Ribeiro**, Christovão, Jesuit, 118
- Ribeiro**, Gonçalo Rodrigues, 111
- Rimba**, district, 11.5 S., 14.5 E., 180
- Rio de Janiero**, 6.
- "Roebuck,"** voyage of, 89
- Rolas**, Ilheo das, islet off S. Thomé, 3
- Roza**, José de, 186
- Sá**, Diogo Rodrigo de, 129
- Sá**, Salvador Corrêa de, governor of Rio, 90, 93
- Sá de Benevides**, Salvador Corrêa de, 174, 189
- Sabalo**, inland town S.-E., of Sela (D. Lopez).
- Sakeda**, mbanza in Lubolo, 180
- Salag**, mani, 50. Dennett suggests *Salanganga*, Rev. Tho. Lewis *Salenga*.
- Salaries** of officials in 1607, 163
- Saldanha de Menezes e Sousa**, Ayres de, 190
- Saltpeter** mountains (Serras de Salnitre), of D. Lopez, are far inland, to the east of the Barbela.
- Salt mines**, 36, 37, 160
- Samanibanza**, village in Mbamba, 14
- Santa Cruz** of Tenerife, 2
- S. Cruz**, abandoned fort on the Kwanza, perhaps at Isandeira, 9.1 S., 13.4 E., 146 n.
- S. Felipe de Benguella**, 12.6 S., 15.4 E., 160, 170, 173, 183
- S. Miguel**, Roque de, 157
- S. Miguel**, fort and morro, 8.8 S., 13.2 E., 145, 170, 174
- S. Paulo de Loande**, 8.8 S., 13.2 E., 7, 13, 144, 157, 171-174. *See also* Luandu.
- S. Pedro**, Penedo de, (perhaps identical with the Penedo de A. Bruto, 9.1 S., 13.7 E.), 145
- San. Salvador**, 6.2 S., 14.3 E., the Portuguese name of the capital of Kougo, also referred to simply as "Outeiro," the Hill, on the ground of its situation. The native names are Mbaji a ekongo (the palaver place of Kongo), Mbaji a nkanu (the place of judgment), Nganda a ekongo or Ngandekongo (the "town") or ekongo dia ngungo (town of church-bells, because of its numerous churches), 103, 109, 117, 123, 131, 134
- S. Sebastian**, in Brazil, 6
- S. Thomé**, island, 139
- Schweinfurth**, quoted, 67
- Seals** in the Rio de la Plata, 5
- Seat.** *See* Sette.
- Sebaste**, name given by Dias to Angola, 145
- Sebastian**, King of Portugal, 145
- Sela.** *See* Nsela.
- Sequeira**, Bartholomeu Duarte de, 177
- Sequeira**, Francisco de, 148
- Sequeira**, Luiz Lopez de, 129, 153, 177, 178, 180
- Serra comprida**, the "long range," supposed to extend from C. Catharina to the Barreira Vermelha, 1.8 to 5.3 S.
- Serrão**, João, 146
- Serrão**, Luiz de, 144, 147, 148, 150, 188
- Sette**, 2.6 S., 10 3 E., 58
- Shelambanza.** *See* Shilambanze.
- Shells**, as ornaments, 31, 32
- Shilambanza**, 26, 86 (a village of the uncle of King Ngola), and *Axilambanza* (a village said to belong to the king's father-in-law), are evidently the same place, situated about 9.8 S., 15.1 E.
- Shingiri**, a diviner, soothsayer.
- Sierra Leone**, supposed home of the Jaga, 19
- Silva**, Antonio da, 180
- Silva**, Gaspar de Almeida da, 182
- Silva**, Luiz Lobo da, 190
- Silva**, Pedro da, 182
- Silva e Sousa**, João da, 190
- Silver** and silver mines, 27, 113, 115, 122, 128, 140, 145
- Silver mountain** (Serra da Prata), supposed to be near Kambambe.
- Simão da Silva**, 112
- Simões**, Garcia, Jesuit, 143, 144, 202
- Sims**, Rev. A., quoted, 198
- Singhilamento** (Cavazzi, 189, 198), a divination, from Shing'iri, a diviner.

- Sinsu**, a district on Mbengu river, N. of Luandu (Dapper), 8.7 S., 13.3 E.
- Slave trade**, 71, 96, 135, 157
- Soares**, João, Dominican, 110
- Soares**, Manuel da Rocha, 182
- Soares**, Silvestre, 124
- Soba**, kinglet, chief, only used S. of the river Dande.
- Sogno**, pronounced Sonyo, *q. v.*
- Soledade**, P. Fernando de, 108
- Sollacango** (Solankangu), a small lord in Angola, 14. Perhaps identified with Kikanga, 8.9 S., 13.8 E.
- Songa**, village on the Kwanza, 9.3 S., 13.9 E., 37, 156
- Songo**, a tribe, 11.0 S., 18.0 E., 152, 166
- Sonso**, a province of Kongo (P. Manso, 244), to N.E. of S. Salvador, 15.7 S., 14.5 E. ?
- Sonyo** (Sonho), district on lower Kongo, 6.2 S., 12.5 E., 42, 104 (origin of name).
- Sorghum**, 67
- Sotto-maior**, Francisco de, 173, 189
- Sousa**, Balthasar d'Almeida de, 154
- Sousa**, Christovão Dorte de, 118
- Sousa**, Luiz de, quoted, 108
- Sousa**, Ruy de, 108
- Souza**, Fernão de, 168, 189
- Souza**, Gonçalo de, 108
- Souza**, João Corrêa de, 123, 164, 169, 187
- Souza**, João de, 108
- Souza**, José Antonio de, 134
- Souza Chichorro**, Luiz Martim de, 189
- Soveral**, Diogo, Jesuit, 118
- Soveral**, Francisco, bishop, 168
- Sowonso** (Sonso), village 14
- Spelling**, rules followed, xvii
- Stanley**, Sir H. M., quoted, 198
- Sulphur** discovered, 160
- Sumba mbela'**, district at the Kuvu mouth, 10.8 S., 14.0 E., 160. On modern maps it is called Amboella.
- Sumbe** of Sierra Leone, are not Jaga, 150
- Sun** mountains (Serras do Sol) of D. Lopez, E. of Mbata and Barbela.
- Sundi**. See Nsundi.
- Susa**, district of Matamba, 7.8 S., 16.6 E.
- Sutu Bay**, 9.7 S., 13.3 E., 173
- Tabu** (prohibitions), 57, 78
- Tacula** (red sanders), 82
- Talama mtumbo** (S. João Bautista), in Nzenza do Ngulungu, 9.2 S., 14.2 E.
- Tala mugongo**, mountain, 9.8 S., 17.5 E.
- Tamba**, district, 10.1 S., 15.5 E., 180
- Tari (Tadi) ria nzundu**, district in Kongo. A *Tadi*, 4.9 S., 15.2 E.; a *Nzundu*, 5.6 S., 14.9 E.
- Tavale**, a musical instrument, 21
- Tavares**, Bernardo de Tavora Sousa, 190
- Tavora**, Francisco de, 178, 190
- Teeth**, filed or pulled out, 37
- Teka ndungu**, near Kambamba, 9.7 S., 14.6 E., 147
- Temba ndumba**, a daughter of Dongy, 152
- Tenda** (Tinda), town between Ambrize and Loze (D. Lopez).
- Theft**, its discovery, 56, 80, 83
- Tihman**, Captain, 125
- Tin** mines, 119.
- Tombo**, village, 9.1 S., 13.3 E., 36, 145
- Tondo** (Tunda), a district, 10.0 S., 15.0 E., 26
- Tovar**, Joseph Pellicer de, quoted, 126
- Treaties** with Holland, 128, 175
- Trials** before a fetish, 56, 80, 83
- Trombash**, or war-hatchet, 34, 86
- Tuckey**, Capt., quoted, 77
- Turner**, Thomas, ix, 7, 71
- Ukole**, island in Kwanza, 9.7 S., 15.7 E.
- Ulanga**, battle of 1666, 7.7 S., 17.4 E., 127, 179
- Ulhoa**, D. Manuel de, bishop, 122
- Ulolo**. See Mpangu.
- Umba**, district of, 8.1 S., 16.7 E., 167
- Vaccas**, Bahia das, 12.6 S., 13.4 E., 16, 29, 160
- Vamba**, river. See Vumba.
- Vamma**, district at mouth of Dande (Dapper), 8.5 S., 13.3 E.
- Vambu a ngongo**, a vassal of Kongo, in the south, who sided with the Portuguese. He seems to be identical with Nambu a ngongo, *q. v.*
- Vasconcellos**, Ernesto, quoted, 210
- Vasconcellos**, Luiz Mendes de, 163, 188
- Vasconcellos da Cunha**, Bartholomeu, 127, 189

**Vasconcellos da Cunha**, Francisco de, 167-170, 174, 179, 189

**Veanga** (Paiva Manso, 244), a prince of Kongo. Rev. Tho. Lewis suggests *Nkanga*, E. of S. Salvador, 6.3 S., 14.6 E.

**Vellez**, João Castanhosa, 147

**Velloria**, João de, 149, 153, 155

**Verbela**, a river, perhaps the same as Barbela (Duarte Lopez).

**Viéra**, Antonio, 113

**Vieira**, Antonio, a negro, 119

**Vieira**, João Fernandez de, 173, 179, 183-185, 189

**Vilhegas**, Diogo de. See Antonio de Denis.

**Voss**, Isaac, his work on the Nile, xv

**Vumba** (Va-umba, "at or near Umba," a river that runs to the Zaire (Lopez), called *Vamba* (Cavazzi) = the *Hamba* (C. and I). Mechow (*Abh. G. F. E.*, 1882, p. 486) mentions a large river *Humba* to the E. of the Kwangu; a river *Wamba* joins the lower Kwangu; another *Vamba* joins the lower Zaire, and leads up to Porto Rico. (Vasconcellos, *Bol.*, 1882, 734); and there is a river *Umba* or *Vumba* in E. Africa. (*Vumba* = to make pots, in Kongo). *Vamba* is perhaps another name for the Kwangu.

**Vunda**, district of Kongo (Paiva Manso, 104); but *Vunda* means "to rest," and there are many of these mid day halting-places of the old slave gangs; the villages where they passed the night being called *Vemadia*, i.e., Ave Maria (Tho. Lewis). A village *Vunda*, on the Kongo, 5.2 S., 13.7 E.

**Walkenaer**, quoted, 19, 22

**Wamba**, river. See Vumba.

**Wembo**, or Wandu, district 7.5 S., 15.0 E., 123, 126. See Ouanda.

**Welwitsch**, quoted, 16, 17

**West India Company**, Dutch, 170

**Wheat** (maize), 7, 11

**Wilson**, Rev. Leighton, quoted, 134

**Witchcraft**, 61

**Women**, first European, at Luandu, 155

**Wouters**, a Belgian capuchin, 132

**Ybare**. See Ibare.

**Yumba**, country, 3.3 S., 10.7 E. 53, 82

**Zaire**, (Nzari, or Nzadi). See Kongo.

**Zariambala**, (Nzari Ambala of Zucchelli, probably the Mamballa R. of Turkey, which is the main channel of the Kongo in 12.9 E.

**Zebra**, and zebra tails, 33, 63

**Zenze** (Nzenza), river bank, *Nzanra*, table land, said to be the proper name of the river M'bengu, and also the name of several districts.

**Zenze angumbe**. See Nzenza.

**Zerri** (Chera), N. of Mboma, 5.8 S., 13.1 E.

**Zimba**, the first Jaga, 152; the Zimba are identical with the Maravi in East Africa, 150

**Zimbo**, soldiers of a Jaga (Cavazzi, 183).

**Zoca**, an inland town, S. of Mbata (D. Lopez).

**Zolo** (Nzolo), a village on road from S. Salvador to Mbata, 6.0 S., 15.1 E.

**Zombo**, (Mosombi), the tribe inhabiting Mbata, 5.8 S., 15.5 E.

**Zongo**, of Cavazzi, Mosongo of Rebello de Aragoa; our Songo, 11.0 S., 17.5 E.

**Zucchelli**, Antonio, 132, 184, 186

# THE HAKLUYT SOCIETY.

1901.

---

## President.

SIR CLEMENTS MARKHAM, K.C.B., F.R.S., Pres. R.G.S.

## Vice-Presidents.

THE RIGHT HON. LORD STANLEY OF ALDERLEY.

REAR-ADMIRAL SIR WILLIAM WHARTON, K.C.B., F.R.S.

## Council.

C. RAYMOND BEAZLEY, M.A.  
COMMR. B. M. CHAMBERS, R.N.  
COLONEL G. EARL CHURCH.  
SIR W. MARTIN CONWAY.  
F. H. H. GUILLEMARD, M.A., M.D.  
EDWARD HEAWOOD, M.A.  
DUDLEY F. A. HERVEY, C.M.G.  
ADMIRAL SIR A. H. HOSKINS, G.C.B.  
E. F. IM THURN, C.B., C.M.G.

J. SCOTT KELTIE, LL.D.  
F. W. LUCAS.  
A. P. MAUDSLAY.  
E. J. PAYNE, M.A.  
HOWARD SAUNDERS.  
H. W. TRINDER.  
CHARLES WELCH, F.S.A.  
R. S. WHITEWAY.

## Hon. Secretary and (*pro tem.*) Treasurer.

WILLIAM FOSTER, B.A.,  
CLIFDEN HOUSE, EARLHAM GROVE, FOREST GATE.

## Bankers in London.

MESSRS. BARCLAY & CO., 1, PALL MALL EAST, S.W.

## Bankers in New York.

THE MORTON TRUST CO., CORNER OF CEDAR AND NASSAU STREETS.

## Agent for distribution, &c., of Volumes.

MR. B. QUARITCH, 15, PICCADILLY, W.

---

Annual Subscription.—One Guinea (in America five dollars.)

---

THE HAKLUYT SOCIETY, established in 1846, has for its object the printing of rare or unpublished Voyages and Travels. Books of this class are of the highest interest and value to students of history, geography, navigation, and ethnology; and many of them, especially the original narratives and translations of the Elizabethan

and Stuart periods, are admirable examples of English prose at the stage of its most robust development.

The Society has not confined its selection to the books of English travellers, to a particular age, or to particular regions. Where the original is foreign, the work is given in English, fresh translations being made, except where it is possible to utilise the spirited renderings of the sixteenth or seventeenth century.

More than a hundred volumes have now been issued by the Society. The majority of these illustrate the history of the great age of discovery which forms the foundation of modern history. The discovery of AMERICA, and of particular portions of the two great western continents, is represented by the writings of COLUMBUS, AMERIGO VESPUCCI, CORTES and CHAMPLAIN, and by several of the early narratives from HAKLUYT'S collection. The works relating to the conquest of PERU, and to the condition of that country under the Incas, are numerous and of the highest value; similar interest attaches to STRACHEY'S *Virginia Britannia*, DE SOTO'S *Discovery of Florida*, and SIR ROBERT SCHOMBURGK'S edition of RALEIGH'S *Discoverie of Guiana*. The works relating to AFRICA already published comprise BARBOSA'S *Coasts of East Africa*, the *Portuguese Embassy to Abyssinia* of ALVAREZ, and *The Travels of Leo the Moor*. Notices of AUSTRALIA, INDIA, PERSIA, CHINA, JAPAN, etc., as they appeared in early times to European eyes, both before and after the discovery of the Cape route, are also included in the series, a well-known example being the work on *Cathay and the Way Thither*, contributed by a former President, SIR HENRY YULE. The search for the North-west and North-east Passages is recorded in the narratives of JENKINSON, DE VEER, FROBISHER, DAVIS, HUDSON, BAFFIN, etc.; whilst more extensive voyages are signalled by the great names of MAGELLAN, DRAKE, and HAWKINS.

The works selected by the Council for reproduction are printed (with rare exceptions) at full length. Each volume is placed in the charge of an editor especially competent—in many cases from personal acquaintance with the countries described—to give the reader such assistance as he needs for the elucidation of the text. Whenever possible, the interest of the volumes is increased by the addition of reproductions of contemporary portraits, maps, and other illustrations.

As these editorial services are rendered gratuitously, *the whole of the amount received from subscribers is expended in the preparation of the Society's publications.*

The subscription should be paid to the Society's Bankers on the 1st January in each year. This entitles the subscriber to receive, free of charge, the current publications of the Society. Usually three volumes are issued each year. Members have the sole

privilege of purchasing sets of the previous publications; and the more recent of the Society's volumes are also reserved exclusively for its subscribers. In addition, they are allowed a special discount of 15 per cent. on the volumes permitted to be sold to the public. It may be mentioned that the publications of the Society tend to rise in value, and those which are out of print are now only to be obtained at high prices.

The present scale of charges for back volumes is as follows :—

TO MEMBERS.—*Sets of the FIRST SERIES*, omitting Nos. 1-10, 12, 19, 25, 36, 37, to be sold for . . . . . net £30.

N.B.—*Most of the out-of-print volumes have been, or are being, reprinted as later volumes of the series.*

TO THE PUBLIC GENERALLY.—*A limited number of single copies* as follows :—

Nos. 23, 26, 29, 31, 34, 40, 47, 50, at . . . . .	8s. 6d.
Nos. 21, 28, 30, 35, 46, 48, 51, 53, 55, 56, 58, 60 to 87, 90 to 100, at . . . . .	10s.
Nos. 20, 27, 33, 38, 41 to 45, 49, 52, 57, 88, 89, at . . . . .	15s.
Nos. 54 and 59, at . . . . .	20s.

\* \* \* Subject in case of Members to a discount of 15%.

*The volumes of the SECOND SERIES can only be obtained by paying the arrears of subscription.*

A list of works in preparation is given at page 11. The Secretary will be happy to furnish any further information that may be desired.

Gentlemen desiring to be enrolled as members should send their names to the Secretary. Applications for back volumes should be addressed to MR. QUARITCH.

## WORKS ALREADY ISSUED.

### FIRST SERIES.

1—**The Observations of Sir Richard Hawkins, Knt.,**  
In his Voyage into the South Sea in 1593. Reprinted from the edition of 1622, and edited by Capt. C. R. D. BETHUNE, R.N., C.B.  
(*First Edition out of print. See No. 57.*) Issued for 1847.

2—**Select Letters of Columbus,**  
With Original Documents relating to the Discovery of the New World. Translated and Edited by R. H. MAJOR.  
(*First Edition out of print. See No. 43.*) Issued for 1847.

3—**The Discovery of the Empire of Gulana.**  
By Sir Walter Raleygh, Knt. Edited by SIR ROBERT H. SCHOMBURGK, Ph.D.  
(*First Edition out of print. Second Edition in preparation.*) Issued for 1848.

4—**Sir Francis Drake his Voyage, 1595,**  
By Thomas Maynarde, together with the Spanish Account of Drake's attack on Puerto Rico. Edited by W. D. COOLEY.  
(*Out of print.*) Issued for 1848.

**5—Narratives of Early Voyages to the North-West.**

Edited by THOMAS RUNDALL.

*(Out of print.) Issued for 1849.*

**6—The Historie of Travalle into Virginia Britannia,**

Expressing the Cosmographie and Commodities of the Country, together with the manners and customs of the people, collected by William Strachey, Gent., the first Secretary of the Colony. Edited by R. H. MAJOR.

*(Out of print.) Issued for 1849.*

**7—Divers Voyages touching the Discovery of America**

And the Islands adjacent, collected and published by Richard Hakluyt, Prebendary of Bristol, in the year 1582. Edited by JOHN WINTER JONES.

*(Out of print.) Issued for 1850.*

**8—A Collection of Documents on Japan.**

With a Commentary by THOMAS RUNDALL.

*(Out of print.) Issued for 1850.*

**9—The Discovery and Conquest of Florida,**

By Don Ferdinando de Soto. Translated out of Portuguese by Richard Hakluyt; and Edited by W. B. RYE.

*(Out of print.) Issued for 1851.*

**10—Notes upon Russia,**

Being a Translation from the Earliest Account of that Country, entitled *Rerum Muscoviticarum Commentarii*, by the Baron Sigismund von Herberstein, Ambassador from the Court of Germany to the Grand Prince Vasiley Ivanovich, in the years 1517 and 1526. Two Volumes. Translated and Edited by R. H. MAJOR. Vol. I.

*(Out of print.) Issued for 1851.*

**11—The Geography of Hudson's Bay,**

Being the Remarks of Captain W. Coats, in many Voyages to that locality, between the years 1727 and 1751. With Extracts from the Log of Captain Middleton on his Voyage for the Discovery of the North-west Passage, in H.M.S. "Furnace," in 1741-2. Edited by JOHN BARROW, F.R.S., F.S.A.

*Issued for 1852.*

**12—Notes upon Russia.**

Vol. 2. *(Out of print.) Issued for 1852.*

**13—Three Voyages by the North-East,**

Towards Cathay and China, undertaken by the Dutch in the years 1594, 1595 and 1596, with their Discovery of Spitzbergen, their residence of ten months in Novaya Zemlya, and their safe return in two open boats. By Gerrit de Veer.

Edited by C. T. BEKE, Ph.D., F.S.A.

*(See also No. 54.) Issued for 1853.*

**14-15—The History of the Great and Mighty Kingdom of China and the Situation Thereof.**

Compiled by the Padre Juan Gonzalez de Mendoza. Reprinted Early Translation of R. Parke, and Edited by SIR GEORGE T. ST Bart. With an Introduction by R. H. MAJOR. 2 vols.

*Issued for 1854.*

**16—The World Encompassed by Sir Francis Drake.**

Being his next Voyage to that to Nombre de Dios. Collated with an unpublished Manuscript of Francis Fletcher, Chaplain to the Expedition. Edited by W. S. W. VAUX, M.A. *Issued for 1855.*

- 17—The History of the Tartar Conquerors who subdued China.**  
From the French of the Père D'Orleans, 1688. Translated and Edited by the  
**EARL OF ELLESMERE.** With an Introduction by R. H. MAJOR.  
*Issued for 1855.*
- 18—A Collection of Early Documents on Spitzbergen and Greenland.**  
Edited by ADAM WHITE. *Issued for 1856.*
- 19—The Voyage of Sir Henry Middleton to Bantam and the Maluco Islands.**  
From the rare Edition of 1606. Edited by BOLTON CORNEY.  
(*Out of print.*) *Issued for 1856.*
- 20—Russia at the Close of the Sixteenth Century.**  
Comprising "The Russe Commonwealth" by Dr. Giles Fletcher, and Sir  
Jerome Horsey's Travels. Edited by E. A. BOND.  
*Issued for 1857.*
- 21—The Travels of Girolamo Benzoni in America, in 1542-56.**  
Translated and Edited by ADMIRAL W. H. SMYTH, F.R.S., F.S.A.  
*Issued for 1857.*
- 22—India in the Fifteenth Century.**  
Being a Collection of Narratives of Voyages to India in the century preceding  
the Portuguese discovery of the Cape of Good Hope; from Latin, Persian,  
Russian, and Italian Sources. Edited by R. H. MAJOR.  
*Issued for 1858.*
- 23—Narrative of a Voyage to the West Indies and Mexico,**  
In the years 1599-1602, with Maps and Illustrations. By Samuel Champlain.  
Translated from the original and unpublished Manuscript, with a Biographical  
Notice and Notes by ALICE WILMERE. *Issued for 1858.*
- 24—Expeditions into the Valley of the Amazons**  
During the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries: containing the Journey of  
Gonzalo Pizarro, from the Royal Commentaries of Garcilasso Inca de la Vega;  
the Voyage of Francisco de Orellana, from the General History of Herrera;  
and the Voyage of Cristoval de Acuna. Translated and Edited by CLEMENTS  
R. MARKHAM. *Issued for 1859.*
- 25—Early Indications of Australia.**  
A Collection of Documents shewing the Early Discoveries of Australia to the  
time of Captain Cook. Edited by R. H. MAJOR.  
(*Out of print.*) *Issued for 1859.*
- 26—The Embassy of Ruy Gonzalez de Clavijo to the Court of Timour, 1403-6.**  
Translated and Edited by CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM.  
*Issued for 1860.*
- 27—Henry Hudson the Navigator.**  
The Original Documents in which his career is recorded. Edited by GEORGE  
ASHER, LL.D. *Issued for 1860.*
- 28—The Expedition of Ursua and Aguirre,**  
In search of El Dorado and Omagua, A.D. 1560-61. Translated from the  
"Sexta Noticia Historiale" of Fray Pedro Simon, by W. BOLLAERT, with  
an Introduction by CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM.  
*Issued for 1861.*
- 29—The Life and Acts of Don Alonzo Enriquez de Guzman.**

**30—Discoveries of the World**

From their first original unto the year of our Lord 1555. By Antonio Galvano.  
Reprinted, with the original Portuguese text, and edited by VICE-ADMIRAL  
BETHUNE, C.B. *Issued for 1862.*

**31—Marvels described by Friar Jordanus,**

From a parchment manuscript of the Fourteenth Century, in Latin. Edited  
by COLONEL H. YULE, C.B. *Issued for 1863.*

**32—The Travels of Ludovico di Varthema**

In Syria, Arabia, Persia, India, etc., during the Sixteenth Century. Translated  
by J. WINTER JONES, F.S.A., and Edited by the REV. GEORGE  
PERCY BADGER. *Issued for 1863.*

**33—The Travels of Cleza de Leon in 1532-50**

From the Gulf of Darien to the City of La Plata, contained in the first part of  
his Chronicle of Peru (Antwerp, 1554). Translated and Edited by CLEMENTS  
R. MARKHAM. *Issued for 1864.*

**34—The Narrative of Pascual de Andagoya.**

Containing the earliest notice of Peru. Translated and Edited by CLEMENTS  
R. MARKHAM. *Issued for 1864.*

**35—The Coasts of East Africa and Malabar**

In the beginning of the Sixteenth Century, by Duarte Barbosa. Translated  
from an early Spanish manuscript by the HON. HENRY STANLEY.  
*Issued for 1865.*

**36-37—Cathay and the Way Thither.**

A Collection of all minor notices of China, previous to the Sixteenth  
Century. Translated and Edited by COLONEL H. YULE, C.B. Two Vols.  
(*Out of print.*) *Issued for 1866.*

**38—The Three Voyages of Sir Martin Frobisher.**

With a Selection from Letters now in the State Paper Office. Edited by  
REAR-ADMIRAL COLLINSON, C.B. *Issued for 1867.*

**39—The Philippine Islands,**

Moluccas, Siam, Cambodia, Japan, and China, at the close of the 16th Century.  
By Antonia de Morga. Translated from the Spanish, with Notes, by  
the LORD STANLEY of Alderley. *Issued for 1868.*

**40—The Fifth Letter of Hernan Cortes**

To the Emperor Charles V., containing an Account of his Expedition to  
Honduras in 1525-26. Translated from the Spanish by DON PASCUAL DE  
GAYANGOS. *Issued for 1868.*

**41—The Royal Commentaries of the Yncas.**

By the Ynca Garcillasso de la Vega. Translated and Edited by CLEMENTS  
R. MARKHAM. Vol. I. *Issued for 1869.*

**42—The Three Voyages of Vasco da Gama,**

And his Viceroyalty, from the Lendas da India of Gaspar Correa; accompanied  
by original documents. Translated and Edited by the LORD STANLEY  
of Alderley. *Issued for 1869.*

**43—Select Letters of Christopher Columbus,**

With other Original Documents relating to his Four Voyages to the New  
World. Translated and Edited by R. H. MAJOR. 2nd Edition (see No. 2).  
*Issued for 1870.*

- 44—History of the Imâms and Seyyids of 'Omân,**  
By Salîl-Ibn-Razîk, from A.D. 661-1856. Translated from the original Arabic, and Edited, with a continuation of the History down to 1870, by the  
REV. GEORGE PERCY BADGER. *Issued for 1870.*
- 45—The Royal Commentaries of the Yncas.**  
Vol. 2. *Issued for 1871.*
- 46—The Canarian,**  
Or Book of the Conquest and Conversion of the Canarians in the year 1402,  
by Messire Jean de Bethencourt, Kt. Composed by Pierre Bontier and Jean  
le Verrier. Translated and Edited by R. H. MAJOR.  
*Issued for 1871.*
- 47—Reports on the Discovery of Peru.**  
Translated and Edited by CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, C.B.  
*Issued for 1872.*
- 48—Narratives of the Rites and Laws of the Yncas.**  
Translated and Edited by CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, C.B., F.R.S.  
*Issued for 1872.*
- 49—Travels to Tana and Persia,**  
By Josafa Barbaro and Ambrogio Contarini; Edited by LORD STANLEY of  
Alderley. With Narratives of other Italian Travels in Persia. Translated and  
Edited by CHARLES GREY. *Issued for 1873.*
- 50—Voyages of the Zeni**  
To the Northern Seas in the Fourteenth Century. Translated and Edited  
by R. H. MAJOR. *Issued for 1873.*
- 51—The Captivity of Hans Stade of Hesse in 1547-55,**  
Among the Wild Tribes of Eastern Brazil. Translated by ALBERT TOOTAL,  
Esq., and annotated by SIR RICHARD F. BURTON.  
*Issued for 1874.*
- 52—The First Voyage Round the World by Magellan.**  
Translated from the Accounts of Pigafetta and other contemporary writers.  
Edited by LORD STANLEY of Alderley.  
*Issued for 1874.*
- 53—The Commentaries of the Great Afonso Dalboquerque,**  
Second Viceroy of India. Translated from the Portuguese Edition of 1774,  
and Edited by WALTER DE GRAY BIRCH, F.R.S.L. Vol. I.  
*Issued for 1875.*
- 54—The Three Voyages of William Barents to the North-East.**  
Second Edition of Gerrit de Veer's Work. Edited by Lieut. KOOLEMANS  
BEYNEN, of the Royal Dutch Navy.  
*Issued for 1876.*
- 55—The Commentaries of the Great Afonso Dalboquerque.**  
Vol. 2. *Issued for 1875.*
- 56—The Voyages of Sir James Lancaster.**  
With Abstracts of Journals of Voyages preserved in the India Office, and the  
Voyage of Captain John Knight to seek the N.W. Passage. Edited by  
CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, C.B., F.R.S.  
*Issued for 1877.*
- 57—The Observations of Sir Richard Hawkins, Knt.,**  
In his Voyage into the South Sea in 1593, with the Voyages of his grand-  
father William, his father Sir John, and his cousin William Hawkins.  
Second Edition (see No. 1). Edited by CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, C.B.,  
F.R.S. *Issued for 1877.*

**58—The Bondage and Travels of Johann Schiltberger,**  
From his capture at the battle of Nicopolis in 1396 to his escape and return  
to Europe in 1427. Translated by Commander J. BUCHAN TELFER, R.N.;  
with Notes by Professor B. BRUUN. *Issued for 1878.*

**59—The Voyages and Works of John Davis the Navigator.**  
Edited by Captain ALBERT H. MARKHAM, R.N. *Issued for 1878.*

**The Map of the World, A.D. 1600.**  
Called by Shakspeare "The New Map, with the Augmentation of the Indies."  
To illustrate the Voyages of John Davis. *Issued for 1878.*

**60-61—The Natural and Moral History of the Indies.**  
By Father Joseph de Acosta. Reprinted from the English Translated Edition  
of Edward Grimston, 1604; and Edited by CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, C.B.,  
F.R.S. Two Vols. *Issued for 1879.*

**Map of Peru.**  
To Illustrate Nos. 33, 41, 45, 60, and 61. *Issued for 1879.*

**62—The Commentaries of the Great Afonso Dalboquerque.**  
Vol. 3. *Issued for 1880.*

**63—The Voyages of William Baffin, 1612-1622.**  
Edited by CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, C.B., F.R.S. *Issued for 1880.*

**64—Narrative of the Portuguese Embassy to Abyssinia**  
During the years 1520-1527. By Father Francisco Alvarez. Translated and  
Edited by LORD STANLEY of Alderley. *Issued for 1881.*

**65—The History of the Bermudas or Somer Islands.**  
Attributed to Captain Nathaniel Butler. Edited by General Sir J. HENRY  
LEFROY, R.A., K.C.M.G. *Issued for 1881.*

**66-67—The Diary of Richard Cocks,**  
Cape-Merchant in the English Factory in Japan, 1615-1622. Edited by  
EDWARD MAUNDE THOMPSON. Two Vols. *Issued for 1882.*

**68—The Second Part of the Chronicle of Peru.**  
By Pedro de Cieza de Leon. Translated and Edited by CLEMENTS R.  
MARKHAM, C.B., F.R.S. *Issued for 1883.*

**69—The Commentaries of the Great Afonso Dalboquerque.**  
Vol. 4. *Issued for 1883.*

**70-71—The Voyage of John Huyghen van Linschoten to the East Indies.**  
From the Old English Translation of 1598. The First Book, containing his  
Description of the East. Edited by A. C. BURNELL, Ph.D., C.I.E., and  
P. A. TIELE, of Utrecht. *Issued for 1884.*

**72-73—Early Voyages and Travels to Russia and Persia,**  
By Anthony Jenkinson and other Englishmen, with some account of the first  
Interchange of the English with Russia and Central Asia by way of the  
Caspian Sea. Edited by E. DELMAR MORGAN, and C. H. COOTE.  
*Issued for 1885.*

**74—The Diary of William Hedges, Esq.,**  
Afterwards Sir William Hedges, during his Agency in Bengal; as well as on  
his Voyage out and Return Overland (1681-1687). Transcribed for the Press,  
with Introductory Notes, etc., by R. BARLOW, and Illustrated by copious  
Extracts from Unpublished Records, etc., by Col. Sir H. YULE, K.C.S.I.,  
F.R.S. *Issued for 1886.*

- 75—The Diary of William Hedges, Esq.**  
Vol. 2. Sir H. Yule's Extracts from Unpublished Records, etc.  
*Issued for 1886.*
- 76-77—The Voyage of François Pyrard to the East Indies,**  
The Maldives, the Moluccas and Brazil. Translated into English from the  
Third French Edition of 1619, and Edited by ALBERT GRAY, assisted by  
H. C. P. BELL. Vol. 1. Vol. 2, Part I.  
*Issued for 1887.*
- 78—The Diary of William Hedges, Esq.**  
Vol. 3. Sir H. Yule's Extracts from Unpublished Records, etc.  
*Issued for 1888.*
- 79—Tractatus de Globis, et eorum usu.**  
A Treatise descriptive of the Globes constructed by Emery Molyneux, and  
Published in 1592. By Robert Hues. Edited by CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM,  
C.B., F.R.S. To which is appended,  
**Sailing Directions for the Circumnavigation of England,**  
And for a Voyage to the Straits of Gibraltar. From a Fifteenth Century  
MS. Edited by JAMES GAIRDNER; with a Glossary by E. DELMAR  
MORGAN.  
*Issued for 1888.*
- 80—The Voyage of François Pyrard to the East Indies, etc.**  
Vol. 2, Part II. *Issued for 1889.*
- 81—The Conquest of La Plata, 1535-1555.**  
I.—Voyage of Ulrich Schmidt to the Rivers La Plata and Paraguai. II.—  
The Commentaries of Alvar Nunez Cabeza de Vaca. Edited by DON LUIS  
L. DOMINGUEZ. *Issued for 1889.*
- 82-83—The Voyage of François Leguat**  
To Rodriguez, Mauritius, Java, and the Cape of Good Hope. Edited by  
Captain PASFIELD OLIVER. Two Vols.  
*Issued for 1890.*
- 84-85—The Travels of Pietro della Valle to India.**  
From the Old English Translation of 1664, by G. Havers. Edited by  
EDWARD GREY. Two Vols. *Issued for 1891.*
- 86—The Journal of Christopher Columbus**  
During his First Voyage (1492-93), and Documents relating to the Voyages  
of John Cabot and Gaspar Corte Real. Translated and Edited by CLEMENTS  
R. MARKHAM, C.B., F.R.S. *Issued for 1892.*
- 87—Early Voyages and Travels in the Levant.**  
I.—The Diary of Master Thomas Dallam, 1599-1600. II.—Extracts from the  
Diaries of Dr. John Covel, 1670-1679. With some Account of the Levant  
Company of Turkey Merchants. Edited by J. THEODORE BENT, F.S.A.,  
F.R.G.S. *Issued for 1892.*
- 88-89—The Voyages of Captain Luke Foxe and Captain Thomas James**  
In Search of a N.-W. Passage, 1631-32; with Narratives of Earlier N.-W.  
Voyages. Edited by MILLER CHRISTY, F.L.S. Two Vols.  
*Issued for 1893.*
- 90—The Letters of Amerigo Vespucci**  
And other Documents relating to his Career. Translated and Edited by  
CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, C.B., F.R.S. *Issued for 1894.*

**91—The Voyage of Pedro Sarmiento to the Strait of Magellan, 1579-80.**  
Translated and Edited, with Illustrative Documents and Introduction, by  
CLEMENTS R. MARKHAM, C.B., F.R.S.

*Issued for 1894.*

**92-93-94—The History and Description of Africa,**  
And of the Notable Things Therein Contained. The Travels of Leo Africanus  
the Moor, from the English translation of John Pory (1600). Edited by  
ROBERT BROWN, M.A., Ph.D. Three Vols.

*Issued for 1895.*

**95—The Discovery and Conquest of Guinea.**  
Written by Gomes Eannes de Azurara. Translated and Edited by C. RAYMOND  
BEAZLEY, M.A., and EDGAR PRESTAGE, B.A. Vol. 1.

*Issued for 1896.*

**96-97—Danish Arctic Expeditions.**  
Book 1. The Danish Expeditions to Greenland, 1605-07; with James Hall's  
Voyage in 1612. Edited by C. C. A. GOSCH. *Issued for 1896.*  
Book 2. Jens Munk's Voyage to Hudson's Bay in 1619-20. Edited by  
C. C. A. GOSCH. *Issued for 1897.*

**98—The Topographia Christiana of Cosmas Indicopleustes.**  
Translated and Edited by J. W. MCCRINDLE, M.A., M.R.A.S.  
*Issued for 1897.*

**99—The First Voyage of Vasco da Gama.**  
Translated from the Portuguese, with an Introduction and Notes, by E. G.  
RAVENSTEIN. *Issued for 1898.*

**100—The Discovery and Conquest of Guinea.**  
Written by Gomes Eannes de Azurara. Translated and Edited by C.  
RAYMOND BEAZLEY, M.A., and EDGAR PRESTAGE, B.A. Vol. 2.  
*Issued for 1898.*

## SECOND SERIES.

**1-2—The Embassy of Sir Thomas Roe to the Court of the Great Mogul,**  
1615-19.

Edited from Contemporary Records by WILLIAM FOSTER, B.A.  
*Issued for 1899.*

**3—The Voyage of Sir Robert Dudley to the West Indies and Gulana in 1594.**  
Edited by GEO. F. WARNER, M.A., F.S.A., Assistant Keeper of  
Manuscripts, British Museum. *Issued for 1899.*

**4—The Journeys of William of Rubruck and John of Plan de Carpine**  
To Tartary in the 13th century. Translated and Edited by the Hon. W. W.  
ROCKHILL. *Issued for 1900.*

**5—The Voyage of Captain John Saris to Japan in 1613.**  
Edited by H. E. SIR ERNEST M. SATOW, K.C.M.G.  
*Issued for 1900.*

**6—The Strange Adventures of Andrew Battell of Leigh in Essex.**  
Edited by E. G. RAVENSTEIN. *Issued for 1900.*

## OTHER WORKS UNDERTAKEN BY EDITORS.

---

- The Principall Navigations of the English Nation. By RICHARD HAKLUYT.  
From the edition of 1598-1600. To be issued in about ten volumes.
- The Voyage of Alvaro de Mendaña to the Solomon Islands in 1568. Edited  
by the LORD AMHERST OF HACKNEY and BASIL H. THOMSON.
- Raleigh's Empire of Guiana. Second Edition (see No. 3). Edited, with  
Notes, etc., by EVERARD F. IM THURN, C.B., C.M.G.
- The Voyages of Cadamosto, the Venetian, along the West Coast of Africa, in  
the years 1455 and 1456. Translated from the earliest Italian text of  
1507, and Edited by H. YULE OLDHAM, M.A., F.R.G.S.
- Dr. John Fryer's New Account of East India and Persia (1698). Edited by  
ARTHUR T. PRINGLE.
- The Expedition of Hernan Cortes to Honduras in 1525-26. Second Edition  
(see No. 40), with added matter. Translated and Edited by A. P.  
MAUDSLAY.
- The Letters of Pietro Della Valle from Persia, &c. Translated and Edited by  
MAJOR M. NATHAN, C.M.G., R.E.
- The Journey of Pedro Teixeira from India to Italy by land, 1604-05; with his  
Chronicle of the Kings of Ormus. Translated and Edited by W. F.  
SINCLAIR, late I.C.S.
- The Travels of Peter Mundy in India, 1628-34. Edited from an unpublished  
MS. by COLONEL R. C. TEMPLE, C.I.E.
- Thomas Herbert's Description of the Persian Monarchy. Edited by Major  
P. MOLESWORTH SYKES.
- The Voyage of Robert Harcourt to Guiana in 1609-10. Edited by G. F.  
WARNER, M.A., F.S.A.
- The Portuguese Expedition to Abyssinia in 1541, as narrated by Castanhoso  
and Bermudez. Edited by R. S. WHITEWAY, late I.C.S.

## LAWS OF THE HAKLUYT SOCIETY.

---

I. The object of this Society shall be to print, for distribution among its members, rare and valuable Voyages, Travels, Naval Expeditions, and other geographical records, from an early period to the beginning of the eighteenth century.

II. The Annual Subscription shall be One Guinea (for America, five dollars, U.S. currency), payable in advance on the 1st January.

III. Each member of the Society, having paid his Subscription, shall be entitled to a copy of every work produced by the Society, and to vote at the general meetings within the period subscribed for; and if he do not signify, before the close of the year, his wish to resign, he shall be considered as a member for the succeeding year.

IV. The management of the Society's affairs shall be vested in a Council consisting of twenty-two members, viz., a President, two Vice-Presidents, a Treasurer, a Secretary, and seventeen ordinary members, to be elected annually; but vacancies occurring between the general meetings shall be filled up by the Council.

V. A General Meeting of the Subscribers shall be held annually. The Secretary's Report on the condition and proceedings of the Society shall be then read, and the meeting shall proceed to elect the Council for the ensuing year.

VI. At each Annual Election, three of the old Council shall retire.

VII. The Council shall meet when necessary for the dispatch of business, three forming a quorum, including the Secretary; the Chairman having a casting vote.

VIII. Gentlemen preparing and editing works for the Society, shall receive twenty-five copies of such works respectively.

---

# LIST OF MEMBERS.

1901.

- Aberdare, The Right Hon. Lord, Longwood, Winchester.  
 Adelaide Public Library, per Messrs. Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner & Co.  
 Admiralty, The (2 copies), per Messrs. Eyre and Spottiswoode.  
 Advocates' Library, Edinburgh, per Mr. Eccles, 96, Great Russell-street.  
 Alexander, W. L., Esq., Pinkieburn, Musselburgh, N.B.  
 All Souls College, Oxford.  
 American Geographical Society, 11, West 29th-street, New York City, U.S.A.  
 Amherst, of Hackney, The Right Hon. Lord, Diddington Hall, Brandon, Norfolk.  
 Antiga Casa Bertrand (Senhor José Bastos), 73, Rua Garrett, Lisbon.  
 Antiquaries, the Society of, Burlington House, Piccadilly, W.  
 Army and Navy Club, 36, Pall-mall.  
 Athenæum Club, Pall Mall.
- Baer, Joseph & Co., Messrs., per Messrs. Epstein, 47, Holborn Viaduct, E.C.  
 Bain, Mr., 1, Haymarket, S.W.  
 Baldwin, A., Esq., M.P., Wilden House, near Stourport.  
 Ball, John B., Esq., Ashburton Cottage, Putney Heath, S.W.  
 Barclay, Hugh G., Esq., Colney Hall, Norwich.  
 Basset, M. René, Correspondant de l'Institut de France, Directeur de l'Ecole supérieure des lettres d'Alger, L'Agha 77, rue Michelet, Alger-Mustapha.  
 Baxter, James Phinney, Esq., 61, Deering-street, Portland, Maine, U.S.A.  
 Beaumont, Rear-Admiral L. A., 3, Sloane-gardens, S.W.  
 Beazley, C. Raymond, Esq., 13, The Paragon, Blackheath, S.E. [Librarian.  
 Belfast Linen Hall Library, Donegall-square North, Belfast (Geo. Smith, Esq.,  
 Belhaven and Stenton, Col. the Lord, R.E., 41, Lennox gardens, S.W.  
 Bennett, R. A., Esq., 40, Harborne Road, Edgbaston.  
 Berlin Geographical Society, per Messrs. Sampson Low.  
 Berlin, the Royal Library of, per Messrs. Asher and Co.  
 Berlin University, Geographical Institute of (Baron von Richthofen), 6, Schinkelplatz, Berlin, W., per Messrs. Sampson Low.  
 Birch, Dr. W. de G., British Museum.  
 Birmingham Central Free Library, Ratcliff-place, Birmingham.  
 Birmingham Old Library (The), Birmingham.  
 Board of Education, South Kensington, S.W.  
 Bodleian Library, Oxford (copies presented).  
 Bonaparte, H. H. Prince Roland, 10, Avenue d'Jéna, Paris.  
 Borradaile, A. A., Esq., 44, Victoria Road, Kensington, W.  
 Boston Athenæum Library, U.S.A., per Messrs. Kegan Paul.  
 Boston Public Library, per Messrs. Kegan Paul.  
 Bowdoin College, Brunswick, Maine, U.S.A., per Messrs. Kegan Paul.  
 Bower, Major Hamilton, per Messrs. Grindlay & Co., 54, Parliament Street.  
 Bowring, Thos. B., Esq., 7, Palace Gate, Kensington, W.  
 Brewster, Charles O., Esq., University Club, New York City, U.S.A.  
 Brighton Public Library.  
 Brine, Vice-Admiral Lindesay.  
 British Guiana Royal Agricultural and Commercial Society, Georgetown, [Demerara.  
 British Museum (copies presented).  
 Brock, Robert C. H., Esq., 1612, Walnut-street, Philadelphia.  
 Brodrick, Hon. G., Merton College, Oxford.  
 Brooke, Thos., Esq., Armitage Bridge, Huddersfield.  
 Brookline Public Library, Mass., U.S.A.  
 Brooklyn Mercantile Library, per Mr. E. G. Allen.

Brown, Arthur W. W., Esq., 37, Evelyn Mansions, Carlisle-place, Victoria-street, S.W.  
 Brown, General J. Marshall, 218, Middle-street, Portland, Maine, U.S.A.  
 Brown, H. T., Esq., Roodeye House, Chester.  
 Brown, J. Allen, Esq., J.P., 7, Kent-gardens, Ealing.  
 Brown University, Providence, Rhode Island (H. L. Koopman, Librarian).  
 Buda-Pesth, the Geographical Institute of the University of.  
 Bunting, W. L. Esq., The Steps, Bromsgrove.  
 Burgess, Jas., Esq., C.I.E., LL.D., 22, Seton-place, Edinburgh.  
 Burns, Capt. J. W., Kilmahew, Cardross, Dumbartonshire.  
 Buxton, E. North, Esq., Knighton, Buckhurst-hill.

Cambridge University Library, per Mr. Eccles, 16, Great James Street.  
 Canada, The Parliament Library, per Mr. E. G. Allen.  
 Cardiff Public Library, Cardiff (J. Ballinger, Esq., Librarian).  
 Carles, W. R., Esq., C.M.G., British Consulate, Tientsin, China.  
 Carlton Club, Pall-mall.  
 Carlisle, The Rt. Hon. the Earl of, Naworth Castle, Bampton, Cumberland.  
 Carnegie Library, Pittsburgh, U.S.A., per Mr. Stechert.  
 Chamberlain, Right Hon. Joseph, M.P., 40, Princes-gardens, S.W.  
 Chambers, Commr. B. M., R.N., H.M.S. "Flora," S.E. Coast of America.  
 Chetham's Library, Hunt's Bank, Manchester.  
 Chicago Public Library, per Messrs. Stevens and Brown.  
 Christ Church, Oxford.  
 Christiania University Library, c/o Messrs. T. Bennett and Sons, Christiania, per Messrs. Cassell and Co., Ludgate Hill.  
 Church, Col. G. Earl, 216, Cromwell-road, S.W.  
 Cincinnati Public Library, Ohio, U.S.A.  
 Clark, J. W., Esq., Scroope House, Trumpington-street, Cambridge.  
 Colgan, Nathaniel, Esq., 15, Breffin-terrace, Sandycove, co. Dublin.  
 Colonial Office (The), Downing-street, S.W.  
 Constable, Archibald, Esq., India.  
 Conway, Sir W. Martin, The Red House, Hornton-street, W.  
 Cooper, Lieut.-Col. E. H., 42, Portman-square, W.  
 Copenhagen Royal Library, c/o Messrs. Lehman and Stage, Copenhagen, per Messrs. Sampson Low.  
 Cora, Professor Guido, M.A., Via Goito, 2, Rome.  
 Cornell University, per Mr. E. G. Allen.  
 Corning, C. R., Esq. }  
 Corning, H. K., Esq. } Vesaleanum, Bâle, Switzerland.  
 Cortissoz, Royal, Esq., Editorial Room, *New York Tribune*, New York, U.S.A.  
 Cow, J., Esq., Elfinward, Hayward's Heath.  
 Cruising Club, The, 40, Chancery Lane, W.C.  
 Cunningham, Lieut.-Col. G., Junior U.S. Club, Charles-street, S.W.  
 Curzon of Kedleston, Right Hon. Lord, Carlton-gardens, S.W.

Dalton, Rev. Canon J. N., M.A., C.M.G., The Cloisters, Windsor.  
 Dampier, G. R., Esq., I.C.S., Gillingham Rectory, Beccles.  
 Danish Royal Naval Library, per Messrs. Sampson Low (Foreign Dept.).  
 Davis, Hon. N. Darnell, C.M.G., Georgetown, Demerara, British Guiana.  
 De Bertodano, B., Esq., 22, Chester-terrace, Regent's-park, N.W.  
 Derby, The Earl of, c/o the Rev. J. Richardson, Knowsley, Prescott.  
 Detroit Public Library, Michigan, U.S.A.  
 Dijon University Library, Rue Monge, Dijon.  
 Doubleday, H. Arthur, Esq., 2, Whitehall-gardens, S.W.  
 Dresden Geographical Society, per Herr P. E. Richter, Kleine Brüdergasse, 11, Dresden.

- Ducie, The Right Hon. Earl of, F.R.S., Tortworth Court, Falfield.  
 Dulau and Co., Messrs., 37, Soho-square, W.
- Eames, Wilberforce, Esq., Lenox Library, 890, Fifth-avenue, New York, U.S.A.,  
 per Mr. B. F. Stevens.  
 Edinburgh Public Library.
- Edwards, Francis, Esq., 83, High-street, Marylebone, W.
- Ellsworth, James W., Esq., 2, West 16th Street, New York, U.S.A.
- Elton, Charles I., Esq., Q.C., F.S.A., 10, Cranley-place, Onslow-square, S.W.
- Faber, Reginald S., Esq., 90, Regent's Park-road, N.W.
- Fanshawe, Admiral Sir Edw., G.C.B., 74, Cromwell-road, S.W.
- Fellows Athenæum, per Messrs. Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner, & Co.
- Ferguson, D. W., Esq., 5, Bedford-place, Croydon.
- Fisher, Arthur, Esq., St. Aubyn's, Tiverton, Devon.
- Fitzgerald, Edward A., Esq., per Mr. Jas. Bain, 1, Haymarket, S.W.
- Foreign Office (The), per Messrs. Eyre and Spottiswoode.
- Foreign Office of Germany, Berlin, per Messrs. Asher and Co.
- Forrest, G. W., Esq., C.I.E., The Knowle, Brenchley, Kent.
- Foster, William, Esq., India Office, S.W.
- Fothergill, M. B., Esq., c/o Imperial Bank of Persia, Bushire, Persian Gulf, [via Bombay.]
- French, H. B., Esq., 429, Arch Street, Philadelphia, U.S.A.
- Georg, Mons. H., Lyons, per Messrs. Sampson Low.
- George, C. W., Esq., 51, Hampton-road, Bristol.
- Gladstone Library, National Liberal Club, Whitehall-place, S.W.
- Glasgow University Library, per Mr. Billings, 59, Old Bailey, E.C.
- Godman, F. Ducane, Esq., D.C.L., F.R.S., 10, Chandos-street, Cavendish-square, W.
- Gosch, C. A., Esq., 21, Stanhope-gardens, S.W.
- Gosling, F. Goodwin, Esq., Hamilton, Bermuda.
- Gosset, General M. W. E., C.B., Island Bridge House, Dublin.
- Göttingen University Library, per Messrs. Asher and Co.
- Graham, Michael, Esq., *Glasgow Herald*, Glasgow.
- Grant-Duff, Rt. Hon. Sir M. E., G.C.S.I., 11, Chelsea Embankment, S.W.
- Gray, Albert, Esq., Catherine Lodge, Trafalgar Square, Chelsea, S.W.
- Gray, M. H., Esq., India-rubber Company, Silvertown, Essex.
- Greever, C. O., Esq., 1345, East Ninth-street, Des Moines, Iowa.
- Griffiths, John G., Esq., 21, Palace Court, Kensington Gardens, S.W.
- Grosvenor Library, Buffalo, U.S.A.
- Gruzevski, C. L., Esq., 107, College Street, San Antonio, Texas, U.S.A.
- Guildhall Library, E.C.
- Guillemard, Arthur G., Esq., Eltham, Kent.
- Guillemard, F. Henry H., Esq., M.A., M.D., The Old Mill House, Trumpington, Cambridge.
- Hamburg Commerz-Bibliothek, c/o Herrn Friederichsen and Co., Hamburg,  
 per Messrs. Drolenvaux and Bremner, 36, Gt. Tower-street, E.C.
- Hamilton, W. P., Esq., 32, East 36th Street, New York City.
- Hannen, The Hon. H., Holne Cott, Ashburton, South Devon.
- Harmsworth, A. C., Esq., Elmwood, St. Peter's, Kent.
- Harrison, Edwin, Esq., Church Gates, Cheshunt.
- Harvard College, Cambridge, Massachusetts, per Messrs. Kegan Paul.
- Harvie-Brown, J. A., Esq., Donipace, Larbert, Stirlingshire, N.B.
- Haswell, Geo. H., Esq., Ashleigh, Hamstead Road, Handsworth, Birmingham.
- Hawkesbury, The Rt. Hon. Lord, 2, Carlton House-terrace, S.W.
- Heap, Ralph, Esq., 1, Brick-court, Temple, E.C.
- Heawood, Edward, Esq., M.A., F.R.G.S., 3, Underhill-road, Lordship-lane, S.E.
- Hervey, Dudley F. A., Esq., C.M.G., The Elms, Aldeburgh.
- Hiersemann, Herr Karl W., 3, Königsstrasse, Leipzig, per Mr. Young T.  
 Pentland, 38, West Smithfield, E.C.

Hippisley, A. E., Esq., c/o J. D. Campbell, Esq., C.M.G., 26, Old Queen-st., S.W.  
 Hobhouse, C. E. H., Esq., The Ridge, Corsham, Wilts.  
 Horner, J. F. Fortescue, Esq., Mells Park, Frome, Somersetshire, per Mr. J. Bain.

Hoskins, Admiral Sir Anthony H., G.C.B., 17, Montagu-square, W.  
 Hoyt Public Library, per Messrs. Sotheran and Co., 140, Strand.  
 Hubbard, Hon. Gardiner G., 1328, Connecticut-avenue, Washington, D.C.  
 Hügel, Baron A. von, Curator, University Museum, Cambridge.  
 Hull Public Library (W. F. Lawton, Esq., Librarian).  
 Hull Subscription Library, per Messrs. Foster, Fore-street.

Im Thurn, E. F., Esq., C.B., C.M.G., 23, Edwardes-square, Kensington, W.  
 India Office (20 copies).  
 Inner Temple, Hon. Society of the (J. E. L. Pickering, Esq., Librarian).

James, Arthur C., Esq., 92, Park-avenue, New York, U.S.A.  
 James, Walter B., Esq., M.D., 17, West 54th-street, New York.  
 John Carter Brown Library, Providence, per Messrs. Ellis and Elvey, 29, New Bond Street, W.  
 Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, U.S.A., per Mr. E. G. Allen. [S.W.]  
 Johnson, General Sir Allen B., K.C.B., 60, Lexham-gardens, Cromwell-road,  
 Johnson, Rev. S. J., F.R.A.S., Melpash Vicarage, Bridport.

Kearton, G. J. Malcolm, Esq., F.R.G.S., 28, Fenchurch Street, E.C.  
 Keltie, J. Scott, Esq., LL.D., 1, Savile-row, W.  
 Kelvin, The Rt. Hon. Lord, F.R.S., LL.D., 15, Eaton-place, S.W.  
 Key, John J., Esq., Colorado Springs, Colorado, U.S.A.  
 Kinder, C. W., Esq., C.M.G., Tongshan, North China.  
 King's Inns Library, Henrietta-street, Dublin.  
 Kimberley Public Library, per Messrs. Sotheran and Co., Strand.  
 Kitching, J., Esq., Oaklands, Kingston Hill, S.W.  
 Klincksieck, M., per Mr. Wohlleben, 45, Gt. Russell-street, W.C. (3 copies).

Langton, J. J. P., Esq., B.A., 802, Spruce Street, St. Louis, Mo., U.S.A.  
 Larchmont Yacht Club, Larchmont, N.Y., U.S.A. (F. D. Shaw, Esq., Chairman of Library Committee).  
 Leechman, C. B., Esq., 10, Earl's-court-gardens, S.W.  
 Leeds Library, Commercial-street, Leeds.  
 Lehigh University, U.S.A.  
 Leipzig, Library of the University of, per Herr O. Harrassowitz, Leipzig (Messrs. W. Wesley and Son).  
 Levy, Judah, Esq., 17, Greville-place, N.W.  
 Liverpool Free Public Library.  
 Liverpool Geographical Society (Capt. D. Phillips, R.N., Secretary), 14, Hargreaves-buildings, Chapel-street, Liverpool.  
 Loch, Right Hon. Lord, G.C.B., G.C.M.G., 23, Lowndes-square, S.W.  
 Loescher, Messrs. J., & Co., Via del Corso, 307, Rome, per Messrs. Sampson Low.

Logan, Daniel, Esq., Solicitor-General, Penang, Straits Settlements.  
 Logan, William, Esq., per Messrs. Grindlay & Co., 54, Parliament-street.  
 London Institution, Finsbury-circus.  
 London Library, 12, St. James's-square.  
 Long Island Historical Society, Brooklyn, U.S.A.  
 Lowrey, Joseph, Esq., The Hermitage, Loughton.  
 Lubetaky, S. A. S. le Prince Droutsokoy, 89, Rue Miromesnil, Paris.  
 Lucas, C. P., Esq., C.B., Colonial Office, S.W.  
 Lucas, F. W., Esq., 21, Surrey-street, Victoria Embankment, W.C.  
 Luyster, S. B., Esq., c/o Messrs. Denham & Co., 109, Southampton-row, W.C.  
 Lydenberg, H. M., Esq., Lenox Library, Fifth Avenue, New York.  
 Lyttelton-Annesley, Lieut.-Gen. A., Templemere, Weybridge.

Macmillan & Bowes, Messrs., Cambridge, per Messrs. Foster, Fore-street.  
 Macqueen, John, Esq., St. Mary's, Harpenden.  
 Macrae, C. C., Esq., 98, Onslow-gardens, S.W.  
 Manchester Public Free Libraries.  
 Manierre, George, Esq., 184, La Salle-street, Chicago, Ill., U.S.A.  
 Margesson, Lieut. W. H. D., R.N., Findon Place, Worthing.  
 Markham, Vice-Admiral Albert H., F.R.G.S., 65, Linden-gardens, W.  
 Markham, Sir Clement, K.C.B., F.R.S., 21, Eccleston-square, S.W.  
 Marquand, Henry, Esq., 160, Broadway, New York, U.S.A.  
 Martelli, E. W., Esq., 4, New Square, Lincoln's Inn, W.C.  
 Massachusetts Historical Society, 30, Tremont-street, Boston, Mass., U.S.A.,  
 per Messrs. Kegan Paul.  
 Massie, Capt. R. H., R.A.  
 Mathers, E. P., Esq., Glenalmond, Foxgrove-road, Beckenham.  
 Maudslay, A. P., Esq., 32, Montpelier-square, Knightsbridge, S.W.  
 McClymont, Jas. R., Esq., 201, Macquarie-street, Hobart Town, Tasmania.  
 Mecedry, Jas., Esq., M.A., B.L., F.R.G.S., Wynberg, Stradbroke, Blackrock,  
 Dublin Co.  
 Melbourne, Public Library of, per Messrs. Melville, Mullen & Slade, 12,  
 Ludgate-square, E.C.  
 Meyjes, A. C., Esq., 42, Cannon-street, E.C.  
 Mitchell, Lewis W., Esq., Standard Bank of South Africa, Cape Town.  
 Michigan, University of, per Messrs. H. Sotheran & Co., 140, Strand, W.C.  
 Milwaukee Public Library, Wisconsin, per Mr. G. E. Stechert.  
 Minneapolis Athenæum, U.S.A., per Mr. G. E. Stechert, 2, Star-yard, W.C.  
 Mitchell Library, 21, Miller-street, Glasgow.  
 Mitchell, Alfred, Esq., per Messrs. Tiffany, 221, Regent-street, W.  
 Mitchell, Wm., Esq., c/o Union Bank of Scotland, Holburn Branch, Aberdeen.  
 Monson, The Rt. Hon. Lord, C.V.O., Clarence House, St. James's, S.W.  
 Morgan, E. Delmar, Esq., 15, Roland-gardens, South Kensington, S.W.  
 Morris, H. C. L., Esq., M.D., Gothic Cottage, Bognor, Sussex.  
 Morris, Mowbray, Esq., 59A, Brook-street, Grosvenor square, W.  
 Morrison, G. E., Esq., M.D., F.R.G.S., *Times* Correspondent, Peking.  
 Moxon, A. E., Esq., c/o Mrs. Gough, The Lodge, Sculdern, near Banbury.  
 Mukhopadhyay, The Hon. Dr. Asutosh, M.A., LL.D., etc., etc., 77, Russa-road  
 North, Bhowanipore, Calcutta.  
 Munich Royal Library, per Messrs. Asher & Co.

Nathan, Major, C.M.G., R.E., 11, Pembridge-square, W.  
 Naval and Military Club, 94, Piccadilly, W.  
 Netherlands, Geographical Society of the, per Mr. Nutt, 57, Long Acre.  
 Newberry Library, The, Chicago, U.S.A., per Messrs. Stevens & Brown.  
 Newcastle-upon-Tyne Literary and Scientific Institute.  
 Newcastle-upon-Tyne Public Library.  
 New London Public Library, Conn., U.S.A.  
 New York Athletic Club, Central Park, South, New York (John C. Gulick,  
 Esq., chairman of Library Committee).  
 New York Public Library, per Messrs. Stevens & Brown.  
 New York State Library, per Mr. G. E. Stechert, 2, Star-yard, Carey-st., W.C.  
 New York Yacht Club (Library Committee), 67, Madison-avenue, New York  
 City, U.S.A.  
 New Zealand, Agent-General for, per Messrs. Sotheran & Co.  
 Nicholson, Sir Charles, Bart., D.C.L., The Grange, Totteridge, Herts.  
 Nijhoff, M., per Mr. D. Nutt, 57, Long Acre, W.C.  
 Nordenskiöld, Baron, 11, Tradgardskatan, Stockholm.  
 North Adams Public Library, Massachusetts, U.S.A. [Station.  
 Northbrook, The Right Hon. the Earl of, G.C.S.I., Stratton, Micheldever  
 Northumberland, His Grace the Duke of, K.G., c/o J. C. Hodgson, Esq.,  
 Alnwick Castle.

O'Byrne, P. Justin, Esq., "British-Indian Commerce," 21, St. Helen's-place, E.C.  
 Oliver, Captain S. P., Findon, near Worthing.  
 Oliver, Commander T. W., R.N., 16, De Parys-avenue, Bedford.  
 Omaha Public Library, Nebraska, U.S.A.  
 Ommanney, Admiral Sir Erasmus, C.B., F.R.S., 29, Connaught-sq., Hyde Park.  
 Oriental Club, Hanover-square, W.

Parish, Frank, Esq., 5, Gloucester Square, Hyde Park, W.  
 Parlett, H. G., Esq., British Legation, Tokio, Japan.  
 Payne, E. J., Esq., 2, Stone Buildings, Lincoln's Inn, W.C.  
 Peabody Institute, Baltimore, U.S., per Mr. E. G. Allen.  
 Peckover, Alexander, Esq., Bank House, Wisbech.  
 Peech, W. H., Esq., St. Stephen's Club, Westminster.  
 Peek, Sir Cuthbert E., Bart., 22, Belgrave-square, S.W.  
 Peixoto, Dr. J. Rodrigues, 8, Rue Almte. Comandaré, Rio de Janeiro.  
 Pequot Library, Southport, Conn., U.S.A.  
 Petherick, E. A., Esq., 85, Hopton-road, Streatham, S.W.  
 Philadelphia Free Library, U.S.A., per Mr. G. E. Stechert, 2, Star-yard, W.C.  
 Philadelphia, Library Company of, U.S.A., per Mr. E. G. Allen.  
 Poor, F. B., Esq., 160, Broadway, New York, U.S.A.  
 Poor, Henry W., Esq., per Messrs. Denham & Co., 109, Southampton-row, W.C.  
 Portico Library, Manchester.  
 Pringle, Arthur T., Esq., c/o Messrs. G. W. Wheatley & Co., 10, Queen-st., E.C.  
 Plymouth Proprietary Library, Cornwall Street, Plymouth. (J. Brooking-Rowe, Esq., Hon. Sec.)

Quaritch, Mr. B., 15, Piccadilly, W. (12 copies).

Rabbits, W. Thos., Esq., 6, Cadogan Gardens, S.W.  
 Raffles Library, Singapore, per Messrs. Jones & Evans, Queen-street, E.C.  
 Ravenstein, E. G., Esq., 2, York Mansions, Battersea Park, S.W.  
 Reform Club, Pall-mall.  
 Reggio, André C., Esq., c/o Messrs. Baring Bros. & Co., 8, Bishopsgate-street Within, E.C.  
 Rhodes, Josiah, Esq., The Elms, Lytham, Lancashire.  
 Richards, Admiral Sir F. W., G.C.B., 13, Great Russell Mansions, W.C.  
 Riggs, E. F., Esq., 1311, Mass. Avenue, Washington, U.S.  
 Ringwalt, John S., Jun., Esq., Mt. Vernon, Knox County, Ohio, U.S.A.  
 Rittenhouse Club, 1811, Walnut-street, Philadelphia, U.S.A.  
 Rockhill, H.E. the Hon. W. W., Department of State, Washington.  
 Rodd, Sir Rennell, C.B., K.C.M.G., c/o Foreign Office, Downing-street, S.W.  
 Röhrscheid and Ebbecke, Herrn, Strauss'sche Buchhandlung, Bonn.  
 Rose, C. D., Esq., 10, Austin Friars, E.C.  
 Rosenheim, H., Esq., 62, Fitzjohn's Avenue, N.W.  
 Royal Artillery Institute, Woolwich.  
 Royal Colonial Institute, Northumberland Avenue, W.C.  
 Royal Engineers' Institute, Chatham.  
 Royal Geographical Society, 1, Savile-row, W. (copies presented).  
 Royal Scottish Geographical Society, Edinburgh (Jas. Burgess, Esq., LL.D., C.I.E., Librarian).  
 Royal Societies Club, St. James's-street, S.W.  
 Royal United Service Institution, Whitehall, S.W.  
 Runciman, Walter, Jr., Esq., 11, Windsor Terrace, Newcastle-on-Tyne.  
 Russell, Lady A., 2, Audley-square, W.  
 Ryley, J. Horton, Esq.,  
 Ryley, Mrs. Florence, LL.A., } Melrose, Woodwarde-road, Dulwich, S.E.

- St. Andrew's University.  
 St. Deiniol's Library, Hawarden (Rev. G. C. Joyce, Librarian).  
 St. John's, N. B., Canada, Free Public Library (J. R. Ruel, Esq., Chairman).  
 St. Louis Mercantile Library, per Mr. G. E. Stechert, 2, Star-yard, W.C.  
 St. Martin's-in-the-Fields Free Public Library, 115, St. Martin's-lane, W.C.  
 St. Petersburg University Library, per Messrs. Kegan Paul.  
 St. Wladimir University, Kief, per Messrs. Sotheran & Co., 140, Strand.  
 Sanford, Chas. H., Esq., 102, Eaton Square, S.W.  
 San Francisco Public Library, per Mr. G. E. Stechert.  
 Satow, H. E. Sir E., K.C.M.G., British Legation, Peking.  
 Saunders, Howard, Esq., 7, Radnor-place, Gloucester-square, W.  
 SAXE COBURG AND GOTHA, H.R.H. THE DUKE OF, Clarence House, St. James's.  
 Schwartz, J. L., Esq., P.O. Box 594, Pittsburg, Pa.  
 Selater, Dr. W. L., South African Museum, Cape of Good Hope.  
 Seawanhaka Corinthian Yacht Club, 7, East 32nd-street, New York, U.S.A.  
 Seymour, Vice-Admiral Sir E. H., G.C.B., 9, Ovington-square, S.W.  
 Sheffield Free Public Libraries (Samuel Smith, Esq., Librarian).  
 Shields, Cuthbert, Esq., Corpus Christi College, Oxford.  
 Signet Library, Edinburgh (Thos. G. Law, Esq., Librarian).  
 Silver, S. W., Esq., 3, York-gate, Regent's Park, N.W.  
 Sinclair, Mrs., 3, Beaufort-street, Chelsea.  
 Smith, F. A., Esq., Thorncliff, Shoot-up-Hill, N.  
 Smithers, F.O., Esq., F.R.G.S., Dashwood House, 9, New Broad-street, E.C.  
 Sneddon, Geo. T., Esq., 8, Merry-street, Motherwell.  
 Società Geografica Italiana, Rome.  
 Société de Géographie, Paris, per Mr. J. Arnould, Royal Mint Refinery, Royal Mint-street, E.C.  
 Sotheran and Co., Messrs., 140, Strand, W.C.  
 South African Public Library, per Messrs. H. S. King & Co., 65, Cornhill, E.C.  
 Springfield City Library Association, Mass., U.S.A.  
 Stairs, James W., Esq., c/o Messrs. Stairs, Son and Morrow, Halifax, Nova Scotia.  
 Stanley, Right Hon. Lord, of Alderley, 15, Grosvenor-gardens, S.W.  
 Stephens, Henry C., Esq., M.P., Chalderton, Salisbury.  
 Stevens, J. Tyler, Esq., Park-street, Lowell, Mass., U.S.A.  
 Stevens, Son, & Stiles, Messrs., 39, Great Russell-street, W.C.  
 Stockholm, Royal Library of, per Messrs. Sampson Low.  
 Stockton Public Library, per Messrs. Sotheran & Co., 140, Strand.  
 Strachey, Lady, 69, Lancaster-gate, Hyde-park, W.  
 Stride, Mrs. Arthur L., Bush Hall, Hatfield, Herts.  
 Stringer, G. A., Esq., 248, Georgia-street, Buffalo, N.Y., U.S.A.  
 Stubbs, Captain Edward, R.N., 13, Greenfield-road, Stoneycroft, Liverpool.  
 Sydney Free Library, per Mr. Young J. Pentland, 38, West Smithfield, E.C.  
 Sykes, Major P. Molesworth, H.M.'s Consul at Kerman, Persia, *via* Tehran.  
 Tangye, R. T. G., Esq., Coombe Regis, Kington-on-Thames.  
 Tate, G. P., Esq., c/o Messrs. W. Watson & Co., Karachi, India.  
 Taylor, Captain William R., 1, Daysbrook-road, Streatham Hill, S.W.  
 Temple, Lieut.-Col. R. C., C.I.E., per Messrs. Kegan Paul.  
 Thin, Mr. Jas., 54, 55, South Bridge, Edinburgh, per Mr. Billings, 59, Old Bailey, E.C.  
 Thomson, B. H., Esq., Governor's House, H.M.'s Prison, Northampton.  
 Tighe, W. S., Coalmoney, Stratford-on-Slaney, Co. Wicklow.  
 Toronto Public Library. } per Messrs. Cazenove & Son.  
 Toronto University. }  
 Transvaal State Library, Pretoria, Transvaal, South Africa, per Messrs. Mudie.  
 Travellers' Club, 106, Pall-mall, S.W.  
 Trinder, A., Esq., The Hollies, Ryden's Road, Walton-on-Thames.  
 Trinder, H. W., Esq., Northbrook House, Bishops Waltham, Hants.  
 Trinder, Oliver Jones, Esq., Mount Vernon, Caterham, Surrey.

Trinity College, Cambridge, c/o Messrs. Deighton, Bell & Co., per Sutton.  
 Trinity House, The Hon. Corporation of, Tower-hill, E.C.  
 Troop, W. H., Esq., c/o Messrs. Black Bros. & Co., Halifax, Nova Scotia.  
 Trotter, Coutts, Esq., Athenæum Club, S.W.  
 Trübner, Herr Karl, Strasburg, per Messrs. Kegan Paul.  
 Turnbull, Alex. H., Esq., 7, St. Helen's-place, Bishopsgate-street, E.C.

Union League Club, Broad-street, Philadelphia, U.S.A.  
 Union Society, Oxford.  
 United States Congress, Library of, per Mr. E. G. Allen.  
 United States National Museum (Library of), per Messrs. W. Wesley & Son,  
 28, Essex-street, W.C.  
 United States Naval Academy, per Messrs. Stevens & Brown.  
 University of London, per Messrs. Sotheran & Co., 37, Piccadilly, W.  
 Upsala University Library, per C. J. Lundstrom, Upsala.

Van Raalte, Charles, Esq., Aldenham Abbey, Watford, Herts.  
 Vernon, R. V., Esq., Colonial Office, S.W.  
 Vienna Imperial Library, per Messrs. Asher & Co.  
 Vignaud, Henry, Esq., Ambassade des Etats Unis, 18, Avenue Kleber, Paris.

Warren, W. R., Esq., 81, Fulton-street, New York City, U.S.A.  
 Washington, Department of State, per Messrs. Stevens & Brown.  
 Washington, Library of Navy Department, per Messrs. Stevens & Brown.  
 Watkinson Library, Hartford, Connecticut, U.S.A.  
 Watson, Commander, R.N.R., Ravello, Crosby, near Liverpool.  
 Webster, Sir Augustus, Bart., Guards' Club, 70, Pall-mall.  
 Weld, Rev. Geo. F., Hingham, Mass., U.S.A.  
 Westaway, Staff Engineer A.E.L., H.M.S. "Flora," S.E. Coast of America.  
 Westminster School (Rev. G. H. Nall, M.A., Librarian).  
 Wharton, Rear-Admiral Sir W. J. L., K.C.B., Florys, Princes-road, Wimbledon  
 Park, S.W.  
 White, Dr. H., c/o W. T. White, Esq., New Hall, Lydd.  
 Whiteway, R. S., Esq., Brownscombe, Shottermill, Surrey.  
 Wildy, A.G., Esq., 14, Buckingham-street, W.C.  
 Williams, O. W., Esq., Fort Stockton, Texas, U.S.A.  
 Wilmanns, F. M., Esq., 89, Oneida Street, Milwaukee, Wisc., U.S.A.  
 Wilson, Edward S., Esq., Melton Grange, Brough, East Yorkshire.  
 Wisconsin State Historical Society, per Messrs. Sotheran & Co., 140, Strand.  
 Woodford, Chas. M., Esq., Tulagi, Solomon Islands.  
 Worcester, Massachusetts, Free Library, per Messrs. Kegan Paul.  
 Wright, John, Esq., 2, Challoner Terrace West, South Shields.  
 Wyndham, Geo., Esq., M.P., 35, Park Lane, W.

Yale College, U.S.A., per Mr. E. G. Allen.  
 Young, Alfales, Esq., Salt Lake City, Utah, U.S.A.  
 Young, Sir Allen, C.B., 18, Grafton-street, W.  
 Young & Sons, Messrs. H., 12, South Castle Street, Liverpool.

Zürich, Bibliothèque de la Ville, care o Messrs. Orell, Turli & Co., Zürich, per  
 Mr. D. Nutt.

